

TAUNTON'S

# Fine Woodworking

CELEBRATING

25

YEARS

April 2000

No. 141

**Foolproof  
gluing and  
clamping**

**Dust collection  
for small shops**

**How to choose  
the best finish  
for your project**

**From garage  
to versatile shop**

**Basswood,  
a carver's  
dream**

**New feature:  
Gallery of  
readers' work**



**Trestle table with breadboard ends**

U.S. \$6.95

Canada \$7.95

U.K. £4.25



0 74851 64797 4

# A special accessories package and a rebate?

(Think of them as whipped cream and a cherry.)

## Save up to 71%



1100 CFM  
Dust Collector  
with free 1-tool  
hook-up accessory kit.  
Now \$279\* after \$20 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$69<sup>00</sup>**



JWBS-14CS  
14" Bandsaw  
with rip fence and mitre gauge.  
Now \$554\* after \$25 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$122<sup>00</sup>**



JDP-17MF  
16<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" Drill Press  
with mortise attachment  
and 3 chisel bits.  
Now \$399\* after \$20 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$145<sup>00</sup>**



JJ-6CSX  
6" Jointer  
with two sets of knives.  
Now \$474\* after \$25 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$142<sup>00</sup>**

JTAS-10  
3 HP 10" Tablesaw  
both left- and right-tilt  
XACTA SAW\* with table and legs  
Now \$1,299\* after \$100 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$277<sup>00</sup>**

JWP-15CS  
15" Planer  
with enclosed stand, rollers  
and extra knife set.  
Now \$1,099\* after \$100 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$209<sup>00</sup>**



JWTS-10  
Contractor's Style  
Tablesaw  
with carbide tipped blade.  
Now \$499\* after \$50 mfr. rebate  
**Total Package Savings\***  
**\$138<sup>00</sup>**



For a limited time, we're packaging our best-selling woodworking tools with the accessories you want, along with the famous JET rebate, at savings of up to 71 percent!

Call 800-274-6848 or visit [www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com) for a catalog or the name of a JET dealer near you!  
\*Manufacturer's suggested retail price after mail-in rebate. "Total Package Savings" reflects savings on accessories after manufacturer's mail-in rebate, effective October 1, 1999 to March 31, 2000.

READER SERVICE NO. 131

**Now  
Extended!  
Rebates available  
until March 31, 2000.**

**Incra®** Fine-tune your shop!

Instant accuracy on every cut

Finally, a tool that lends more muscle to all your woodworking operations. The *Incra Twin Linear* is loaded with must-have features that result in one complete solution.

**Includes:**

- Dual Carriage with Adjustable Split Fence
- Incremental Stop Positioner
- Incra Right Angle Fixture
- Hi-Rise Fence Cap
- Dust Collection Port
- Engraved 21" Stainless Steel Magnetic Scale
- Incra Master Reference Guide and 51 Template Library

Ultra precision split fence accommodates all joint-making, molding, shaping, and raised panel bits. Includes fast, easy and SAFE zero-clearance profile capability.

**Call today for your FREE Video!**  
**800-752-0725**

**Woodpeckers Inc.**  
The Incra Tool Source  
www.woodpeck.com

P.O. Box 29510 • Parma, Ohio 44129 • 800-752-0725

READER SERVICE NO. 207

**You deserve a FELDER!**

The BF6-31, an investment you can be proud of!

See for yourself how the patented linear guiding system on the FELDER sliding table, the quick self setting planer knives, the tilting shaper spindle and the 15,000 rpm router spindle will take your woodworking to new heights.

Quality and precision made in **Tirol AUSTRIA**

The BF 6-31, one of 25 outstanding machines made by FELDER.

**FELDER** Machines and Tools for Woodworking

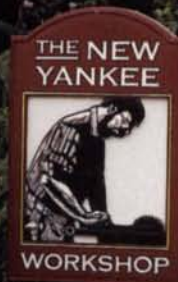
**FELDER USA** 1851 Enterprise Blvd. - West Sacramento, CA 95691  
Call 916-375-3190 • Fax 916-375-3194 • http://felderusa.com

on models 6-31  
The Quality-Guarantee  
6 years  
on sliding table system

free VIDEO  
Call now  
**1-800-572-0061**  
- let our 100 min. demonstration video show you why!

READER SERVICE NO. 219

## THE NEW YANKEE WORKSHOP BUILT SOLID...WITH STRONG SUPPORT



For a dozen years, Norm Abram has invited viewers into his workshop to offer step-by-step instructions on building furniture and other woodworking projects. None of this would have been possible without the solid help of loyal underwriters.

Columbia Forest Products is proud to announce its sponsorship of The New Yankee Workshop. After more than forty years in business, Columbia is the largest manufacturer of hardwood plywood in North America, as well as makers of flooring and wood components. And, through its support of the New Yankee Workshop, Columbia Forest Products celebrates the woodworker in everyone.



East 1-800-237-2428 • West 1-800-547-1791 • Canada 1-888-525-1964  
Columbia Flooring 1-800-654-8796 • www.columbiaforestproducts.com

READER SERVICE NO. 257

## Departments

6 Contributors

8 Letters

18 Methods of Work

Retractable air-hose fixture; A faster way to make half-blind dovetails

26 Notes & Comment

Cuban mahogany is now available in the U.S.; Building illusions

36 Tools & Materials

Accurate miter gauge; Coffin-style plane; Triple roller stand

88 **Current Work** NEW

A gallery of our readers' woodworking

96 Rules of Thumb

Wood moves

100 Questions & Answers

Repairing a drill-press motor; Are bearing guides worth the price?

110 Master Class

A short course in gilding

125 Finish Line

Three simple finishes

### On the Cover:

Charles Durfee has built quite a few trestle tables over the years, allowing him to have developed a basic design that is easily adapted. For this issue, he builds a traditional trestle table with breadboard ends. See p. 74  
Photo: Michael Pekovich



Gluing and clamping strategies, p. 44



Picking the best finish for a project, p. 58



From garage to great shop space, p. 51

# Articles

## 44 Gluing and Clamping Strategies

Lots of tape, lots of cauls and lots of clamps make glue-ups easy

BY LON SCHLEINING

## 51 Turning a Parking Place into a Great Shop Space

Expansion and a thoughtful layout make an excellent professional workshop from a two-car garage

BY CHRIS GOCHNOUR

## 56 Graduated Drawers

A little arithmetic is all it takes to enliven the proportions and increase the utility of a case, a cabinet or a built-in

BY CHRIS BECKSVOORT

## 58 Think Finish First

Before you start your next furniture project, consider a finish's appearance, its method of application and its durability

BY JEFF JEWITT

## 64 Basswood, Linden or Lime

By any name, this wood, a carver's delight, proves that it's sometimes good to be weak and bland

BY JON ARNO

## 67 Shop-Built Horizontal Mortiser

Using a router and two sliding tables, this homemade setup is a versatile joint-making machine

BY JOHN F. MATOUSEK

## 70 Building Without Plans

Rough sketches and quick mock-ups offer an unintimidating way to design your own furniture

BY CRAIG VANDALL STEVENS

## 74 Trestle Table with Breadboard Ends

Cut all of the joints before cutting any of the shapes

BY CHARLES DURFEE

## 79 Variations on a basic design

## 82 Dust Collection for the One-Man Shop

How to get the most performance from 1-hp to 2-hp collectors

BY ANATOLE BURKIN

## 83 Three styles of dust collectors



Graduated drawers, p. 56



Dust collection for small shops, p. 82

# Contributors

**Craig Vandall Stevens** ("Building Without Plans") studied fine arts in college and, after graduation, made log houses for a living. This led, inevitably, to a stint at James Krenov's College of the Redwoods program in woodworking and a career making fine furniture.

From his basement shop outside Columbus, Ohio, Stevens makes custom furniture embellished with marquetry and chip-carving designs inspired by nature. He sings tenor in the Columbus Symphony Orchestra Chorus.



Frequent *Fine Woodworking* contributor **Lon Schleining** ("Gluing and Clamping Strategies") has taught woodworking at Cerritos College since 1995. He also teaches woodworking seminars with The Woodworking Shows, is just finishing his first book, about chests, for The Taunton Press and is researching and writing a book for Linden Publishers about bending and curving wood. He has had his own shop in Long Beach, Calif., for 25 years.

**Chris Becksvoort** ("Graduated Drawers"), a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*, has been a woodworker for more than 30 years. He runs a one-man shop and design studio in New Gloucester, Maine, and is the author of *The Shaker Legacy* (The Taunton Press, 1999).



**Chris Gochnour** ("Turning a Parking Place into a Great Shop Space") builds a wide range of custom furniture in his expanded garage shop and particularly likes making French country pieces. A devoted user of handplanes of all types, he

enjoys reconditioning old ones and has made quite a few from scratch. He lives in Salt Lake City, Utah, and when he's not watching his two children while his wife, Natalie, is playing soccer, he's often skiing or hiking the challenging slopes of the nearby Wasatch Range.

**Jon Arno** ("Basswood, Linden or Lime") wrote his first article for *Fine Woodworking* back in 1979; the subject was milk paint. Since then he has developed his own niche with articles that explore the many facets of different species of wood. He has, in fact, written more articles for this

magazine than any other individual. Arno runs a lumberyard near Detroit, Mich., and works as a consultant on furniture styles and wood identification for antique dealers and museums.

**Jeff Jewitt** ("Think Finish First") is a finishing dynamo. He maintains two businesses from his shop in Cleveland, Ohio, restoring furniture and selling finishing supplies. He writes frequently for this magazine, and his latest Taunton Press book, *Great Wood Finishes*, was just published. He spends much of his free time racing his bicycle.

**Charles Durfee** ("Trestle Table with Breadboard Ends") grew up in western Massachusetts. He graduated from Oberlin College in Ohio in 1968 and then did a tour in Vietnam, which he recalls as a "sad, unfortunate time." He finally settled in Woolwich, Maine, after attending boatbuilding school in Bath. His shingled, wood-heated shop, just downhill from the house he shares with his wife and two children, is situated on five acres of granite and forest. From the windows beyond his bench he can look across a wide field that he hopes will never be developed.



Ever since he took a woodshop class in high school, **John F. Matousek** ("Shop-Built Horizontal Mortiser") has been building furniture. He spent his professional career in the aerospace industry. "We worked on the military's information system development," he said. "Today they call it computers." He lives with his wife in Englewood, Colo.

## Fine Woodworking

EDITOR **Timothy D. Schreiner**

ART DIRECTOR **Bob Goodfellow**

MANAGING EDITOR **Jefferson Kolle**

SENIOR EDITORS **Jonathan Binzen, Anatole Burkin**

ASSOCIATE EDITORS **William Duckworth, Matthew Teague**

COPY/PRODUCTION EDITOR **Thomas McKenna**

ASSOCIATE ART DIRECTOR **Michael Pekovich**

IMAGING SPECIALIST **William M. Godfrey**

WEB EDITOR **Ruth Dobseavage**

ART ASSISTANT **Erika Marks**

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT **Chris Baumann**

CONTRIBUTING EDITORS **Tage Frid, R. Bruce Hoadley, Christian Becksvoort, Marlo Rodriguez, Chris Minick, Gary Rogowski, Mike Dunbar**

METHODS OF WORK **Jim Richey**

INDEXER **Harriet Hodges**

PUBLISHER **Jon Miller**

PUBLICIST **Karen Lutjen**

MARKETING ASSISTANT **Diana Rablto**

SECRETARY **Patti Dobson**

CIRCULATION MANAGER **David Pond**

CIRCULATION PLANNER **Jeanne Todaro**

ADVERTISING DIRECTOR **Sam Vincent**

ASSOCIATE ADVERTISING MANAGER **Brian M. Ziff**

NATIONAL ACCOUNTS MANAGERS **Tom Brancato, Linda Abbott**

ACCOUNTS MANAGER **Jason W. Clark**

SR. ADVERTISING COORDINATOR **Kathryn Simonds**

ADVERTISING SECRETARY **Hilda Fernandes**

**WOODWORKING BOOKS & VIDEOS**

ASSOCIATE PUBLISHER **Helen Albert**

ASSOCIATE EDITOR **Strother Purdy**

**Fine Woodworking**: (ISSN: 0361-3453) is published bimonthly by The Taunton Press, Inc., Newtown, CT 06470-5506. Telephone (203) 426-8171. Periodicals postage paid at Newtown, CT 06470 and at additional mailing offices. GST paid registration #123210981. U.S. distribution by Curtis Circulation Company, 730 River Road, New Milford, NJ 07646-3048 and Eastern News Distributors, Inc., One Media Way, 12406 Route 250, Milan, OH 44846-9705.

**Subscription Rates**: U.S. and possessions, \$32 for one year, \$54 for two years, \$75 for three years; outside the U.S. and possessions, \$38 for one year, \$66 for two years, \$93 for three years (in U.S. dollars, please). Single copy, \$6.95. Single copies outside the U.S. and possessions, \$7.95.

**Postmaster**: Send address changes to *Fine Woodworking*, The Taunton Press, Inc., 63 South Main St., P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

Printed in the USA

## HOW TO CONTACT US:

### Fine Woodworking

The Taunton Press, 63 S. Main St., P.O. Box 5506,  
Newtown, CT 06470-5506 (203) 426-8171  
[www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)

### Editorial:

To contribute an article, give a tip, or ask a question, contact *Fine Woodworking* at the address above or:

Call: (800) 283-7252, ext. 423  
Fax: (203) 270-6751  
E-mail: [fw@taunton.com](mailto:fw@taunton.com)

### Customer Service:

For subscription inquiries, you can:

• Visit our subscriber service section at:  
[www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)

• E-mail us: [fwservice@taunton.com](mailto:fwservice@taunton.com)

• Call our customer support center:

To report an address change, inquire about an order, or solve a problem, call:  
**(800) 477-8727**

To subscribe, purchase back issues, books or videos, or give a gift, call:  
**(800) 888-8286**

### Advertising:

To find out about advertising:

Call: (800) 283-7252, ext. 829  
E-mail: [fwads@taunton.com](mailto:fwads@taunton.com)

Member Audit  
Bureau of Circulation



### Retail:

If you'd like to carry *Fine Woodworking* in your store, call the Taunton Trade Company at:  
**(800) 283-7252, ext. 265**

### Mailing List:

Occasionally we make our subscribers' names and addresses available to responsible companies whose products or services we feel may be of some interest to you. Most of our subscribers find this to be a helpful way to learn about useful resources and services. If you don't want us to share your name with other companies, please contact our Customer Service Department at:  
**(800) 477-8727**

### The Taunton Guarantee:

If at any time you're not completely satisfied with *Fine Woodworking*, you can cancel your subscription and receive a full and immediate refund of the entire subscription price. No questions asked.

Copyright 1999 by The Taunton Press, Inc. No reproduction without permission of The Taunton Press, Inc.

## Woodworking Books for Less!

- Over 450 books, plans & videos in stock
- Free shipping on US orders of 3 or more
- Save up to 20% off bookstore prices

## Woodworkers' Discount Books

4460 Tierra Rojo Dr., Colorado Springs, CO 80926

PH: 719-579-8330 FAX: 719-579-8287

1-800-378-4060

[www.discount-books.com](http://www.discount-books.com)



## Free Catalog

READER SERVICE NO. 104

CNC under \$5,000 • 3D / 3-Axis

**ShopBot**  
The Workshop Robot

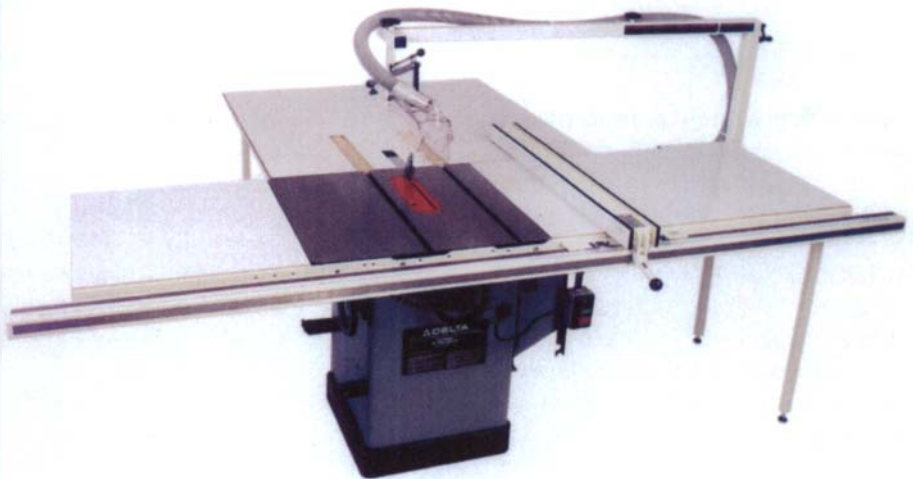
A PC-controlled tool that precisely moves a standard router in 3D • 4' x 8' and larger work area  
**Guitar bodies, 3D models,  
raised panel doors, signs, metalwork**

Durham, NC • (919) 680-4800

**888-680-4466** [www.ShopBotTools.com](http://www.ShopBotTools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 204

## Biesemeyer® Can Make Any Saw A More Perfect Tool.



Whether your table saw is a cherished antique or the most sophisticated new model on the market, a Biesemeyer® Fence and accessories will make it better. Count on it.

We know we're the best, but don't just take our word for it. Try one of our fence systems on your saw for two weeks, without risk. That's our guarantee of satisfaction.

Serious woodworkers have been recommending Biesemeyer® products for decades. Isn't it time you found out what they already know?

**Contact us or visit our web site for the name  
of our distributor nearest you.**

# BIESEMEYER®

216 S. Alma School Road • Suite 3 • Mesa, AZ 85210 • Fax (480) 834-8515

## 1-800-782-1831

Web Site: [www.biesemeyer.com](http://www.biesemeyer.com) • E-Mail: [mail@biesemeyer.com](mailto:mail@biesemeyer.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 217

# Letters

## 25th anniversary: A new department and a special issue

With this issue, *Fine Woodworking* begins its 25th-anniversary celebration. We plan to start this celebration rather quietly and build to a special 25th-anniversary edition of the magazine at the end of the year, exactly 25 years after issue No. 1, Winter 1975. In addition to the special anniversary logo you see here and on the cover, we begin our celebration with a new department in this issue—a gallery of inspirational woodworking from our readers (pp. 88-91). For the name of this gallery, we reached into our archives and resurrected the name of an old, popular feature: *Current Work*. But if the name is quite new. Since we stopped publishing *Home Furniture* magazine, we would like *Fine Woodworking* to find a way to publish more examples of the well-crafted furniture being made by woodworkers throughout the world. We'll be on the lookout for good examples, so if you'd like your work to be featured in *Current Work*, see the instructions on p. 88. Let us know if you have any ideas about how we might celebrate our special 25th anniversary.



of inspirational woodworking from our readers (pp. 88-91). For the name of this gallery, we reached into our archives and resurrected the name of an old, popular feature: *Current Work*. But if the name is quite new. Since we stopped publishing *Home Furniture* magazine, we would like *Fine Woodworking* to find a way to publish more examples of the well-crafted furniture being made by woodworkers throughout the world. We'll be on the lookout for good examples, so if you'd like your work to be featured in *Current Work*, see the instructions on p. 88. Let us know if you have any ideas about how we might celebrate our special 25th anniversary.

—Timothy D. Schreiner, editor

### Routed reeds without a router-cut look

—Regarding John Van Buren's article "A Jig for Cutting Curved and Tapered Reeds" (*FWW* #138, pp. 56-57): Over the years I have reeded a number of turnings in a similar fashion. However, I take the reeding one step further. After I rout the reeds and while the leg is still in the lathe, I carve each end of the reeds out to the shoulders. This eliminates the rounded ends of the reeds and the "router look," and gives the furniture the look of a more traditional reed.

—Milton Parker, Durham, N.C.

**Wants plans and a cut list**—First, I look forward to each issue of *Fine Woodworking*, but I have a small gripe. I have been wanting to buy or build a woodworking bench for my shop, and your "New-Fangled Workbench" (*FWW* #139, pp. 98-101) is just about perfect for my purposes. A more detailed drawing and

cut list would have been greatly appreciated. The workbench can be built with the limited information contained in the text, but a drawing and cut list would allow me to better visualize modifications. Thanks, and keep on publishing the magazine as is: "If it's not broke, don't fix it."

—Jeff Cisler, Marietta, Ohio

**Chisel review sparks reactions**—Rex Alexander has produced an informative article on the impact resistance of commercially available chisels (*FWW* #139, pp. 52-57). A few of his technical points need clarification, however. The two processes, machine- or hand-forging, are intended to be identical solutions to the need to provide near net-shape forming as well as alloy homogenization and particle size reduction.

After forging, these tools are reheated for austenitizing (generating the pre-quench phase), which incidentally, also

anneals them. Subsequently, they are all quenched, either in air or fluid, depending on the steel composition, to produce the hard but disastrously brittle phase called martensite. Final heat treating to a couple of hundred degrees Fahrenheit literally tempers the brittleness, sacrificing a little hardness while gaining ductility or its consequence, toughness: The elastic response of the steel is insensitive to common tempering regimens. He is quite correct in cautioning the reader that indentation hardness alone will not determine chisel durability: Neither will impact testing, except for impact durability.

Most of the tool steels used in these instruments contain carbide formers (tungsten, vanadium, etc.), and these particulate phases may or may not contribute to impact durability of an edge. The resulting carbides will, however, most definitely contribute to edge stability in the paring or shaving mode of use; thus, a chisel with a Rockwell hardness of 62 may outperform competitors in one application but appear inferior in other use contexts.

—Richard A. Queeney, professor of engineering mechanics, Penn State University

We here at Pfeil in Switzerland read with interest Rex Alexander's informative

### Writing an article

*Fine Woodworking* is a reader-written magazine. We welcome proposals, manuscripts, photographs and ideas from our readers, amateur or professional. We'll acknowledge all submissions and return those we can't publish. Send your contributions to *Fine Woodworking*, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

**Taunton**  
PUBLICATIONS  
for fellow enthusiasts

Henchcliffe, Irene Arfaras, Lydia Krikorian, Elaine Yamin, Carol Diehm, Margaret Bafundo, Dorothy Blasko, Susan Burke, James Post, Gayle Hammond, Lorraine Parsons. **Corporate Design:** Susan Edelman, director; Laura Bergeron, Erika Marks, Amy Russo. **Photography:** Anthony Phillips, Judi Rutz. **Promotion:** Philip Allard, Jennifer Rotunda, Wendy Bowes, Julia Brine, Mary Beth Cleary, Jennifer Winston. **Corporate Services:** Thomas Luxeder, director, April Mohr. **Corporate Circulation:** Sarah Roman, director. **Fulfillment:** Patricia Williamson, Renee Pagelson. **Client Services:** Carolyn Arneith, Kathryn Dolson, Holly Smith. **Order Processing:** Nancianne Boland, Barbara Lowe, Eileen McNulty, Deborah Pannozzo, Marylou Thompson. **Customer Services:** Judith Ruby, Donna Capalbo, Kathleen Baker, Nancy Brown, Rebecca LaBoudy, Dawn Teixeira. **Data Entry:** Carole Ando, Bonnie Beardsley, Margaret Fainer, Madelaine Frengs, Debra Sennefelder, Andrea Shorrock, Betty Stepney. **Distribution:** Paul Seipold, Mary Ann Costagliola, Deborah Greene, Linnea Ingram, Aaron Lund, Frederick Monnes, Romajane Noack, Christopher Pierwola, Elsie Rodriguez, Alice

Saxton. **Manufacturing:** Kathleen Davis, director. **Prepress:** John Garofalo, Patricia Petro, Stephen Roma, Deborah Cooper, William Bivona, David Blasko, Richard Booth, James Chappuis, Mark Coleman, Tina Foster, William Godfrey, Brian Leavitt, Martha Stammer, Chansam Thammavongsa, David Kenney, Joanne Bisson, Amy Evon, Kathy Martin. **Print Production:** Dee Flanagan, Nicole Anastas, John Cavallaro, Philip VanKirk, Tracie Pavlik, magazines. **Management Information Systems:** Robert Peters, director; Gabriel Dunn, Linda Reddington, Roger Seliga. **PC Applications:** Heidi Waldkirch, Robert Nielsen, Marjorie Omalyev, Cynthia Zibelin. **PC Systems:** Margaret Archer, Keith Anderson, Dwayne Gurley, Rita Myers, Judith Stansfield. **Operations:** **Purchasing & Facilities:** Timothy Rahr, Christopher Myers, Michael Capalbo, Michael Lewis, Jeannette Pascal, Dorothy Simpson, Charles Hollis, Susan Nerich, Alvin Jack, Lincoln Peters. **Cafeteria:** Donna Freeman, Geraldine Benno, Anna Pendergast, Norma-Jean Taylor. **Taunton Books:** James Childs, publisher; Margaret Day, Suzanne Noel, Jennifer Renjilian, Ellen Williams, Camille Jackson. **Book Editorial:** Carolyn Mandarano, editor; Peter Chapman, Meredith DeSousa. **Book Art:** Paula Schlosser, Kathleen Donovan, Lynne Phillips, Carol Singer. **Book Manufacturing:** Thomas Greco, Michael Gyulay. **Taunton Direct:** Deborah Curry Johnston, David Pond, Christine Rosato. **Megan Sangster, Eileen Sheehan, Jeanne Todaro. Taunton New Media:** Christopher Casey, Michael Cody, Lawrence Sullivan. **Taunton Trade Company:** John Bacigalupi, Peter Bill, Barbara Buckalew, John DiSette, Paul McGahren, Anthony Montilli, Eve Pison, Susan Preis, Eileen Swirsky. **Video:** Craig Lmanoff.



# Q: IS THIS OUR NEW BAR CLAMP OR IS THIS OUR NEW SPREADER?

A: YES.



The QUICK-GRIP® QUICK CHANGE™

Bar Clamp/Spreader – the new and improved clamp that easily

changes to

a spreader

without the



It's a spreader that's a clamp.

use of tools. Simply unsnap the

multi-position jaw,

slide it off, turn it

around, slide it on

and voilà, it's a spreader. No

kidding, it's that fast. And with

the QUICK-ADVANCE™ trigger, you

can clamp or spread faster. Which

means you can turn most any task



It's a clamp that's a spreader.

into half

the work

because you

hold twice the tool. So, get the

clamp that's a spreader from the

company that has just re-invented

the bar clamp, again.

**Quick CHANGE.**

**QUICK-GRIP®**  
**BAR CLAMP & SPREADER**

[www.quick-gripclamp.com](http://www.quick-gripclamp.com)

© 1999 AMERICAN TOOL COMPANY, INC.

# Letters (continued)

"Bench-Chisel Review," especially because our new bench chisels were included. Two additional aspects not addressed in Mr. Alexander's well-done test report are important to mention.

Many woodworkers are environmentally conscious. As consumers they choose to avoid woods such as cocobolo and rosewood taken from threatened tropical forests and transported over long distances. The wood used for handles on our Swiss-made tools is one aspect of our environmental responsibility program. The hornbeam comes from our local, sustainable, environmentally managed forests, and transport is minimal. Handles are finished with oil instead of solvent-based lacquer. The large round handle of our 12mm chisel allows the tool to roll, as Mr. Alexander astutely noted. We will correct this by providing a flat area on these handles in our future production.

Most woodworkers highly value a ready-to-use factory edge on the

tools they buy, which is why we hone and strop all cutting edges to razorlike sharpness. Your scientific testing gives no information on this subject. In fact, all 17 test chisels were reground prior to testing. Readers desiring information on factory edges should see the test report on 25 bench chisels in the August 1999 issue of *Wood* magazine. This test examines additional important practical and technical aspects. Paired with your fine report, the two articles give woodworkers a complete

overview of the market. Interestingly, their Rockwell measurements differ up and down from yours by as much as 3C, and their approach, observations and conclusions are substantially different—specifically regarding tool balance, handle comfort, blade toughness and, of course, the factory edge.

—Felix Zulauf, CEO, Pfeil, Langenthal, Switzerland

Being a part-time blacksmith as well as a part-time woodworker make me feel very

## Attention, professional furniture makers

The Taunton Press is planning to publish a directory of 150 independent furniture makers whose work shows good design and solid craftsmanship. To participate you must have been a professional furniture maker for at least two years, and you must supply four to eight publishable photos. Submissions will be judged by a panel of professional woodworkers. There

is no charge to enter or to be included in the directory, if accepted. Contact us for an entry package at: Independent Furniture Makers, Books Department, The Taunton Press, 63 South Main St., Newtown, CT 06470, or send e-mail to [furnmake@taunton.com](mailto:furnmake@taunton.com). You may also call (800) 926-8776, ext. 610. The deadline for submissions is June 15, 2000.

# KIMRICK

W A S T E R C A R V E R S



**3 1/2" & 4" Bun feet**



**4" pedestal feet**



**Corners**



**Mantle Kits**



**6" and 8" Legs**

WWW: [www.kimrick.com](http://www.kimrick.com)
2529 Welsenberger Fort Worth, Texas 76107
Phone: (817) 336-7303 Fax: (817) 336-1555

READER SERVICE NO. 250

## Enjoy the benefits of HVLP with a SUPER System!



Our SUPER model offers you the most powerful 3-stage turbine motor made by Ametek-Lamb (Ohio).

"Quality of atomization rated 9.8 out of 10... This system includes an excellent three-stage turbine... the gun atomizes beautifully and has a full range of features."

— American Woodworker Magazine

**FUJI**  
INDUSTRIAL SPRAY  
EQUIPMENT LTD.

- High transfer efficiency
- Soft, easy to control spray
- Compact and portable

65 Martin Ross Ave. #5, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M3J 2L6 I-800-650-0930 Fax: (416) 663-6238

READER SERVICE NO. 112

## Antique Reproduction Hardware



**Horton Brasses Inc.**

P.O. Box 120, Dept F 860-635-4400  
Cromwell, CT 06416 catalog: \$4.00  
[www.horton-brasses.com](http://www.horton-brasses.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 135

## WoodRat

if... it makes perfect dovetails shouldn't it also make those simpler joints like mortise and tenons finger joints and sliding dovetails?



[www.woodrat.com](http://www.woodrat.com)

write WoodRat, Godney, Wells, BA5 1RY UK  
tel. 011 44 1458 832744 fax 011 44 1458 833038

READER SERVICE NO. 230

In the Japanese Tradition

## FUJIHIRO

by Chutarō Imai, Master Blacksmith

- Superb quality, balance and durability
- Hand forged, laminated white steel
- Durable Japanese red oak handles
- Hand forged iron striking ring

Finish, timber, slick and timber slick chisels available singly and in sets.

FREE Brochure/full line Tool Catalog \$4.



**HIDA TOOL, INC.**

1333 San Pablo Ave., Berkeley, CA 94702 1-800-443-5512

READER SERVICE NO. 243

# 5,000 FASTENERS ONLINE!



Fasteners  
Epoxies  
Adhesives  
Hardware  
Sandpaper  
And more

## FREE CATALOG

Woodworking/Boatbuilding  
Supplies to the  
Trade & Craftsmen

800-423-0030

jamestowndistributors.com

10,000 Woodworking products...  
Only 1 click away

READER SERVICE NO. 31

## MOBILIZE WITH THE ORIGINAL



Invented in 1980, our mobile bases have revolutionized workshops worldwide. Why settle for anything less than the original premium mobile base from HTC.

- The benefits of a mobilized workshop:
1. Move machines with ease
  2. Easy workshop clean-up
  3. Create more room for more tools
  4. Gain valuable space
  5. Put machines where you need them
  6. Buy them once...Lifetime warranty

FREE Color Catalog  
Call: 1-800-624-2027



HTC PRODUCTS, INC.,  
ROYAL OAK, MI 48068-0839

"We'll put these bases under our machines anyway."

-Wood Magazine, Dec 1998



READER SERVICE NO. 177



TO ORDER CALL TOLL FREE:  
**1-800-260-2647**



900 S. Main Street  
East Peoria, IL 61611  
email: catalog@ai-supply.com

Shop The Rest, Find The Hidden Charges & Then Buy From Us!

## FREE SHIPPING!

(On orders over \$75 in the Cont. U.S.)

Please Add \$2.95 for Insurance & Handling!  
Limited Quantities & Prices. Subject to Availability

24 Hr. Fax Orders: (309) 698-0877

### BOSCH

1613EVS 2HP Plunge Router ..... \$194.00  
NEW! 1617EVS 2HP EVS Router ..... \$178.00  
NEW! 1618EVS 2 HP D-Handle Router ..... \$208.90  
1278VSK Compact Belt Sander Kit ..... \$128.90  
1640VSK Fine Cut Kit ..... \$214.90  
3960CFK 24V Drill/Saw Kits \$448.90  
NEW! 3650K 14.4V T-Handle Cordless Drill Kit w/2 batteries, case & charger ..... \$197.90  
3725DVS 5" H.D. R/O Sander-Polisher ..... \$138.90  
NEW! 1295DH 5" Swift Sand R/O Palm Sander ..... \$82.00  
NEW! 1587AVSP Jigsaw Kit w/9 assorted blades & case ..... \$158.90

### PORTER-CABLE

NEW! 557 Plate Joiner Kit  
•Does mini size biscuits & standard size #7.5 amp motor  
•Tilt-fence does not have to be removed for flush cuts. #7-position depth stop  
•Fence let's you position your cut from outside face  
•Includes case, dust bag, 2" & 4" blades & extra biscuits.  
SUPER SALE ..... \$197.90

5554 1000 Pc. Asst. Biscuits \$19.50  
Brad, Finish & Framing Nailers Kits  
All kits include case

NEW! CDA250 15G Cordless Angle Finish Nailer ..... \$276.00  
BN125A 18G 1/2" Brad ..... \$87.90  
BN200A 18G Brad Nail Kit ..... \$118.00  
DA250A 15G 1/2" Finish ..... \$199.90  
FN 250A 16G 1/2" Finish ..... \$181.50  
NS150A 18G 1/2" Crm Splr \$118.00  
FC350 Clipped Head 2"-3" Framing Nailer Kit ..... \$277.00  
FR350 Full Round Head 2"-3" Framing Nailer Kit ..... \$277.00

693PK 1-1/2 HP Plunge Router Kit includes 690 w/ fixed base, plunge base w/ case ..... \$189.90  
NEW! 691RS Router Work Shop \$296.90  
NEW! 7529 2HP Plunge Router ..... \$217.00  
NEW! 97529 2HP Plunge Router with case and Micro Edge Guide ..... \$247.90  
690 1 1/2 HP Router ..... \$135.00  
691 1 1/2 HP D-HDL Router ..... \$161.50  
6931 Plunge Base Only ..... \$82.00  
6911 D-Handle Base Only ..... \$72.00  
7539P 3-1/4 HP Plunge Router-Plus Free Fine Depth Adj. (\$26.50 Value) ..... \$294.90  
75183-1/4 HP SSP FB Router \$277.00  
97310 Laminate Trim Kit ..... \$183.00  
697 Router Table w/ 1 1/2 H.P. Router \$238.00  
698 Router Table w/ out motor \$135.75  
NEW! 9543 Jig Saw w/ case ..... \$167.90  
9862F 12V Cordless Drill Kit w/ Free Flashlight ..... \$158.90  
NEW! 9876 14.4v Cordless Drill with 2 batteries ..... \$163.50  
NEW! 9884CS 19.2V Cordless Combo ..... \$352.50  
9444 Sander Kit ..... \$99.00  
330 Speed Block Sander ..... \$69.50  
3325" QS Palm Sander ..... \$59.90  
3335" QS R/O Dst Sdr H&L ..... \$63.90  
333VS VS R/O Palm Sander ..... \$83.00  
3345" QS R/O Dustless Sdr \$64.90  
352VS VS Belt Sander ..... \$173.00  
7335 5" VS R/O Sander ..... \$139.00  
97355 5" VS R/O Sander with Dust Collection & Case ..... \$149.00  
552 Prod. Pocket Cutter ..... \$609.00  
7800 Drywall Sander ..... \$358.00  
362 4x24 Belt Sdr & Bag ..... \$229.00  
362VS 4 x 24VS Belt Sander & Bag \$235.00  
360 3x24 Belt Sander & Bag ..... \$216.90  
360VS 3x24 VS Belt Sander & Bag \$229.00  
347K 7-1/4 Circ. Saw & Case ..... \$128.90  
743K LH 7-1/4 Circ. Saw & case ..... \$128.90

### DELTA

12-1/2" Planer  
Features: •Quick change knife system •Exclusive cutterhead-snipe control lock  
•Easy-to-read English and Metric scale.  
\*DEL 22-560P List \$568.00 SALE ..... \$327.90

BONUS: Free Extra Set of Planer Knives & Dust Chute!

### DELTA

DW733 12-1/2" Planer w/extra set of knives & dust chute ..... \$359.90\*  
DW788 Scroll Saw with FREE stand (a \$79 value) ..... \$437.90  
DW 708 12" Comp. Sliding Miter Saw \$617.90  
DW 744 10" Table Saw with FREE Stand (a \$138.00 value) ..... \$509.00  
DW 682K Biscuit Joiner with FREE 100 Biscuits (a \$6 value) ..... \$157.90  
DW911 AM/FM Radio/Charger ..... \$128.95  
DW 423 5" EVS R/O Sander w/H&L & Dust Collector ..... \$82.50  
DW 991KS-214.4V Combo Drill & Saw Kit w/case ..... \$312.95  
DW 364 7-1/4 Circ. Saw w/Brake \$149.90  
DW-4KP 4 Piece Fat Boy Combo Kit Includes: Recp. Saw, circ. saw, hammer drill/driver, flex flashlight, charger & case. BONUS: Free Dewalt Leather Holster (\$29.00 value) ..... \$527.90  
DW625 VS Elect. 3HP Plunge Router BONUS: Free Fine Depth Adj. (a \$25.00 value) ..... \$275.00  
DW621 2HP VS Plunge Router BONUS: Free Fine Depth Adj. (A \$20.00 value) ..... \$188.90  
DW995KS-2 18V Combo Drill & Saw Kit w/case ..... \$359.00  
DW321KS.8A Jig Saw Kit ..... \$162.00  
DW972K-212V Cordless Drill, 2 Batteries ..... \$174.95  
DW991K-2 14V Cordless Drill, 2 Batteries ..... \$194.90  
DW995K-2 18V Cordless Drill, 2 Batteries ..... \$257.90  
DW746X 30" Table Saw ..... \$899.00  
DW746-2 Base Unit w/52" Fence \$959.00

### DELTA

NEW! 36-945 Platinum Unisaw ..... \$1599.00\*  
NEW! 36-475 Platinum Cont.'s Saw \$785.00\*  
NEW! 28-255 Platinum Edition Band Saw Includes Enclosed Stand, Precision Rip Fence with 18" Guides, Mobile Base & high quality Blade. .... \$788.00\*  
Uni-Saws With Biesemeyer or Uni-Fence  
36-830 3H.P. w/30" Uni-Fence ..... \$1399.00\*  
36-831 3H.P. w/30" Biesemeyer T-Square Fence \$1399.00\*  
36-820 3H.P. w/52" Uni-Fence (Special Edition) ..... \$1499.00\*  
36-821 3H.P. w/50" Biesemeyer S2 T-Square Fence ..... \$1499.00\*  
NEW! 22-680 15" Planer with Stand & Outfeed ..... \$1117.90  
NEW! 22-680 15" Planer with Stand & Outfeed Bonus With Extra Set of Knives (a \$131.00 value) ..... \$1167.90  
28-275 14" Open Band-Saw ..... \$497.90\*  
37-190 6" Deluxe Jointer ..... \$379.00\*  
NEW! 37-195 6" Pro Jointer ..... \$447.90\*  
NEW! 37-195-P 6" Pro Jointer w/extra set knives \$489.00\*  
37-350A 8" Jointer with stand ..... \$1297.90\*  
43-379 Heavy Duty Special Edition Shaper ..... \$1219.00\*  
NEW! 43-420 Platinum Edition Shaper ..... \$1399.00\*  
31-280 Sanding Center ..... \$728.00\*  
\* Price After Delta Mail-In Rebate thru 3/30/00  
NEW! 31-120 12" Disc Sander ..... \$168.90  
34-182 Tenoning Jig ..... \$84.90  
11-990 5SP Drill Press ..... \$192.00  
17-905 Mortising Attachment with case ..... \$22.00  
14-650 1/2 H.P. Hollow Chisel Mortiser ..... \$217.00  
14-650XP 1/2 H.P. Hollow Chisel Mortiser including 4 standard Mortise Chisels & Bits, 1/2", 5/16", 3/8" & 1/2" \$247.90  
50-840P 1 HP 650 CFM Dust Collector Includes Over \$27.00 Value Free  
•FREE 1-Delta 4" x 10' Dust Hose  
•FREE 1-Delta Alum. Blast Gates  
•FREE 2-Delta 4" Hose Clamps  
TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$229.90  
50-850P 1-1/2 HP 1200 CFM Dust Collector Includes Over \$42.00 Value Free  
•FREE 1-Delta 4" x 10' Dust Hose  
•FREE 2-Delta Alum. Blast Gates  
•FREE 4-Delta 4" Hose Clamps  
TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$298.90  
NEW! 50-820 Portable Dust Collector ..... \$184.90  
36-865 Versa-Feeder ..... \$249.00  
50-860 850 CFM Air Cleaner w/2 Free Filters ..... \$235.00  
31-780P Oscillating Spindle Sander Super Bonus Buy; FREE Delta 31-781 Sanding Spindle Set (a \$69.00 value) ..... \$219.00  
36-235 12" Compound Miter Saw ..... \$308.00  
NEW! 40-680P P-20 20" Scr1 Saw BONUS: 36 Free Blades \$488.00  
40-650 Q-3 18" Scroll Saw ..... \$398.90  
NEW! 37-380 8" Pro Jointer with stand ..... \$1085.00  
NEW! 37-380P 8" Pro Jointer w/ stand & extra knives \$1139.00  
43-505 Router/Shaper ..... \$297.90  
\* Price After Delta Mail-In Rebate thru 3/30/00

### PORTER-CABLE

#### Nailer/Air Compressor Kits

Choice of: BN125A or BN200A Brad Nailer - OR- FN250A or DA250A Finish Nailer. Kits include: 1HP comp. brad or fin nailer kit, 25 ft. air hose & MF hose connections.

#PCT CFBN125 ..... \$258.90  
#PCT CFBN200 ..... \$296.00  
#PCT CFDA250A ..... \$405.00  
#PCT CFFN250A ..... \$359.00

### PORTER-CABLE

#### FACTORY RECONDITIONED TOOLS

Full One Year Warranty!

352VSR VS Belt Sander ..... \$139.90  
9444R Profile Sander Kit ..... \$79.90  
9862R 12V Cordless Kit ..... \$119.00  
9737R 9.6A VS Tiger Saw Kit \$136.90  
340R 1/4 Sheet Fin Sander ..... \$38.90

### DELTA

NEW! 31-120 12" Disc Sander ..... \$168.90  
34-182 Tenoning Jig ..... \$84.90  
11-990 5SP Drill Press ..... \$192.00  
17-905 Mortising Attachment with case ..... \$22.00  
14-650 1/2 H.P. Hollow Chisel Mortiser ..... \$217.00  
14-650XP 1/2 H.P. Hollow Chisel Mortiser including 4 standard Mortise Chisels & Bits, 1/2", 5/16", 3/8" & 1/2" \$247.90  
50-840P 1 HP 650 CFM Dust Collector Includes Over \$27.00 Value Free  
•FREE 1-Delta 4" x 10' Dust Hose  
•FREE 1-Delta Alum. Blast Gates  
•FREE 2-Delta 4" Hose Clamps  
TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$229.90  
50-850P 1-1/2 HP 1200 CFM Dust Collector Includes Over \$42.00 Value Free  
•FREE 1-Delta 4" x 10' Dust Hose  
•FREE 2-Delta Alum. Blast Gates  
•FREE 4-Delta 4" Hose Clamps  
TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$298.90  
NEW! 50-820 Portable Dust Collector ..... \$184.90  
36-865 Versa-Feeder ..... \$249.00  
50-860 850 CFM Air Cleaner w/2 Free Filters ..... \$235.00  
31-780P Oscillating Spindle Sander Super Bonus Buy; FREE Delta 31-781 Sanding Spindle Set (a \$69.00 value) ..... \$219.00  
36-235 12" Compound Miter Saw ..... \$308.00  
NEW! 40-680P P-20 20" Scr1 Saw BONUS: 36 Free Blades \$488.00  
40-650 Q-3 18" Scroll Saw ..... \$398.90  
NEW! 37-380 8" Pro Jointer with stand ..... \$1085.00  
NEW! 37-380P 8" Pro Jointer w/ stand & extra knives \$1139.00  
43-505 Router/Shaper ..... \$297.90  
\* Price After Delta Mail-In Rebate thru 3/30/00

### JDS COMPANY

NEW! JDS 750 750 CFM Filtration System ..... \$255.00  
JDS 8-12 1570 CFM Fil. Sys. \$488.00

### DELTA

23-710 Sharpening Center ..... \$148.90  
31-460 4x6 Belt/Disc Sander ..... \$117.90  
NEW! 31-250P 18/36" Drum Sander with FREE 50' 120G Abrasive Roll (\$32.00 value) ..... \$798.90

Stock Your Shop!™

Get More Deals! Get Our Catalog!  
Shop A&I Online at: ai-supply.com

READER SERVICE NO. 55

# Letters (continued)

disappointed in your pseudo-scientific article on bench chisels. I think a better test for toughness would be one that would simulate the paring action on the cutting edge of the chisel.

However, what really turns me off and reduces the credibility of the article is the misleading explanation of the heat-treating process. The very important step of hardening, which should take place between annealing and tempering, has been omitted. I have enjoyed *Fine Woodworking* for many, many years. Keep up the good work.

—Paul Carlson, Hickory Corners, Mich.

Of the various magazine reviews concerning the performance of bench chisels, your article was the best I've read. However, I have a differing opinion about two matters:

I don't agree with using a diamond lap for the harder steels (i.e., Japanese chisels) because I believe that the laps have a tendency to work-harden the surface and actually make the edge of the

chisel more brittle, therefore susceptible to "teeth."

I also disagree with honing only through a 1,200-grit diamond lap and not refining the edge further. The edge is still going to have a lot of teeth and again is more susceptible to chipping.

Having said that, I believe the test still indicated the toughest chisels. Of course the test omitted the "human feel" that is extremely subjective. I know from experience that some of the harder chisel steels don't bite the wood as effectively once they get the least bit dull; as opposed to slightly softer steel.

I'm sure I am not alone when I say that I am always going to be searching for the ultimate chisel.

—Brian T. Derber, Oconomowoc, Wis.

**The straight scoop on plunge-cutting**—Regarding Pat Warner's article, "Spiral Router Bits vs. Straight Router Bits" (*FWW* #140, pp. 62-65): He states that "you can't really plunge any deeper than

about 1/8 in. with a typical straight bit." The bit pictured is actually one of our (CMT) mortising bits (#801.627.11). For your readers' information, all CMT straight bits have a "Z" grind on the tip of the bit that includes a sharpened edge on the web, to facilitate plunge-cutting.

—Dan Sherman, CMT USA,  
Greensboro, N.C.

### About your safety:

Working wood is inherently dangerous. Using hand or power tools improperly or ignoring standard safety practices can lead to permanent injury or even death. Don't try to perform operations you learn about here (or elsewhere) until you're certain they are safe for you. If something about an operation doesn't feel right, don't do it. Look for another way. We want you to enjoy the craft, so please keep safety foremost in your mind whenever you're in the shop.

—Timothy D. Schreiner, editor

**Limited introduction offers now!**  
1-800-700-0071

**HAMMER**  
a company of the FELDER-Group  
Machines + Tools for Wood

We are proud to introduce our full line of modern woodworking machines to the American market. State of the art production technologies, modern design, years of experience and full US back up support guarantees highest quality for best prices.

**WOODWORKING**

If you don't call our toll free number and order a free catalog or product video you will never know what you have been missing so far.



**C3-31/41 Combination**  
12" or 16" planer,  
48", 78" or 9 ft sliding table  
12" saw blade, shaper or router

**VIDEO**  
30 min. Woodworking with HAMMER products.

Call now for free Video and price catalog!  
800-700-0071

**HAMMER USA**  
1851 Enterprise Blvd. West Sacramento · CA 95691  
Tel. 916-375-3196 · Fax 916-375-3199 · www.hammer.co.at

W00895\_09/99\_0202

READER SERVICE NO. 220

## Dust Collection

**Space Saving 2 & 3hp Systems with Integral Fan/Blower & Cyclone**



### Free Engineered Duct Design & Tech. Assistance

Affordable For Hobbyist or Professional

- 15 years of experience.
- 1 year limited warranty!
- Economical ductwork packages.

Industrial Systems 1.5hp & up.

Call, Fax or Email for a **FREE BROCHURE**

Visit us at [www.oneida-air.com](http://www.oneida-air.com) Email: [info@oneida-air.com](mailto:info@oneida-air.com)

**ONEIDA AIR SYSTEMS, INC.**<sup>TM</sup>

(315) 476-5151 FAX (315) 476-5044

1001 W. Fayette St. Syracuse, NY 13204

READER SERVICE NO. 247

# Makita®

# YOU'LL QUIT BEFORE IT DOES.



Special *30th*  
*Anniversary*

## 9.6V

3/8" Cordless Driver-Drill Kits

Models 6095DWBE & 6095DWBLE

- 2 Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH) batteries – environmentally friendly
- Charger DC1411 charges both Ni-CD & Ni-MH batteries
- Industrial strength keyless chuck
- Ergonomically enhanced rubberized grip for superior gripping



2.2Ah  
**Ni-MH**  
Nickel-Metal Hydride  
9.6V



**\$10** Manufacturer's  
Mail-in  
**Rebate!**  
at participating stores  
until December 31, 2000

Model 6095DWBLE includes Flashlight

Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH)

# 70% LONGER RUN TIME

# 4-WAY MONEY-MAKER!

● Planes ● Molds ● Sands ● Saws



Now you can turn a \$2 rough board into \$25 worth of finished molding in just seconds! Make over 350 standard moldings, tongue & groove, picture frame stock, any custom design! Quickly converts to Power-Feed Drum Sander or Gang Rip Saw. Commercial-Duty Machines in 12", 18" and 25" widths. Made in USA. Five-Year Warranty.

## Infinitely Variable Feed Makes The Difference!

Just a twist of the dial adjusts the Woodmaster from 70 to over 1,000 cuts per inch. Produces a glass-smooth finish on tricky grain patterns no other planer can handle. Exclusive two-motor system with plenty of "muscle" to handle low-cost, rough-cut lumber.

**FREE FACTS**  
**1-800-821-6651**  
 Ask for extension PE81

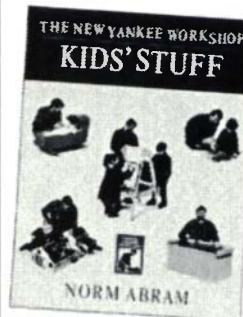
**Woodmaster Tools, Inc.**  
 1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept PE81  
 Kansas City, MO 64120  
[www.WoodmasterTools.com](http://www.WoodmasterTools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 106

## DISCOUNT PRICES ON BOOKS & VIDEOS

Call Toll Free 1-800-243-0713  
 No shipping charges in US on orders over \$35 others add \$3  
 Canada & Overseas add 15%  
 Fax 606-255-5444  
 phone inquiries call 606-255-5444  
<http://www.mannyswoodbooks.com>  
 e-mail: [purchasing@mannyswoodbooks.com](mailto:purchasing@mannyswoodbooks.com)

**Manny's Woodworkers Place**  
 555 South Broadway  
 Lexington, KY 40508



The New Yankee Workshop:  
 Kids' Stuff (Abrams) \$18  
 The Complete Dovetail (Kirby) \$14  
 Routing for Beginners (Bailey) \$21  
 Woodturning Methods (Darlow) \$22  
 Kayak Craft (Moores) \$18  
 Fine Line Design #9 Dog Breeds \$16  
 (Judy Gale Roberts)

## New Series of 10 Woodturning Project Videos by A an Holtham \$20 each.

- 1) Cheeseboard
- 2) Wall Clock
- 3) Table Lamp
- 4) Egg Cups and Stand
- 5) Salt & Pepper Mills
- 6) Pen and Pencil Set
- 7) Candle stick
- 8) Boxes
- 9) Mantle Clocks
- 10) Lidded Bowls



READER SERVICE NO. 231

**BRING MARKETING TO YOUR ART.  
 AND ART TO YOUR MARKETING.**

GUILD.COM AND GUILD SOURCEBOOKS ARE CHANGING THE WAY ART IS SOLD. WITH OVER 6,000 PIECES AVAILABLE FOR PURCHASE, GUILD.COM IS THE INTERNET'S MOST COMPREHENSIVE COLLECTION OF ORIGINAL ART.

FOR COMMISSION ARTISTS, WE OFFER GUILD SOURCEBOOKS AND GUILD.COM'S COMMISSION SECTION, USED BY THE WORLD'S TOP DESIGNERS, ARCHITECTS, ART CONSULTANTS AND COLLECTORS.

FOR MORE INFORMATION, CALL 1.877.ATGUILD OR VISIT THE SITE, [WWW.GUILD.COM](http://WWW.GUILD.COM).



**THE SOURCE OF THE FINEST ARTISTS AND THEIR WORK**

READER SERVICE NO. 88

**RAZOR SAW**  
It cuts FASTER! EASIER! MORE ACCURATELY!

Order now, only \$24.95 post paid!  
Craftsmen around the world have discovered the secret of better quality work. The Razor Saw cuts by pulling, and will give a cleaner, more accurate cut in half the time.

Purchase a RAZOR SAW now and we will include our 72 page catalog of the world's finest woodworking tools. Or send \$3.00 for a two year subscription to our Catalog.

The Best handsaw for ALL woodworkers!  
Dealer Inquiries Invited. Dept D2

**THE JAPAN WOODWORKER**

1731 Clement Ave. • Alameda, CA 94501 • 1-800-537-7820

READER SERVICE NO. 28

**MARC ADAMS School of Woodworking SUMMER 2000**

Send For Our Complete Class Brochure Or Visit Our Website  
[www.marcadams.com](http://www.marcadams.com)

**INSTRUCTORS INCLUDE:**  
Graham Blackburn • Allan Breed  
Brian Borgs • Tim Coleman  
Rick Bütz • Roy Underhill  
Dr. Roger Cliffe • Seth Stem  
Bob Flexner • John Economaki  
Michael Fortune • George Gordon  
Garrett Hack and many more!



**HANDS-ON COURSES:**  
Cabinet Making  
Carving • Chair Making  
Finishing • Furniture Making  
Joinery • Turning  
Veneering & Marquetry  
and MUCH MORE!

Courses run May thru October,  
Week Long and Weekend Workshops

**MASW**  
5504 E, 500 N,  
Franklin, IN 46131

Call for reservations NOW!  
Lodging is available nearby. 1-317-535-4013  
FAX 317-535-1713

Call to find out more about our Masters and Apprenticeship Programs!

Scholarships Available/ Sponsored by: POWERMATIC • DE WALT • SYSTMATIC • CMT

READER SERVICE NO. 40

**The Lion Miter Trimmer...**

"The best tool for your mitering needs."



Cuts any angle: 45° to 90°—perfectly!  
Cuts any wood: hard or soft.

—USED BY CRAFTSMEN SINCE 1900—  
"Made In New England"

**POOTATUCK CORP.**  
P.O. Box 24, Windsor, VT 05089  
(802) 674-5984

READER SERVICE NO. 203

**2000 WORKSHOPS**

**CENTER for FURNITURE CRAFTSMANSHIP**

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| CHRIS BECKSVOORT | Intermediate Furniture |
| BRIAN BOGGS      | Chair Design           |
| PETER DEAN       | Computer-aided Design  |
| OWEN EDWARDS     | Plane Making           |
| MICHAEL EMMONS   | Rustic Furniture       |
| MICHAEL FORTUNE  | Advanced Furniture     |
| JOHN FOX         | Japanese Hand Tools    |
| GARRETT HACK     | Decorative Elements    |
| DARRYL KEIL      | Veneering & Bending    |
| SILAS KOPF       | Marquetry              |
| PETER KORN       | Basic Woodworking      |
| TERI MASASCHI    | Finishing              |
| JOHN MCALEVEY    | Design & Craft         |
| WILL NEPTUNE     | Carving Ornamentation  |
| DEAN POWELL      | Furniture Photography  |
| MICHAEL PURYEAR  | Veneering & Bending    |
| CHRIS PYE        | Ornamental Carving     |
| MARIO RODRIGUEZ  | Traditional Hand Tools |
| CRAIG STEVENS    | Design & Craft         |
- and TWELVE-WEEK INTENSIVES

25 Mill Street, Rockport, Maine 04856  
207-594-5611 ■ Peter Korn, Director  
[www.woodscool.com](http://www.woodscool.com)  
[peter@woodscool.com](mailto:peter@woodscool.com)

**Tight Quarters?**

Concerned about space? Concerned about cost?

So are we. Our X31 Combination machines have it all: Panel saw, shaper, planer, mortiser, jointer, and microwave. Less space, less cost, less hassle and less time wasted if you own a Robland X31 or LX31. Do it right the first time with the



very best European

machine from the largest and most experienced direct seller in North America, Laguna Tools. The finest craftsmanship, durability, and value for the



money. You can spend more, but you can't

buy a more precise, powerful or dependable machine. Backed by the most complete customer support in the industry. Call our 800 number today to receive your free demo video and learn why the Robland X31 is the most popular combination machine in the world today.



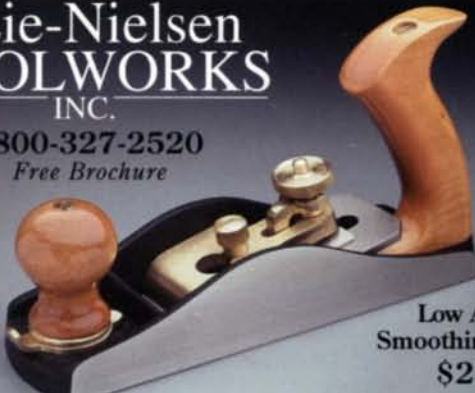
**LAGUNA TOOLS**

2265 Laguna Canyon Road, Laguna Beach, CA 92651  
800-234-1976 • (949) 494-7006 • Fax (949) 497-1346

E mail: [lagunatools@earthlink.net](mailto:lagunatools@earthlink.net) • Visit our Website: [www.lagunatools.com](http://www.lagunatools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 38

**Lie-Nielsen  
TOOLWORKS  
INC.**  
1-800-327-2520  
*Free Brochure*



Low Angle  
Smoothing Plane  
**\$235**  
[www.lie-nielsen.com](http://www.lie-nielsen.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 19

**Turn to Quality.** **AMAZING NEW FINISH!**



HUT Crystal Coat Friction Finish • Only \$8.99! Glass like finish in seconds. Try it on all your wood projects! Easy application! 6 oz. bottle

- HIGH-QUALITY pen, project & duckcall kits
- LARGEST SELECTION of pen blanks
- HUT wood finishes & polishes
- SHERLINE lathe systems & accessories
- INNOVATION, not imitation

**Order Today!**  
1-800-547-5461

**FREE Catalog** 1-800-684-9371 **CALL TODAY!**

[www.hutproducts.com](http://www.hutproducts.com) HUTpw@aol.com  
15361 Hopper Rd., Sturgeon, MO 65284



READER SERVICE NO. 7

**ONE-MAN SAWMILL**  
Turns Timber Into  
**CASH!**



Models start at **\$4699.00**

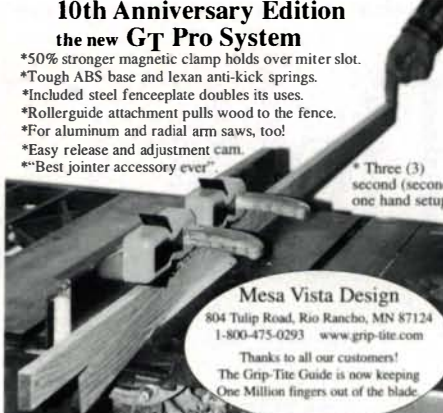
**FREE FACTS!** TimberKing, Inc. 1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept SB31  
Kansas City, Missouri 64120  
[www.timberking.com](http://www.timberking.com)

**1-800-942-4406 ext. SB31**

READER SERVICE NO. 105

**10th Anniversary Edition**  
the new **GT Pro System**

- \*50% stronger magnetic clamp holds over miter slot.
- \*Tough ABS base and lexan anti-kick springs.
- \*Included steel fenceplate doubles its uses.
- \*Rollerguide attachment pulls wood to the fence.
- \*For aluminum and radial arm saws, too!
- \*Easy release and adjustment cam.
- \*\*"Best jointer accessory ever"



\* Three (3) second (second) one hand setup.

Mesa Vista Design  
804 Tulip Road, Rio Rancho, MN 87124  
1-800-475-0293 [www.grip-tite.com](http://www.grip-tite.com)

Thanks to all our customers!  
The Grip-Tite Guide is now keeping  
One Million fingers out of the blade.

READER SERVICE NO. 244

**Shape a New Career**



Check out our intensive nine month  
*Fine Woodworking Program.*

Fine Woodworking  
University of Rio Grande  
Rio Grande, Ohio 45674  
740-245-7311

**The Woodworker's Edge... BRIDGEWOOD®**

**Quality... More Affordable Than You Think!**

**TSC-10C Table Saw...**  
*with features such as a large working surface, powerful American made motor and sturdy construction you'll see we didn't spare quality to make an economical table saw*

- Miter gauge with T-slot groove
- Cast iron extension wings
- Magnetic switch
- Quick release plug connection on motor
- 4" dust collection hook up
- Large 27" x 40" table
- Beveled front table edge for smooth miter gauge operation
- 1 1/2 HP American made motor
- Comes with VEGA® U-26 fence (shown)

**BW-6R Jointer**  
*Acclaimed a "best buy" among 6" jointers by a professional woodworking publication*

- 3-knife cutterhead
- Jackscrew knife adjustment
- New fence tilts both ways, quick and easy adjustment. 3 positive stops
- Enclosed stand
- 1 HP motor
- Rabbeting table and ledge
- Surface ground tables
- Pushbutton switch
- Cast iron wheels

**Ask about easy Bridgewoodworker LEASE PLANS**



*See when it's full!*

**BW-002A Dust Collector...**  
*portable, compact unit can solve your dust collection problems at a very low cost*

- 1 Micron, 16.2 sq. ft. filter bag
- Two 4" dia. hose inlets
- 1059 CFM
- 43.5 gal. see-through collection bag attached with quick release metal straps
- 2 HP single-phase motor
- Metal impeller (not plastic)

**BW-15BS Bandsaw...**  
*don't let its low price fool you, this amazing bandsaw is designed and built to provide trouble free operation cut after cut.*

- Heavily ribbed, cast iron c-frame
- Cast aluminum wheels with rubber tires
- Non-rocking steel floor stand
- Miter gauge
- Motor mounted directly to cast iron frame for smooth operation
- 3/4 HP motor
- Two blade speeds: 2000 or 2600 SFM

**BW-15P Planer...**  
*economically priced yet built like big professional planers, it offers absolutely vibration free finishes*

- 3 HP motor
- 3 v-belt drive from motor to cutterhead
- Table moves up and down - cutterhead stationary for smoother cuts
- Sturdy 4 leg non-rocking stand
- Extended stock support rollers
- Anti-kickback fingers across entire width
- 3 spring chip breaker
- Heavy cast iron construction
- Magnetic switch
- Jackscrew knife adjustment

**WILKE  
MACHINERY COMPANY  
MACHINERY POWER TOOLS**

For information and a FREE Catalog contact us by toll free phone...  
**1-800-235-2100**  
visit our web page...  
**[www.wilkemach.com](http://www.wilkemach.com)**  
or write:  
3230 Susquehanna Trail, York, PA 17402

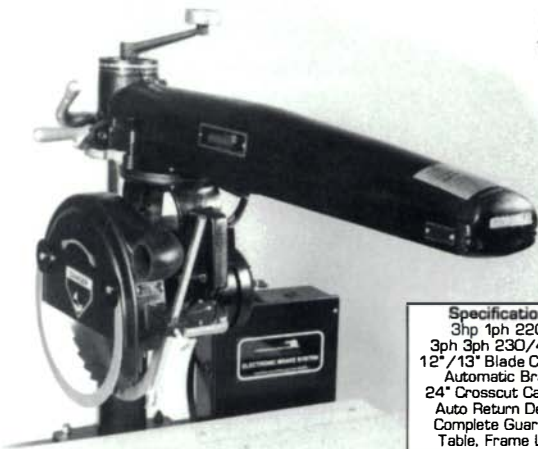
READER SERVICE NO. 3

EP2E



**THE ORIGINAL™**

**12" Contractor Duty Radial Arm Saw  
Model 3512**



**Specifications**  
 3hp 1ph 220V  
 3ph 3ph 230/460V  
 12"/13" Blade Capacity  
 Automatic Brake  
 24" Crosscut Capacity  
 Auto Return Device  
 Complete Guarding,  
 Table, Frame Legs

**The Original Saw Company**

465 3rd Ave. SE • P.O. Box 331  
 Britt, Iowa 50423

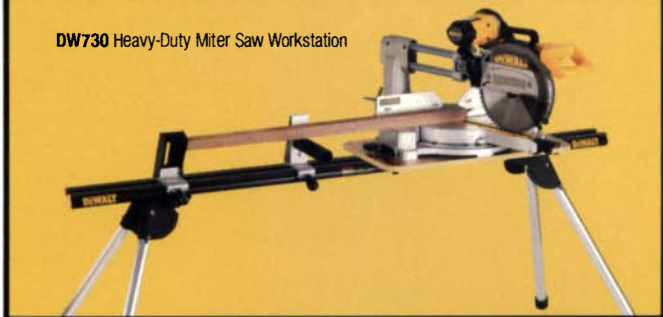
800-733-4063 • (515) 843-3868 • FAX (515) 843-3869

**Call for Distributor Nearest You**

READER SERVICE NO. 85

**THE BEST PLACE YET  
TO GET THE JOB DONE.**

DW730 Heavy-Duty Miter Saw Workstation



**DURABLE**  
300lb. capacity

**ACCURATE**  
Set precise cut lengths

**VERSATILE**  
Set up/stow instantly

This new miter saw workstation weighs in at just 35 lbs., yet supports 300 lbs. An on-board measuring system adjusts quickly for accurate cuts. The unique design lets you reposition the saw anywhere on the rugged beam. Legs lock in place or fold for easy storage. In sum, everything you need, wherever you need it.

1-800-4DEWALT  
[www.dewalt.com](http://www.dewalt.com)



READER SERVICE NO. 194

The ultimate in  
**CRAFTSMANSHIP**

**NuCraft**

CAST IRON ROUTER  
TABLES & ACCESSORIES



- Router tables can be mounted as an extension to your table saw or used as a free standing unit
- Dense iron dampens vibration and provides natural lubricity for smooth operation
- Crafted from fine grade 30K gray iron
- Rugged and durable
- Accessories include: steel router plate system, extension tables and leg sets



Call today for a FREE Shop Solutions Catalog.  
**1-800-971-5050**  
 Clayton Machine Corp.  
 Royal Oak, MI 48068-0520

READER SERVICE NO. 189

**FREE CATALOG**  
 100's of Carbide Tipped  
 Router Bits and Unique  
 Woodworking Accessories!

**The NEW Merle Clamp®**  
 has pivoting jaws that  
 adjust to any angle!



- NEW Dual Pivots clamp virtually any size or shape securely!
- Adjustable, uniform clamping pressure on all sides
- Great for circles, ovals, and wide cabinet frames
- Almost limitless capacity
- Durable cast aluminum and steel construction

Includes 23 ft. steel banding!



Regular Price "\$39"  
**SALE**  
**\$26.95**  
 ITEM #1439

**FREE SHIPPING**  
 IN CONTIGUOUS USA FOR ALL ITEMS

Order **1-800-533-9298**

**MILCS**

PROFESSIONAL WOODWORKING PRODUCTS  
 P.O. Box 4053 FA, Rydal, PA 19046

READER SERVICE NO. 205

Some dovetail  
jigs promise you  
everything...

**The Keller Dovetail System**  
 only promises  
 what it can deliver.

Fast setup. No test cuts. Precision joinery. Unlimited widths. Classic and variable spacing. Compound, acute and obtuse angles. Curved dovetails. Box joints. Made in USA since 1976. 20-yr. warranty. 30-day money-back guarantee.

"Your best choice.  
 It's the easiest of all the  
 jigs to use and great for  
 production use."

-Woodworker's Journal

VIDEO: \$8.95 + \$2 P/H



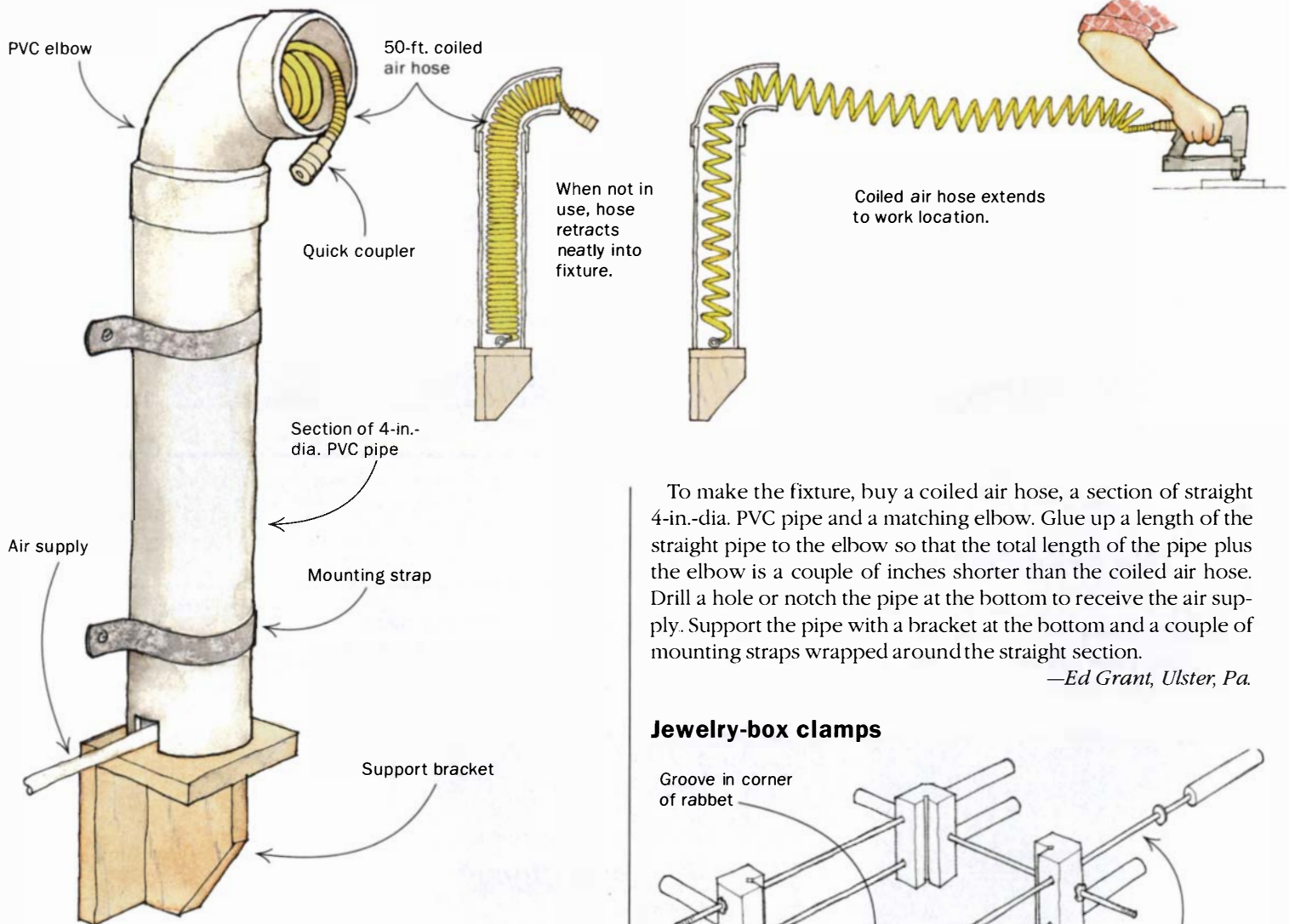
**KELLER & CO.**  
 1327 'I' Street, Dept. F30  
 Petaluma, CA 94952  
 1-800-995-2456  
 707-763-9336

**Keller Dovetail System**  
*Simple. Fast. Accurate. Enjoyable!*

READER SERVICE NO. 124

# Methods of Work

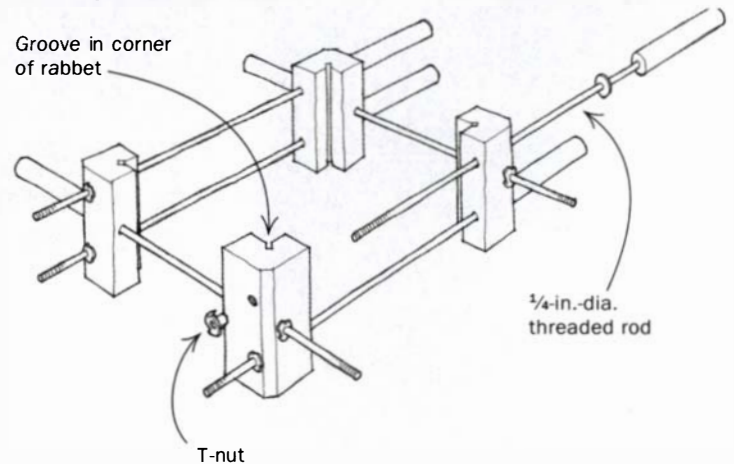
EDITED AND DRAWN BY JIM RICHEY



To make the fixture, buy a coiled air hose, a section of straight 4-in.-dia. PVC pipe and a matching elbow. Glue up a length of the straight pipe to the elbow so that the total length of the pipe plus the elbow is a couple of inches shorter than the coiled air hose. Drill a hole or notch the pipe at the bottom to receive the air supply. Support the pipe with a bracket at the bottom and a couple of mounting straps wrapped around the straight section.

—Ed Grant, Ulster, Pa.

## Jewelry-box clamps



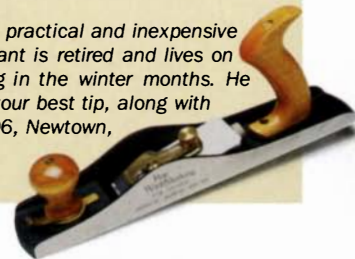
The inexpensive but effective homemade clamps shown above are designed for gluing up small jewelry boxes, 8 in. to 10 in. on a side. Start by cutting four 4-in. blocks from 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. square stock. Cut

## Retractable air-hose fixture

You need a readily available air supply in your shop if you use air-powered tools. An air hose that snakes across the floor or over benches and machines is an awkward nuisance and can be a real safety hazard. Shown above is an inexpensive PVC-pipe fixture that puts your air supply right where you need it. A 50-ft. coiled hose has a reach of about 25 ft., and the hose retracts into storage when you're finished with it. The fixture can be attached to a wall, a post or under a bench.

## A reward for the best tip

Ed Grant won an engraved Lie-Nielsen handplane for the winning tip shown above. His idea is a practical and inexpensive solution that brings order to the chaos that air hoses can sometimes cause in a woodshop. Grant is retired and lives on a small farm in northeastern Pennsylvania, where he accomplishes most of his woodworking in the winter months. He learned woodworking from his father and passed on the passion to both of his sons. Send us your best tip, along with any photos or sketches (we'll redraw them), to *Methods of Work*, Fine Woodworking, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.



# Free Catalog **Garrett Wade Tools** Free Catalog

**SALE A / Cabinetmaker's Clamps Are Very Inexpensive – And Incredibly Useful**  
High quality German-made. With a throat depth of 2½" these small fast-acting clamps are endlessly useful. Light and strong. And the vinyl capped swivel end and perfectly flat jaw minimizes marring.

		Regular	Sale
37F01.10	4" Cab. Clamp (10)	\$62.95	\$44.95
37F01.20	8" Cab. Clamp (10)	\$68.95	\$48.95
37F01.30	12" Cab. Clamp (10)	\$73.95	\$52.95

Combination Set consists of 10 of each of the 3 sizes of clamps. 30 Clamps total- only \$4.65 each.  
37F10.10 Combination Set \$205.85 **\$139.50**



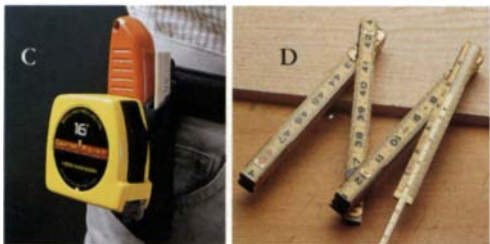
## B / Anchor Knife

Made by one of the oldest established knife making firms in Solingen Germany – a solid tool for recreation or day-to-day use in the shop. Single, ready to use 2½" long blade.

10H07.01 Anchor Knife \$29.50

**NEW C / Holds Your Knife, Pencil & A Tape**  
This tough custom rubber casting holds a Utility Knife, a tape measure and a pencil. Attaches to any belt by a steel clip on the back of the holder. The Knife is included. Tape is sold separately. (Any tape with a clip will fit well.)

	Regular	Sale
98K08.25	Holder Plus Knife	\$18.95 <b>\$14.95</b>
50K08.01	16' Centerpoint Tape	\$15.95



**SALE D / Starrett Classic 6 Ft. Folding Hardwood Rule – At An Exceptional Price**

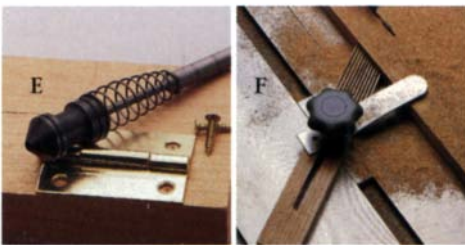
This style of rule is perhaps one of the most familiar "working tools" used in in the USA. Starrett made. Solid Brass fittings. Clear markings. Here it is – at a huge saving to you.

	Regular	Sale
20K12.01	6 ft. Starrett Rule	\$29.95 <b>\$14.95</b>

## E / A Self Centering Punch

It's tricky to center pilot holes when mounting hardware. This clever and inexpensive tool does the job easily. A cone shaped nose insures that the prick-pointed plunger will hit exact center.

35K08.01 Self Center Punch \$9.95



**SALE F / Universal Table Saw Feather Board**  
Exceptionally effective in controlling a rip cut. Keeps the stock tight against the fence and saw table throughout the cut. Top-mounted hold-down arm ensures smooth feed. Unique expanding table slot bar makes positioning quick and easy in the ¾" wide slot standard on most saws. On large saws use 2 feather boards.

	Regular	Sale
88K01.01	Feather Board (single)	\$17.95 <b>\$13.95</b>
88K01.10	Feather Board (Pair)	\$35.90 <b>\$24.95</b>

## G / Deluxe Dowel Centers

A Full Set of 32 centers, 8 of each size. Outside diameters are: ¼, ⅙, ⅜ & ½"; inside measures ⅙, ¼, ⅙, & ⅜".

35K09.01 Set of 32 Dowel Centers \$9.95



## SALE H / The Historic Stanley " #1 Odd-Job "

Originally made by Stanley from 1888 to the early 1930's, as useful to us today as it was then.

Made in the USA of solid manganese bronze casting, carefully machined to .0015" tolerances on all sides. The screws are stainless steel.

It's an inside mitre and try square, a depth gauge, a scribing tool for arcs and circles, a T-square, a depth marking scribe, a plumb level, and a 6" brass bound rule (also marked in mm). Rules are laser engraved.

23N02.01 #1 Odd Job \$59.95

Garrett Wade Co.  
161 6th Avenue  
New York, NY 10013  
(USA & Canada call)  
phone- 800-221-2942  
fax- 800-566-9525

Shipping Charges  
Normal shipping charges apply. We will ship all over the world.  
Int'l 212-807-1155  
fax 212-255-8552

# FREE CATALOG

Our high quality Woodworking Catalog has thousands of tools to choose from. Visit our new web site at [www.garrettwade.com](http://www.garrettwade.com) or call/fax us at the numbers above to order a catalog.

## I / Get A Gross Of Utility Brushes

Clean, wipe, spread, rub – and then throw away. At just over \$.10 each, these ½" wide metal-clad disposable brushes are endlessly useful in a wide variety of shop tasks.

83K04.01 Gross (144) Utility Brushes \$18.50

## J / Small Brass Quick Check Square Slips Right Into Your Pocket

This precise, solid brass square has legs 1¾" and 2¾" long. Weighs less than ½ oz. Perfect to keep with you all the time to check your work as it progresses. Made in England.

70N02.01 Quick Check Square \$9.95



## K / Solid Brass Dovetail Marker

Overall length 2½", it can mark dovetails up to 1" long. 2 ratios: 1:5 for softwood and 1:8 for hardwood. Made in England.

71J08.01 Brass Dovetail Marker \$28.50

## L / Engineer's Squares

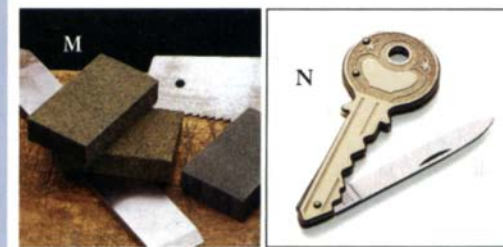
An extremely accurate square that is of particular value in setting up power tools. Our quality for all our Engineer's Squares is guaranteed to meet or exceed the British engineering standard for squareness (±.0005" per linear inch) BS5939. A shop essential. Made in India.

39N04.05	2" Engineer Square	\$ 8.25
39N04.04	3" Engineer Square	\$ 8.75
39N04.01	6" Engineer Square	\$12.30

## SALE M / "Wonderbar" Makes Your Old Tools Look Like New

These 3¼ x 2 x ¾" blocks work on metal like an eraser works on paper. Won't clog up or load. Can be cut with a utility knife to fit any shape. Can be used dry or with any standard lubricant, including water. Clean rust, corrosion, scratches or stains from most metal surfaces.

	Regular	Sale
06K03.02	Set All 3 Blocks	\$17.25 <b>\$14.95</b>



## N / Key Knife For Your Key Ring

You have to hold one of these in your hand. Barely larger than an ordinary key, this German made pocket knife will easily slip on your key chain.

02B05.01 Key Knife \$19.95

To Order Call 800-221-2942 or Visit us at [www.garrettwade.com](http://www.garrettwade.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 227

MARCH/APRIL 2000 19

# Methods of Work (continued)

a rabbet in one corner of each block to fit over the corners of the box, and cut a groove into the corner of the rabbet so that it doesn't interfere with the edge of the miter joint.

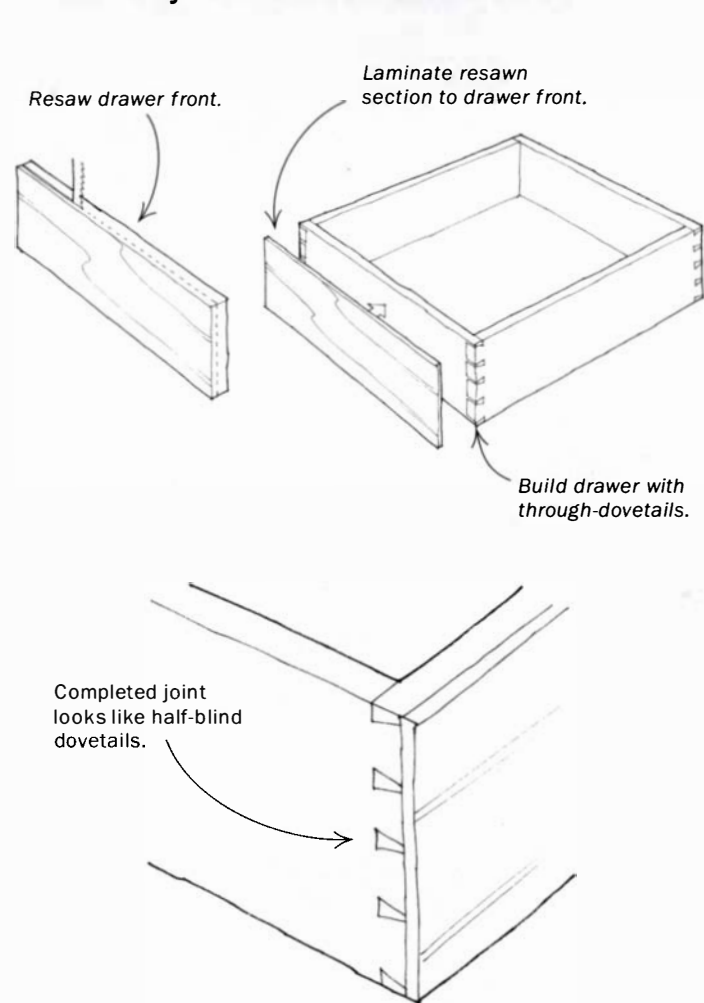
Cut six lengths of 1/4-in.-dia. threaded rod and, using epoxy, glue 1-in. dowel handles on one end of each rod. Drill three holes in each block with a 3/32-in. bit, install T-nuts and assemble the clamps as shown in the sketch.

—Jose L. Martinez, Niceville, Fla.

**Quick tip:** An old computer mouse pad on the workbench will dampen the vibration from a sander and keep it from skittering across the bench when you set it down. You can also cut small pieces from a pad to use as protective, nonskid feet for finished projects.

—Jim Van Dreese, Wisconsin Rapids, Wis.

## A faster way to make half-blind dovetails



I was fortunate to learn how to cut dovetails from one of the best in the craft. In 1987, I spent two weeks as Alan Peter's assistant at the Anderson Ranch Arts Center. After all of that training, I can cut a set of through-dovetails as fast as I can set up a router jig.

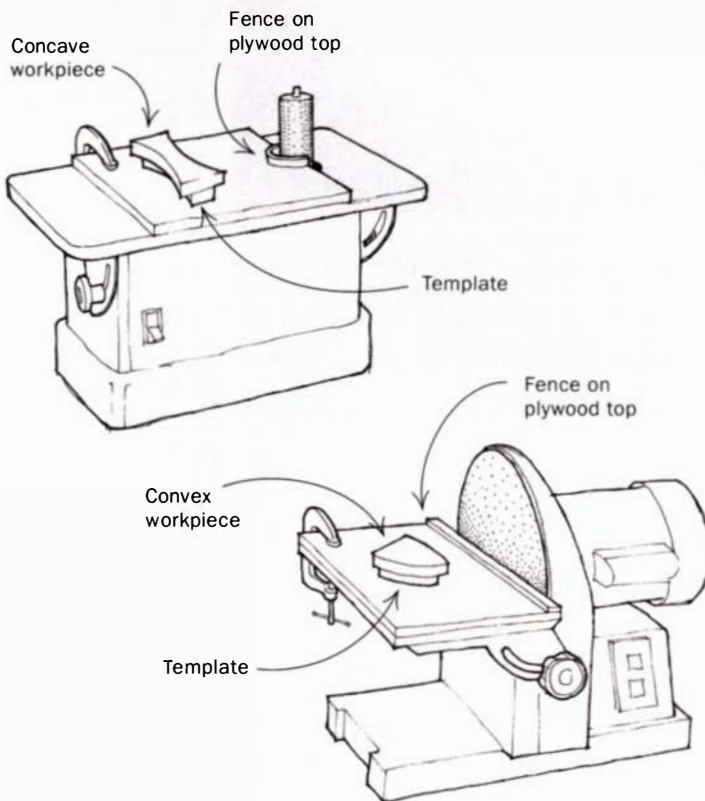
But cutting half-blind dovetails is another story. Although there are some tricks to speed up the process using a router, removing the bulk of the waste from between the pins is mostly a slow and tedious process using a chisel. My solution is to start with a thick drawer front and rip a fat, 1/8-in.-thick slab off the front (see

the drawing below left). I do this while the drawer front is still oversized in width and length. Then I plane both pieces and set aside the 1/8-in. piece. After that, I cut regular through-dovetails—front and back—and assemble the through-dovetailed drawer. Once the drawer is together, I simply laminate the 1/8-in.-thick piece back onto the drawer front. After trimming the front piece flush on all four sides, I have (from all appearances) a set of perfect half-blind dovetails.

Another advantage of this approach is that I can rip a set of drawer fronts in sequential order from one thick board, resulting in a nicely matched flitch pattern on the fronts of all of the drawers.

—Rob Cosman, Grand Bay, N.B., Canada

## Making duplicates on a disc or spindle sander



Here is a simple way to duplicate curved pieces using a template and a disc or spindle sander. This technique is useful when tearout is a problem or when extra-thick workpieces make template-routing impractical.

The key to this technique is clamping a scrap of plywood over the metal tabletop of your sanding machine and then securing a fence for the template to the plywood. Make the sanding template any convenient size smaller than the workpiece and adjust the fence forward or back to make the final size of the workpiece larger or smaller. Convex shapes can be sanded entirely on the disc sander. Concave shapes require a similar setup on a spindle sander.

—Gregg Roos, San Francisco, Calif.

**Quick tip**—When I wanted to build a router table, I checked out the phenolic and acrylic inserts in the mail-order catalogs and decided they were too expensive. Then I came up with the idea to use a

Router Bit Special  
**1/4" RADIUS  
 ROUNDOVER**

**MADE IN  
 USA**

**SAVE  
 \$10.00**

- Two flute
- Carbide tipped
- 1/4" Shank

Order Special Part  
 #156-0402FW  
 List \$36.00, Reg. \$24.99

**HOW  
 JUST \$14.99**

**FREE SHIPPING!**  
 Limit three per order please. Expires 4-30-00

**EAGLE** FW 3-00

Receive your **FREE 108 page color catalog today. Just give us a call or circle the business reply number.**

**1-800-872-2511**

If ordering this special offer by mail, send this card and check for \$14.99 to: EAGLE AMERICA  
 P.O. BOX 1099  
 CHARDON, OH 44024

**FREE WOODWORKING CATALOG**

Pink Ivory  
 Dagame  
 Brazilian Rosewood  
 Pear  
 Plum  
 Burls  
 Snakewood  
 Bubinga  
 Koa  
 Satinwood  
 Cocobolo  
 Padauk  
 Rosewood  
 Bloodwood  
 Ziricote  
 Purpleheart  
 C. Ebony  
 Pau Rosa  
 Camphor

"It's a matter of pride for both of us"

**Quality Exotic Wood**

»TURNERS«  
 Thick Planks for Bowls/Squares

»CABINET MAKERS«  
 Individually Selected Lumber for  
 Furniture / Boxes / Inlays

Over 70 Species  
 www.bereahardwoods.com

The BereaHardWoodsCo.  
 6367 Eastland Rd. • Brook Park, OH 44142  
 P 440-243-7949 F 440-234-7958

Pernambuco  
 Mac. Ebony  
 E.I. Rosewood  
 Bocote  
 Curly Maple  
 Quilted Maple  
 African Ebony  
 Zebrano  
 Lacewood  
 Lignum Vitae  
 Osage  
 Tulipwood  
 Blackwood  
 Mahogany  
 Jelutong  
 Holly  
 Wenge  
 Goncalo Alves  
 Many More...

"It's a matter of pride for both of us"

READER SERVICE NO. 233

READER SERVICE NO. 196

**QUALITY KITS!**

Call or write, mention offer # 7202, receive our **FREE color catalog!**

**1-800-642-0011**

- Clock & Furniture Kits
- Mechanical & Quartz Movements
- Detailed Clock Plans
- We Ship Anywhere

Ask about our layaway plan.

Emperor Clock, L.L.C.  
 Dept 7202 P.O. Box 1089  
 Fairhope, Alabama 36533  
 www.emperclock.com

READER SERVICE NO. 72

**DIGITAL MOISTURE METER**

**\$125!**  
 Plus S&H

At last an affordable and accurate digital moisture meter with calibrations for over 150 wood species. Protimeter, the company who's been making meters for over 40 years.

**ORDER TODAY!**  
**1 800 321-4878**

MasterCard Visa

**PROTIMETER NORTH AMERICA**  
 20 Commerce Way  
 Woburn, MA 01801  
 Sales: 1 800 321-4878  
 FAX: 1-781-938-5029  
 www.moisture-meter.com • pna@protimeter.com

READER SERVICE NO. 178

**FESTO TOOL**

UNIQUELY QUIET • ON SITE SHOP SOLUTION • DUST EXTRACTABLE • 1+2 Yrs. WARRANTY

**Invest in Quality that Transcends Time**

RELIABLE GERMAN QUALITY  
 75th ANNIVERSARY  
 1925-2000  
 PERFORMANCE PRECISION PORTABILITY

**TOOLGUIDE** Sole Distributor for **FESTO**  
 div. of Tooltechnic Systems

Tel 805-963-4280 / Toll Free 888-337-8600 / Fax 888-550-6425  
 E-commerce enabled! www.toolguide.net / festo@toolguide.net  
 Contact us for a FREE catalog featuring our complete line of award winning tools and accessories.

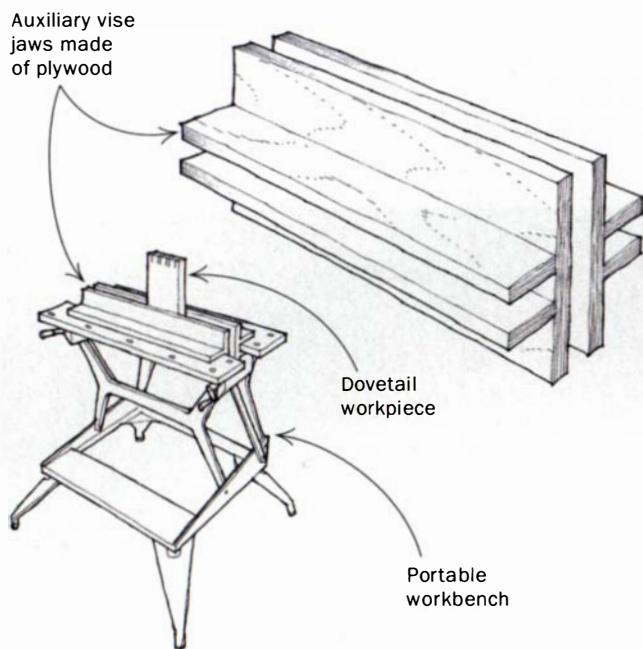
READER SERVICE NO. 171

# Methods of Work (continued)

plastic cutting board, the kind found at any store that sells cooking utensils. The board machined well and cost less than \$5.

—Rick Grinstead, Charlotte, N.C.

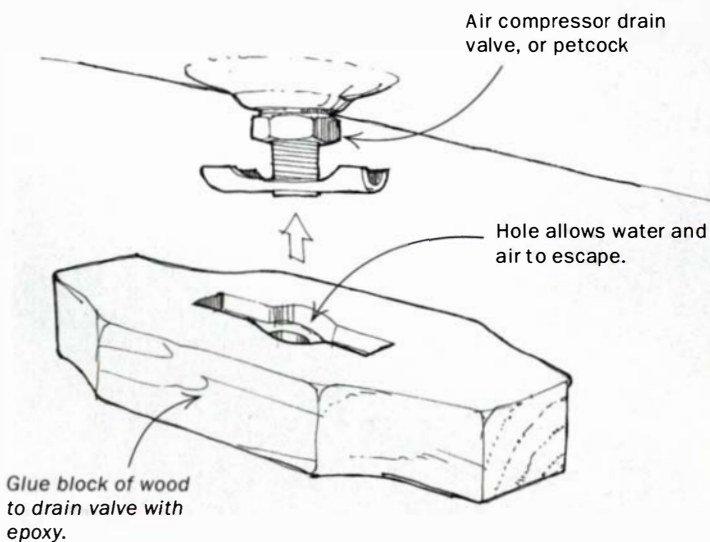
## Auxiliary vise jaws for portable workbench



I like to saw dovetails by hand, but it's difficult without the proper vise. Before I equipped my shop with a good bench vise, I made these auxiliary plywood jaws for my portable bench—a setup that enabled me to get by fairly well. The jaws fit snugly over the regular jaws and hold vertical workpieces securely.

—Bob Key, Snellville, Ga.

## Wrench for air-compressor drain valve

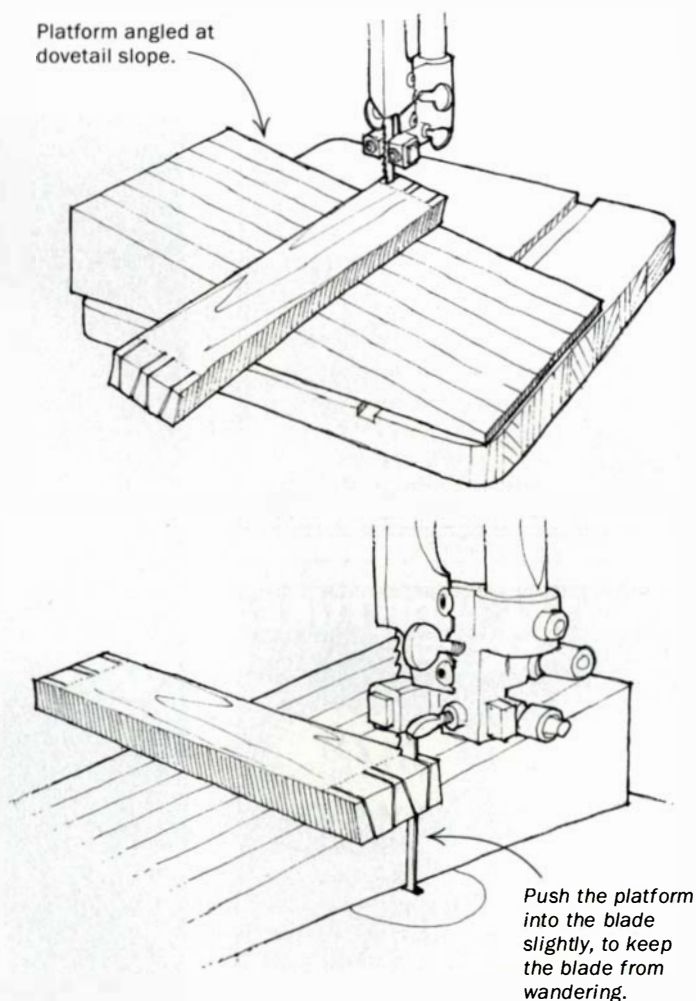


I know it is important to drain water from my compressor often to prevent rust in the tank. But the ditzy little drain valve, or petcock,

mounted on the underside of the tank is difficult to use. So I solved the problem by making a new wrench. I routed a channel in a hardwood block to fit the valve and drilled a hole through the block to let air and water escape. I then shaped the outer edges to make the wood wrench easy to hold and glued it onto the valve with epoxy.

—John Weidner, San Francisco, Calif.

## Bandsaw dovetail fixture



To cut dovetail joints, I start with the pins, cutting everything on my bandsaw. One problem that I ran into was that the table on my bandsaw—like that on most bandsaws—tilts in only one direction, limiting me to cut only one side of the pins. To overcome this problem, I built a small platform of laminated plywood that is angled at the correct dovetail slope.

I simply place the platform in front of the bandsaw blade, pushing it into the blade slightly to keep the blade from wandering. I cut one side of all of the pins, flip the platform around and cut the other sides. I then remove the waste with a chisel, mark the tails from the pins and saw the tails on the regular bandsaw table. This approach results in quick and accurate dovetails.

If you like to use different dovetail angles in different woods, just build two platforms—one for softwood and one for hardwood.

—Bruce Petersen, Canby, Ore.

**“I only use the best wood. Why would I use tools that are anything less?”**

**ROUTING ACCESSORIES THAT FURNITURE MAKERS HAVE RELIED ON FOR OVER 50 YEARS.**

Precision micro-ground arbors virtually **ELIMINATE CHATTER AND WOBBLE.**

Up-shear angle for **SMOOTH CUT.**

Pride. Craftsmanship. Enduring quality. We feel the same about our work as you do yours. That's why we build Magna routing tools to give you the precision and accuracy you need. With triple tempered shanks for increased durability. Select edging and trimming bits with ball bearing guides to

prevent burning and marring. And diamond honed cutting edges for smooth cuts. For over 50 years pros who know have turned to Magna industrial products. Now we're at your favorite retailer. So come see for yourself that in the Magna Zone, our work is second only to yours.

MADE IN THE U.S.A.

**MAGNA**  
INDUSTRIAL TOOL CO.

WORKS HARDER. LONGER

AVAILABLE AT **LOWE'S**  
READER SERVICE NO. 251

# Everything You Need.

**EuroShop**



- 12" Tablesaw with Sliding Table
- 12" Jointer
- 12" Planer
- 4 Speed Reversible Shaper / Router
- Slot Mortiser / Horizontal Borer
- 3 3.6 HP 220V Motors



EuroShop has the world's best quality, value and features in the widest range of products for any woodworker.

**800-203-0023**



2217 El Sol Avenue  
Altadena, CA 91001

Find out why EuroShop bandsaws have been the best since 1938.

READER SERVICE NO. 191

## Another Great Innovation from Fisch The Multi-Pattern Euro-Jig

This European hinge jig is easily adjustable to all eight major euro hinge manufacturers' patterns by: Blum, Melpa, Grass, Lama, Hettich, Hetal, Inaux, and Salice. Includes a 35mm center bit, (2) 7/64" dowel drills, ball driver, sturdy carrying case, and a 5mm face frame template. Complete with easy to use manual.

**Dealers Welcome!**

**Made in Germany**

**Other Metric Carbide Bits Available**

**World Class Woodworking Tooling and Machinery**

**FISCH PRECISION TOOLS, INC.**

4632 Route 40 West  
Claysville, PA 15323



Phone: 724-663-9072  
Fax: 724-663-9065

READER SERVICE NO. 70

**Introducing the world's smartest, most powerful, most revolutionary new idea in dust collection. The ECOGATE® System is completely automatic.**

is thanks to a simple network of vibration sensors and a microcomputer controller. When a machine is turned on, a sensor signals the controller to open the appropriate gate and turns on the dust collector. When the machine stops, the gate closes. Our larger model monitors the usage of all machines in your shop and, through an inverter, continually optimizes the amount of power supplied to your dust collector. And that generate energy savings.

To learn more about the most powerful new idea in **dust collection systems,**

visit [www.ecogate.com](http://www.ecogate.com), email: [info@ecogate.com](mailto:info@ecogate.com)

**ECOGATE®**

Or call on 1-888-ECOGATE  
1-888-3264283  
for a free brochure.

READER SERVICE NO. 140

**POWERMATIC CORPORATION**

See us at IWF 2000  
Aug. 24-27,  
booth 4420

**★ Plane  
★ Mold  
★ Sand  
all in one!**

**over 40 standard molding knives available: for coves, chair rails, crown & bed, casings, base, panel, stops, picture frames, etc. plus special order sizes!**

**1120001  
12" Planer-Molder**

- ★ Up the feed rate from 12 to 20 FPM with a simple sprocket change
- ★ Simplified chain & sprocket system offers easy maintenance
- ★ 5 horsepower Baldor motor

*This machine could be your money-making opportunity!*

**Call (800) 248-0144 for your nearest dealer**

E-mail: [powermatic@worldnet.att.net](mailto:powermatic@worldnet.att.net) Web page: <http://www.powermatic.com>

READER SERVICE NO. 160



# WHEN IT COMES TO HOME IMPROVEMENT, INFORMATION IS A PRETTY POWERFUL TOOL.

buying guides  product reviews  how-to guides



**THE AMAZON.COM HOME IMPROVEMENT STORE IS NOW OPEN.**

WITH TONS OF TOOLS AND INFORMATION, WE CAN HELP YOU DO JUST ABOUT ANYTHING AROUND THE HOUSE.

EARTH'S BIGGEST SELECTION. [amazon.com](https://www.amazon.com)  
books dvd video music auctions toys electronics software home improvement zShops

# Notes & Comment

## Cuban mahogany, a scarce treasure to woodworkers, is now available in the United States



**A rare and valuable stash of timber. Shown here is part of the first batch of Cuban mahogany trees felled on the islands of Palau and brought to market in the United States by Blue Moon Exotic Wood.**

From the realm of good news, this is a story in which everybody wins. For the first time in many years, a substantial load of Cuban mahogany (*Swietenia mahagoni*) has hit the market in the United States, available to woodworkers who are able and willing to pay \$20 to \$35 per board foot to get it.

Cuban mahogany—the stuff of cabinet-making legends, called by some the “king of woods,” by others the “wood of kings”—originally grew on Caribbean islands before it was virtually wiped out as a source of commercial lumber. This new supply comes from half a world away, on the islands of Palau. The Republic of Palau, populated by fewer than 20,000 people, consists of a group of small islands in Micronesia, where the Pacific Ocean meets the Philippine Sea, just north of the equator. Large barrier reefs, a tropical climate and fertile soil have all contributed to the health of the tropical forests that flourish there.

To understand how Cuban mahogany got to Palau, you need to know that the wood was coveted by boat-builders as much as it

was by cabinetmakers. Spanish missionaries planted groves of Cuban mahogany on the islands when they settled there more than 300 years ago. Because of their isolation, these trees were spared the ravages of pyralid moths and ambrosia beetles that devastated many of the first-growth stands not felled by loggers.

Native Palauans own the land and the business—Blue Moon Exotic Wood, LLC. (877-894-9663)—that is harvesting the forests in a sustainable program meant to ensure a continuing supply of about 50,000 bd. ft. of Cuban mahogany each year. They are also harvesting a dozen other tropical woods, including narra and Macassar ebony, and using oxen teams to



**Freshly cut Cuban mahogany is pink, but it begins to darken right away. This prized log was cut and stacked “in the boule,” meaning the plainsawn boards were stickered in the order in which they came from the tree.**

minimize damage to the forests. For the first shipment of mahogany brought to market, they cut down 26 trees (average age 60 years) and planted several hundred saplings. The oldest trees, some of which were planted by the original Spanish missionaries and exceed 7 ft. dia., will remain untouched for their supply of seed stock.

—William Duckworth, associate editor of Fine Woodworking

## Wood webs

### Looking for plans on-line?

Click on Sites to See at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com), and you'll find 30 linked sites that cover a wide array of topics. But this is just the tip of the iceberg. The web has a plethora of sites that offer woodworking plans. Some examples:

[www.teleport.com/%7Ehippo1/images/mission/mission.shtml](http://www.teleport.com/%7Ehippo1/images/mission/mission.shtml)  
Cap't Zoom's Mission Furniture Plans offers free downloadable plans for a dining and Morris chair.

[www.charm.net/~jriley/woodware.html](http://www.charm.net/~jriley/woodware.html)  
Woodware Designs has very basic free plans on building and modifying different style computer desks.

[www1.minn.net/~mozart/index.html](http://www1.minn.net/~mozart/index.html)  
At Lake Superior Design, Terry Walton has available 42 project plans of different skill levels that are generated with a CAD program.

[www.furnituredesigns.com](http://www.furnituredesigns.com)  
Furniture Designs, Inc., offers woodworkers full-sized plans that come with a bill of materials and an exploded drawing. The site has a wide range of project plans.

[craftedimages.virtualave.net/woodworkplans.htm](http://craftedimages.virtualave.net/woodworkplans.htm)  
Crafted Images & Design is the mother lode of woodworking plans on-line. The site currently offers 229 plans for the beginner woodworker, 166 for the intermediate and 133 for the expert.

[buildit.shopalberta.com](http://buildit.shopalberta.com)  
Interested in 12th-century medieval furniture? At Build It Plans and Ideas, you can take a step back in time and find plans for medieval reproductions such as beds, candle lamps, chairs and tables.

[www.wallbed.com](http://www.wallbed.com)  
If you've always wanted a Murphy bed, look no further. At Create-A-Bed you can purchase the Murphy-bed mechanism that comes complete with hardware, templates and instructions.

**LAUNSTEIN  
HARDWOODS**  
 Manufacturer & Distributor of  
**3/8" SOLID HARDWOOD FLOORING**  
 Pre-sanded and ready to finish. Available in  
 RED OAK, WHITE OAK, ASH, HICKORY, HARD  
 MAPLE, CHERRY, WALNUT  
 Choice of 4 widths and 3 grades  
 Unlimited choice of mouldings  
 Most orders shipped within 24 hrs  
**LAUNSTEIN HARDWOODS**  
 384 S. Every Road,  
 Mason, Michigan 48854  
 PHONE 517-676-1133 FAX 517-676-6379  
<http://www.vmall.net/launstein/>

READER SERVICE NO. 182

**General**  
**10" Table Saw**  
 100% North American Made

**Only \$1,699**

**FREE**  
 Table Board, Leg Set & Carbide Blade

**More General Machinery**

- 15" Band Saw (#490-1) 1HP ..... \$1,199
- 12" Lathe (#160-2) 1HP ..... \$1,225
- 12" HD Lathe (#260-VD) ..... \$2,649
- 8" Jointer (#480-1) ..... \$1,675
- 6" Jointer (#1180-1) 1HP ..... \$1,035
- 15" Drill Press (#34-01) ..... \$ 779
- 14" Planer (#130-1) 3HP ..... \$2,399
- 20" HD Lathe (#26020-VD) ..... \$2,899

**Woodsmith Store**  
 2625 Beaver Avenue, Des Moines, IA 50310  
**1-800-835-5084**  
[http:// www.augusthome.com](http://www.augusthome.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 32

**FREE TOOL CATALOG**  
 Helping You Become a Better Woodworker

**highland hardware**  
 Our giant tool catalog gives more than just manufacturer's specs. We provide detailed tool descriptions, useful techniques, as well as a schedule of educational seminars.

Call Toll Free for Free Catalog  
**1-888-500-4466**

Visit us on the Internet at <http://www.highland-hardware.com>

READER SERVICE NO. 143

**THE SOURCE FOR BANDSAW ACCESSORIES**

**Iturra Design : Millennium 2000 catalog**

**Free Catalog**

*Iturra Design*  
 2000 Bandsaw Catalog

- Introducing an improved version of our popular blade guide **NEW BANDROLLER PROs** with larger ball-bearings.
- Lenox Pro Master carbide-tipped and Bimetal blades
- Rip and re-saw fences, improved tension springs, tires, table inserts, circle jigs, and much more.
- History and comparison between Delta and JET saws.

**CALL 1-888-722-7078 or 1-904-642-2802**

READER SERVICE NO. 185

**Heavy Glass Table Tops**

**FACTORY DIRECT DISCOUNT PRICING**

Table tops, Shelves, Doors, Display Cases, Entertainment Centers, Tempered Glass

**WGB ■ SHAPES ■ THICKNESSES ■ EDGE DESIGNS**

**SALES 1-800-288-6854**

Use Reader Service For FREE Catalog

READER SERVICE NO. 95

**"...Remarkably simple to set up and use."** –

Fine Woodworking Jan/Feb 1999

**NEW SIZE! 7/16 PINS!** **\$249.99** plus s&h

Patented Made in USA

**KATIE JIG**

Video Available **\$9.95**

Phone: 317-881-8601  
 Or website: [www.katiejig.com](http://www.katiejig.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 57

**Veritas® Low-Angle Block Plane**  
 Product Development Casebook

**The Problem:**  
 To design a low-angle block plane that overcomes the weaknesses of current production models.

**The Solution:**  
 The combination of features in our low-angle (12°) block plane make it the best available. Its higher side wings are ideal for shooting and the multiple finger grips in each side give better control. The combined blade advance and lateral adjust is more sensitive and more accurate than any other adjustment mechanism. Two blade guide screws compensate for resharpening errors. The adjustable nosepiece does not extend beyond the body, so that it cannot be driven back into a sharp blade from some unexpected knock. With a 6" long by 2" wide body made from ductile iron, it can take hard knocks without cracking. All of the machining is done to a high level of accuracy in our own factory. The chatterfree 1/8" thick by 1 7/8" wide A2 tool steel blade is durable and takes a keen edge. Truly a delight to use. Patent pending.

**FW0101 Veritas® Low-Angle Block Plane \$69.50** (N.Y. residents, add sales tax.)

**Lee Valley & Veritas®**  
 Veritas® is the manufacturing arm of Lee Valley Tools Ltd.  
 12 East River Street, Ogdensburg, N.Y. 13669  
 Visit our Web site at [www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)

Our 248-page catalog of woodworking tools and accessories is sent free with an order or is available for \$5 (refunded with first order).

**Call: 1-800-871-8158**  
 or fax: **1-800-513-7885**

Overseas, call: 1-613-596-0350 or fax: 1-613-596-6030.

READER SERVICE NO. 163

## Illusions don't just appear—they have to be built



**Trading magic for help.** In exchange for help hauling the occasional cabinet job, Ohio woodworker Bill Ewing designs and builds illusions for a local magician.

For me, the creative challenge of furniture making takes several forms. Sometimes I rework an old design; other times I design and build something original. For the last few years I've taken the same approach building illusions for a local magician.

The similarities between furniture making and building illusions are many. Both require attention to detail, close tolerances and smoothly working hardware. The big difference with illusions is that the crucial

parts and long labor have to go unseen. In magic, nothing is as it appears. Collapsible structures appear rigid, hollow legs look solid, and seemingly small spaces hide improbably large objects. It's all magic, and it's my job to make it work.

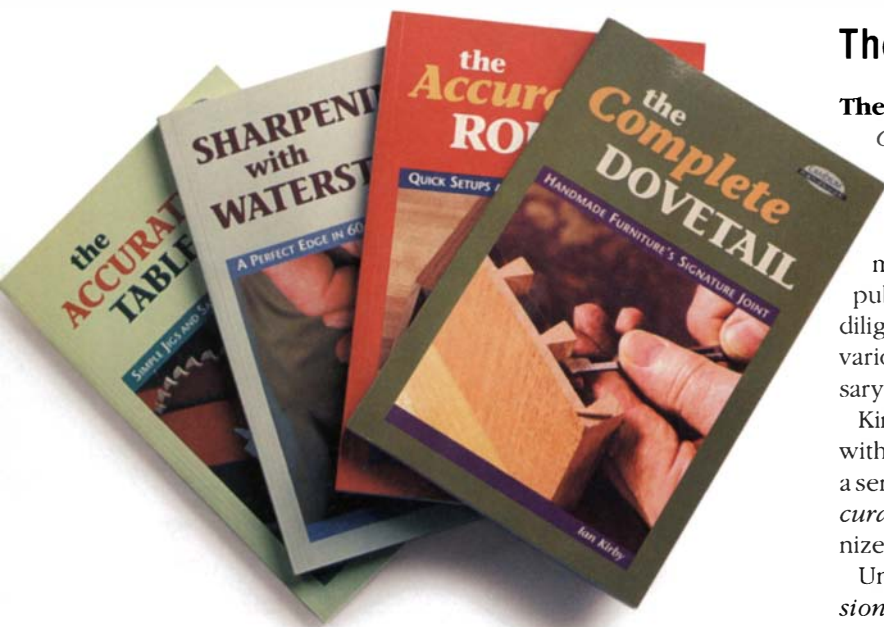
Sometimes the most technical part of an illusion is intentionally hidden from view. Unfortunately, this is usually the part that takes the most work. I have designed complex triggering mechanisms that take

hours to perfect, but no one sees them. In other illusions, what is hidden is in plain view of the audience. One uses two mirrors and a tambour door, and the audience sees both without knowing it. In another one, there is a trap door that remains undetectable, even under close inspection.

One original illusion, which we call Diabolical Dissection, incorporates both hidden and not-so-hidden elements. An audience member chosen at random is secured to an upright board by a yolk around her midsection. A blade is inserted into the yolk and shoved through so that it emerges from the other side. Not a drop of blood is shed.

In lieu of cash, my magician friend pays for the illusions by helping me deliver cabinets. Throughout the years, I have received compensation for my work in many forms. Sometimes it's a family member's appreciation; other times it's a customer's approval and a check. But nothing compares to the applause of an audience.

—Bill Ewing, Girard, Ohio



## The traditional approach to dovetails

**The Complete Dovetail** by Ian Kirby. Cambium Press, Bethel, Conn.; 1999. \$14.95 softcover; 152 pp.

If you're looking for a well-organized manual on hand-cutting dovetails, *The Complete Dovetail* is it. The book is easily my favorite in a series of craft books written by Ian Kirby and published by Cambium Press (P.O. Box 909, Bethel, CT 06481). It diligently covers all of the basic and time-tested information on the various types of dovetails and the preparation of the tools necessary to cut them, as well as on preliminary milling of the stock.

Kirby, a long-time woodworker, teacher and author, has coupled with John Kelsey, an experienced editor and publisher, to put out a series of books—including *Sharpening with Waterstones*, *The Accurate Router* and *The Accurate Tablesaw*—that are all well organized, easily understood and quite thorough.

Unlike Cecil Pierce's colorful and entertaining book, *The Precision Handcutting of Dovetails* (Monmouth Press, 1995), which

**Quality Kiln Drying**  
**It's Easy and Affordable with a Nyle DH Kiln!**

Call today for FREE facts on our compact, easy to use dehumidification kilns.

**800 777 NYLE**  
 EASY PAYMENTS AVAILABLE  
**FREE Booklet!**

Filled with useful information and answers on drying your own lumber—call today.

Kilns for 300 BF and up!

**nyle**  
 DRY KILN SYSTEMS

PO Box 1107 Bangor ME 04402-1107 <http://www.nyle.com>

READER SERVICE NO. 175

**Lumber, Mouldings, Millwork & More!**

FREE catalog features over 40 lumber species photographed in full color... marine and architectural plywood... stock and custom mouldings, millwork, paneling, decking, and more.

**M.L. CONDON COMPANY INC.**

248 Ferris Avenue  
 White Plains, NY 10603  
 Phone: (914) 946-4111  
 Fax: (914) 946-3779

*We can duplicate ANY moulding — just fax us the profile!*

READER SERVICE NO. 142

**VAC-U-CLAMP**  
 LAMINATE, VENEER & CLAMP

**\$249.00**  
 COMPLETE SYSTEM  
 LIMITED TIME INTRODUCTORY OFFER



SYSTEM INCLUDES: 24" x 36" bag\* with E-Z Seal, baseboard, vacuum generator, gauge, stand, vacuum tubing and all fittings  
 \*Larger Bags Available  
 Small Air Compressor Required

**(888) 342-8262**

READER SERVICE NO. 239

**ARROWMONT**  
 SCHOOL OF ARTS & CRAFTS

WOOD-VESSELS-FURNITURE SCULPTURE • AN  
 DY BUCK, DAVID ELLSWORTH, RODGER JACOBS,  
 CLIFTON MONTEITH, PAUL SASSO, MICHAEL  
 HOSALUK, MICHAEL JOERLING, PHILIP  
 MOULTHROP, JOSTONE, MICHAEL BROLLY,  
 LYNNNE BROLLY, JOHN JORDAN, GAELE  
 MONTGOMERIE, LYLE JAMIESON, DENNIS  
 FITZGERALD, MICHAEL LEE • WOOD-VESSEL  
 S-FURNITURE-SCULPTURE • AN


June 5  
 Aug 11  
 2000

PO Box 567  
 Gatlinburg, TN 37738

[www.arrowmont.org](http://www.arrowmont.org)

EOI

READER SERVICE NO. 175



**DREAMS AND WOODEN BOATS CRAFTED HERE.**

**NW School of Wooden Boatbuilding**  
 From one-week workshops to nine-month degree programs. Accredited school.

**360/385-4948**

[www.olympus.net/woodboat/](http://www.olympus.net/woodboat/)  
 251 Otto Street, Port Townsend, WA 98368

READER SERVICE NO. 14

**Traditional Japanese Tansu & Cabinet Hardware**  
 Fine selection of handmade Japanese paper — for Shoji Screens and Lamp Shades



In addition we offer the absolute finest, custom-made Japanese tools for the sophisticated woodworker. For information, call or FAX Kayoko!

For FREE brochure, write to:  
**MISUGI DESIGNS**  
 2233 5th St., Berkeley, CA 94710- [www.misugidesigns.com](http://www.misugidesigns.com)  
 Tel: (510) 549-0805 Fax: (510) 549-0828

READER SERVICE NO. 9

**INTERNATIONAL TOOL CORPORATION**  
 "The Power Tool Specialists"

2590 Davie Road, Davie, Florida 33317  
 Fax (954) 792-3560

- Features online ordering for our full line of tools, machinery & accessories
- Hot Monthly Specials for extra low pricing on popular items
- Order our free catalog
- Ask the Tool Guru your tool-related questions
- Read the Tool Guru's Tip of the Month
- Serving your power tool needs for over 30 years
- Best selection & most knowledgeable staff in the industry

**1-800-338-3384**

**LOWEST Guaranteed TOOLS PRICES**

**Free Freight & Same Day Shipping**  
 On most UPS orders over \$50 minimum purchase within the contiguous U.S.A.



**Call for your FREE catalog!**



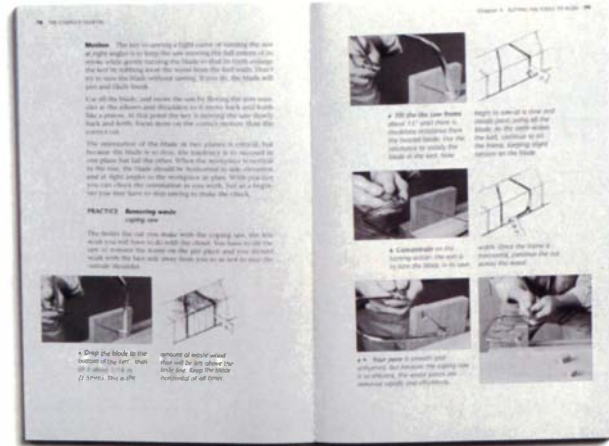
**www.internationaltool.com**

READER SERVICE NO. 198

presented some quirky and unusual techniques that involved the use of a hacksaw, Kirby's new book covers the more traditional tools and techniques. Entire chapters are devoted to the execution of through-dovetails, single-lap (half-blind) dovetails, double-lap dovetails and secret (full-blind) dovetails. The generous attention Kirby gives to each variation ensures that the reader won't be left stranded. In addition, there are plenty of tips to help the beginner avoid common pitfalls and recover from mistakes.

I always enjoy books illustrated by the author, because they have the immediate and personal quality of an artist's sketchbook. Kirby's drawings are first rate. Each sketch is full of clear detail but still has a warmth and casual quality often missing from the blueprint-type illustrations commonly found in woodworking books. These handsome sketches remind me of George Nakashima's *The Soul of a Tree*.

The abundant photos in the book are also clear, full of information and well placed to illustrate and support the text. I've seen Kirby in action, and I know him to be a forceful teacher, often convinced that this methods are the best. And his sound convictions stem from many years of experience at the workbench perfecting techniques passed down through generations. I wish Cambium could have injected some of the friendly bluster that is clearly part of Kirby's personality and appeal into the text of the book. And I also wanted to learn about his experience as a traditional English craft apprentice. Without a sprinkling of colorful English tales and anecdotes, the book reads a little flat and sterile.













**A personal touch.** The photos in Kirby's book are abundant and informative, and the author's sketches lend the book an immediate friendliness.

I guess I'll have to wait for Kirby's memoirs. I also wish the book could have been printed in a larger format. Although the books in this series are a compact and handy size, they are a little difficult to lay onto a workbench for reference in the shop.

Overall, the series is clear, methodically laid out and thorough. I recommend Kirby's latest as a very encouraging place for beginners in their quest to cut perfect dovetails.

—Mario Rodriguez, contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*

LENEAVE QUALITY—SINCE 1957

<p><b>NORTHSTATE 15" PLANERS</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Model 315: \$889</li> <li>• Same features as the Model 310 plus:</li> <li>• Table extension</li> </ul>	<p><b>NORTHSTATE PLANERS</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 20", 5 hp: \$1,395</li> <li>• 24", V Speed: \$2,995</li> <li>• 5 hp &amp; 7-1/2 hp</li> </ul>	<p><b>NORTHSTATE 8" CABINET SHOP JOINTER</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8" jointer</li> <li>• Heavy cast iron const.</li> <li>• 2 hp, single phase</li> <li>• Dual tit fence</li> <li>• Magnetic controls</li> <li>• SALE: \$795</li> <li>• 6" jointer: \$395</li> <li>• 12" jointer: \$7" bed</li> <li>• 16" jointer: 111" bed</li> <li>• Delta 8" jointer: CALL!</li> </ul>	<p><b>MOULDERS</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Four and Five Head models</li> <li>• Variable speed</li> <li>• 2-1/4"x6" capacity models</li> <li>• 6"x9" capacity Model</li> <li>• 5"x8" capacity Models</li> <li>• Designed to make high quality moulding at the lowest possible cost</li> </ul>																										
<p><b>NORTHSTATE BANDSAWS</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 14", 1 hp, \$425</li> <li>• 18", 2 hp, \$795</li> <li>• 20", \$1,495</li> <li>• 24", \$2,465</li> </ul>	<p><b>STOCK FEEDERS</b></p> <p style="text-align: center; color: red; font-weight: bold;">SALE!</p> <p><b>WILLIAMS &amp; HUSSEY MOULDER/PLANERS</b></p>																												
<p><b>Model 310 Planer: \$859</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Powerful 3 hp motor</li> <li>• Cast iron construction</li> <li>• Magnetic switch</li> <li>• 1 year warranty</li> <li>• Dust hood</li> <li>• Anti-kickback</li> <li>• Stand included</li> <li>• 2 speeds</li> </ul>	<p><b>NORTHSTATE WIDE BELT SANDER</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best buy in the industry!</li> <li>• Variable speed</li> <li>• Platen head</li> <li>• Dual motors</li> <li>• Heavy cast iron &amp; steel</li> <li>• Plate construction</li> <li>• 25" List: \$900</li> <li>• 37" List: \$13,300</li> <li>• SALE: \$9100, 20 hp</li> <li>• 43" SALE: \$13,000, 25 hp</li> <li>• 15" model available</li> <li>• Phase converter avail.</li> </ul>																												
<p><b>RAISED PANEL DOOR MACHINES</b></p> 	<p><b>PORTER CABLE complete line available</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%; font-size: 0.8em;"> <tr> <td>330: Sander: \$66</td> <td>5116: Omnijig: \$268</td> </tr> <tr> <td>332: Orbital Sander: \$75</td> <td>7116: Omnijig: \$293</td> </tr> <tr> <td>333: Orbital Sander: \$83</td> <td>7334: Orbital Sander: \$121</td> </tr> <tr> <td>351: Sander: \$164</td> <td>7335: Orb. Sander: \$135</td> </tr> <tr> <td>360: Sander: \$213</td> <td>7519: Router: \$248</td> </tr> <tr> <td>361: Sander: \$203</td> <td>7538: Router: \$248</td> </tr> <tr> <td>362: Sander: \$218</td> <td>7539: Router: \$278</td> </tr> <tr> <td>363: Sander: \$213</td> <td>7549: VS jigsaw: \$134</td> </tr> <tr> <td>595: Sander: \$132</td> <td>9119: Plane Kit: \$229</td> </tr> <tr> <td>555: Plate Joiner: \$138</td> <td>9527: Rec. Saw: \$147</td> </tr> <tr> <td>630: Router: \$135</td> <td>97310: Lam. Trim Kit: \$198</td> </tr> <tr> <td>690: Router: \$143</td> <td>9853: Cordless drill: \$163</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9444: Pro Sdr Kit: \$124 NEW!</td> <td>9352: VS Sander Kit: \$168</td> </tr> </table>			330: Sander: \$66	5116: Omnijig: \$268	332: Orbital Sander: \$75	7116: Omnijig: \$293	333: Orbital Sander: \$83	7334: Orbital Sander: \$121	351: Sander: \$164	7335: Orb. Sander: \$135	360: Sander: \$213	7519: Router: \$248	361: Sander: \$203	7538: Router: \$248	362: Sander: \$218	7539: Router: \$278	363: Sander: \$213	7549: VS jigsaw: \$134	595: Sander: \$132	9119: Plane Kit: \$229	555: Plate Joiner: \$138	9527: Rec. Saw: \$147	630: Router: \$135	97310: Lam. Trim Kit: \$198	690: Router: \$143	9853: Cordless drill: \$163	9444: Pro Sdr Kit: \$124 NEW!	9352: VS Sander Kit: \$168
330: Sander: \$66	5116: Omnijig: \$268																												
332: Orbital Sander: \$75	7116: Omnijig: \$293																												
333: Orbital Sander: \$83	7334: Orbital Sander: \$121																												
351: Sander: \$164	7335: Orb. Sander: \$135																												
360: Sander: \$213	7519: Router: \$248																												
361: Sander: \$203	7538: Router: \$248																												
362: Sander: \$218	7539: Router: \$278																												
363: Sander: \$213	7549: VS jigsaw: \$134																												
595: Sander: \$132	9119: Plane Kit: \$229																												
555: Plate Joiner: \$138	9527: Rec. Saw: \$147																												
630: Router: \$135	97310: Lam. Trim Kit: \$198																												
690: Router: \$143	9853: Cordless drill: \$163																												
9444: Pro Sdr Kit: \$124 NEW!	9352: VS Sander Kit: \$168																												
<p><b>PRO-EST STRAIGHT-LINE RIP SAWS</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WOODMASTER DRUM SANDERS</li> </ul>	<p><b>RADIAL ARM SAWS</b></p>  <p><b>DeWALT NORTHSTATE OMGA</b></p>	<p><b>NORTHSTATE CABINET SHOP SHAPER</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 &amp; 3 hp/1 ph, 5 hp/3 ph</li> <li>• 2 speed-reversible</li> <li>• 2 spindles: 3/4", 1-1/4"</li> <li>• 1/2", 1" available</li> <li>• Router/collets avail.</li> <li>• Cast iron table</li> <li>• Spring hold down &amp; miter gauge</li> <li>• Extra heavy duty</li> <li>• 1 year warranty</li> <li>• FROM \$650 - \$1295</li> <li>• Tilt spindle model avail.</li> <li>• Sliding Table model avail.</li> <li>• *** FREEBORN *** Shaper cutters available</li> <li>• *** SCMI / MINI MAX *** MACHINERY</li> <li>• *** ADJUSTABLE CLAMPS ***</li> </ul>																											
<p><b>HITACHI</b></p> <p>CBFB-2 Side Comp.Saw CALL</p> <p>CB7F: Rad/and-saw: CALL</p> <p>TR-12 P1. Router: \$187</p> <p>M12V3 1/4 hp, vs router: \$228</p> <p>TSS-220: 8 1/2" slide comp. saw \$469</p>	<p><b>POWERMATIC III</b></p> <p>Model 66 - All models Available. Call for Promo Pricing.</p> <p>Model 66 Saws</p> <p>Model 60 8" Jointer</p> <p>Model 180 18" Planer</p> <p>Model 72 14" Tablesaw</p> <p><b>DELTA</b></p> <p>10" Unisaws - All models Available. Call for Promo Pricing</p> <p>37-350 8" Jointer w/stand</p> <p>17-900 16 1/2" Drill Press</p> <p>46-541 Lathe</p> <p>40-650 18" Q3 Scroll Saw</p> <p>*** COMPLETE LINES AVAILABLE ***</p>																												
<p><b>UNIQUE:</b> Machine all five components with only one operator</p> <p>Prices Subject to Change</p> <p>Errors Subject to Correction</p>	<p><b>NORTHSTATE 15" PLANER</b></p> <p><b>SALE PRICES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 hp, 2 bag: \$295</li> <li>• 3 hp, 4 bag: \$485</li> </ul> <p><b>PANEL SAWS &amp; ROUTERS SAFETY SPEED CUT CALL!</b></p> <p>EMGLO 1-1/2 HP compressor.....CALL</p> <p><b>SENCO Pneumatic Nailers..... Call</b></p> <p><b>DELTA</b></p> <p>Model 15 15" Planer</p> <p>Model 54 6" Jointer</p> <p>Model 64 10" Artisan saw</p> <p>Model 44 14" Bandsaw</p> <p>28-280 14" Bandsaw</p> <p>43-375 Shaper</p> <p>33-990 10" Radial Arm Saw</p> <p><b>NORTHSTATE 10", 12", 14" CABINET SHOP SAWS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3.5, 7-1/2 hp motors</li> <li>• Magnetic controls</li> <li>• Cast iron top</li> <li>• VERY HIGH QUALITY</li> <li>• Starting at '995</li> </ul> <p>We try not to be undersold, tell us our competitors' prices</p>																												

LENEAVE MACHINERY & SUPPLY COMPANY

305 West Morehead St., Charlotte, NC 28202 800-442-2302 (704) 376-7421; FAX: 704-333-1017

Conceal, Reveal, Swivel with the touch of a finger.



AUTON POP UP TV LIFTS

YOU BUILD THE FURNITURE WE'LL PROVIDE THE AUTOMATION

Since 1955, the Auton Company has served the design community with quality motorized systems that utilize remote controls and powerful motors. Motorized platform glides smoothly on four racks and pinions, even swivel at the touch of a button

AUTON MOTORIZED SYSTEMS

P.O. Box 802320 • Valencia, CA 91380-2320  
 (661) 257-9282 • Fax (661) 295-5638  
 Beverly Hills (310) 659-1718 • Honolulu (808) 734-1260  
 e-mail: TVLIFT@auton.com • Internet: http://www.auton.com  
 US & Foreign Pat. Pend. • Made in USA • Auton does not make furniture



FOOT/BED POP-UP TV COMPUTER LIFT POP-DOWN SPEAKER

READER SERVICE NO. 119

# DEWALT®

WOODWORKING SAW BLADES

DeWALT understands the passion it takes to create fine woodworking projects. It's the same passion we put into designing our tools and accessories. That's why more and more woodworkers choose our Series 40™ and Series 60™ Woodworking Saw Blades to help build their masterpieces. They know that every DeWALT blade is engineered to deliver unprecedented precision and durability. Each one is laser cut and computer balanced to ensure a perfectly flat plate. The unique anti-vibration expansion slots provide a more accurate cut and smoother finish. And our micro-grain carbide tips give you

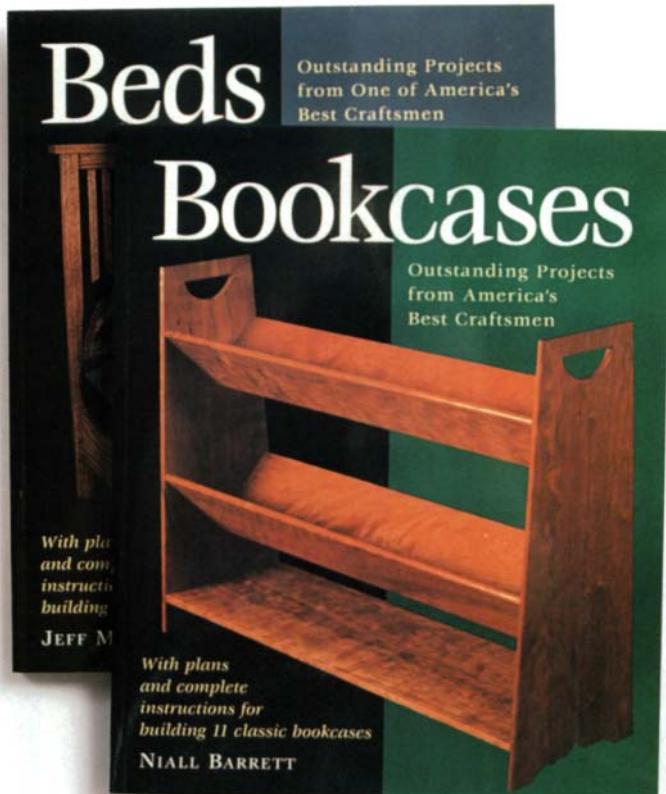
# IT TAKES A MASTERPIECE TO MAKE A MASTERPIECE.

the longest possible blade life. Of course, we don't want you to judge our blades by what we say. We want you to judge them by what they do. So put the DeWALT Series 40™ and Series 60™ Saw Blades to the test on your next project. We're so sure you'll be impressed that we back every one with an unconditional 30-day satisfaction guarantee.

# DEWALT®

High Performance Industrial Accessories

[www.dewalt.com](http://www.dewalt.com) 1-800-4 DEWALT



## A new book series from The Taunton Press

**Bookcases: Outstanding Projects from America's Best Craftsmen** by Niall Barrett. *The Taunton Press, Newtown, Conn.; 1999. \$24.95 softcover; 186 pp.*

**Beds: Outstanding Projects from America's Best Craftsmen** by Jeff Miller. *The Taunton Press, Newtown, Conn.; 1999. \$24.95 softcover; 186 pp.*

Taunton recently released the first two titles in a series of project books. Jeff Miller's *Beds* and Niall Barrett's *Bookcases* both cover a wide range of projects. For each project they provide step-by-step instructions, cut lists and drawings that even a novice woodworker could follow. Miller's book discusses the basics of bed construction, then walks you through building nine of his own designs—from Windsor to Arts and Crafts and from bunk beds to pencil posts.

While Barrett's book opens similarly—with a basic introduction to bookcase design and construction—the 11 projects offered are designs from various woodworkers, but the construction methods are Barrett's own. In this book he details the building of a Shaker wall shelf to hutch-style and barrister bookcases.

Other books in the series are slated to appear over the next few years and will include desks and tables.

—Matthew Teague, associate editor of *Fine Woodworking*

**SystemOne®**  
Modular Truck Equipment  
Awarded 16 U.S. Patents

- Extruded Aluminum Alloy
- Recessed T-Slots
- Ratchet Tie-Downs
- Inserts in 66 Colors

**3 Systems In One**

- ✓ Carries Overhead Cargo on Rubber Wear Strips
- ✓ Secures Interior Cargo with Sliding Cargo Anchors
- ✓ Organizes Equipment using Over 30 Accessories

Call For Free Brochure **1-800-627-9783** P.O. Box 248 Pennington, NJ 08534

READER SERVICE NO. 248

Highly Rated by *Fine Woodworking*, see review in *Fine Woodworking* #133, pages 68-73.

**ENDURO**  
**WAT-R-BASE®**

Laquers, Polyurethane,  
Stains, Color Coats,  
Wash Coats and Primers

**1-800-696-0615**

Local: (949) 366-2322 Fax: (949) 366-3471

COMPLIANT SPRAY SYSTEMS

3011 Vina Vial, San Clemente, CA 92673

READER SERVICE NO. 92

**Furniture Parts for Serious Woodworkers**

Aprons: *cherry, maple, mabogany, oak and pine*

Mortising

Corner Braces

**FREE catalog and pricing at**  
**www.tablelegs.com**  
or call 800-843-7405

**CLASSIC DESIGNS**  
by MATTHEW BURAK

P.O. BOX 329, ST. JOHNSBURY, VT 05819

READER SERVICE NO. 89



# THE CONOVER LATHE



Thinking of moving up? Need a machine with greater length, more horsepower and greater rigidity? Most of our customers have exceeded the capacity of smaller machines.

Heavy cast iron construction, precisely machined, produces a lathe with 16" swing. With user supplied 2"x6" timbers, this lathe can be sized to fit your workshop or project. Excellent for faceplate or spindle work. Guaranteed to please and compliment the craft of even the most discerning of craftsmen.

The Conover Lathe. A long tradition of pride in American-made quality.



## CONOVER

(440) 350-4545 • (800) 433-5221

www.conover-lathe.com

P.O. Box 418, Mentor, OH 44061

READER SERVICE NO. 65

• Shipping \$3.75 per order  
• Same-day shipping!!  
• All major credit cards

**WOODLINE ARIZONA, Inc.**  
PO Box 1530 • Payson, AZ 85547 **1-800-472-6950**  
*Great Router Bits and Shaper Cutters*  
Micro-Grain Carbide • Euro Anti-Kickback • Super-slick finish

### MAKE YOUR OWN WINDOWS WITH OUR 3-PIECE SASH CUTTER SETS

These sets allow you to make sash using a butt joint, dowels or tenons.



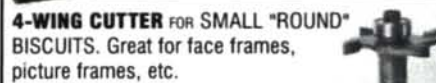
1/2" shank Router Bit 3-pc. set  
WL-1364-S  
only \$89.00 set



3/4" bore Shaper Cutter  
3-pc. set w/bearing  
WL-1364-SCS  
only \$139.00 set



"SASH MAKING" VHS Video  
WL-V-4 only \$12.95 ea.



4-WING CUTTER FOR SMALL "ROUND" BISCUITS. Great for face frames, picture frames, etc.

CUTTER plus 250 SMALL BISCUITS  
WL-1342-2 only \$20.00

EXTRA BISCUITS 250 ct. only \$8.00

www.woodbits.com

e-mail: cutters@netzone.com

FREE Catalog  
600 Items

READER SERVICE NO. 184

**ROJEK**  
Fine European Woodworking Machines  
Since 1921



\$1,840 **PK 300**

12" 3 hp  
Tilting Arbor Table Saw.  
Optional sliding table & scoring unit priced separately.



\$5,500 **KPS 300**

Five operation combination machine with three 3 hp motors



\$2,240 **FSN 300**

3 hp Tilting Spindle Shaper.  
Optional sliding table priced separately.



\$1,250 **VDA 316**

3 hp Slot Mortising Machine



\$2,350 **MSP 315**

3 hp 12" Planer/Joiner.  
Optional mortise attachment priced separately.

**TM**  
TECH MARK, INC.  
7901 Industry Drive • North Little Rock, AR 72117  
www.tech-mark.com • (501) 945-9393 or 1-800-787-6747

READER SERVICE NO. 209

another product from **MASTER FASTENERS**

## PRO FINISH KIT

includes:  
**MF 1853A**  
5/8"-2" 18 Ga. Brad Tool

- Adjustable Exhaust
- Quick-Clear No-Mar Nose
- Easy-Open Magazine
- Rubber Grip Handle
- Lightweight & Powerful

**MF 1565**  
1 1/4"-2 1/2" 15 Ga. Angle Finish Tool

- Powerful and Fast
- Easy Rear-Loading
- Depth Control
- Rubber Grip Handle
- Quick-Clear No-Mar Nose

plus:  
**Carry Case and 9 Boxes of Fasteners** in assorted sizes

**Best Deal in Town!**

for the Dealer nearest you:  
**MASTER FASTENERS**  
4726 E. 26th St., Vernon, CA 90040  
1-800-900-2212 • Bus: 1-323-261-4191 • Fax: 1-323-261-2542

READER SERVICE NO. 157

## HEARNE HARDWOODS, INC.

Specializing in **Pennsylvania Cherry**

Plain & Figured Cherry from 4/4 to 16/4  
Also: Premium Walnut, Figured Maple, wide planks & a large variety of exceptionally fine domestic & imported woods including free form slabs, turning blanks, burls, & instrument lumber.

National & International Shipping  
200 Whiteside Dr., Oxford, PA 19363

VISA ph 610-932-7400 fax 610-932-3130  
MasterCard email hearnehardwoods@chesco.com  
Toll Free 1-888-814-0007

READER SERVICE NO. 202

## VENEERING and CLAMPING with VACUUM

VACUUM PRESSING SYSTEMS, INC.  
553 RIVER ROAD  
BRUNSWICK, MAINE 04011  
207-725-0935 / FAX 207-725-0932  
VIDEO AVAILABLE

The leader in vacuum technology for woodworking offers a complete line of innovative products for:

- VENEERING
- LAMINATING
- CLAMPING

NEW products include:  
FlipTop Frame Presses, Inflatable Bladders and Videos

READER SERVICE NO. 17

# Apollo Sprayers Inc.

Taking TrueHVLP™  
Into the  
New Millennium



800-578-7606

www.HVLP.com

Call for Free Color Brochure

Distributor Inquiries Welcome  
apollo@HVLP.com

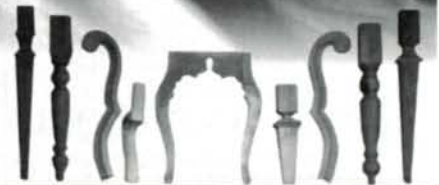
READER SERVICE NO. 190

# The Sexiest Legs in the Business

**BECTON LTD**

We ship furniture parts  
turning squares  
bowl blanks &  
dimension hardwoods  
by UPS daily

View Our Original  
Collection of  
Handmade Designs  
From the Craftsmen  
at Becton Ltd.



www.bectonltd.com or 1-800-559-5414

READER SERVICE NO. 172

## VAN DYKE'S RESTORERS

SUPPLIES FOR WOODWORKERS AND ANTIQUE RESTORERS

Visit us at [www.vandykes.com](http://www.vandykes.com)

Featuring the industries largest selection of:

- Furniture Components
- Veneers, Carvings and Moldings
- Furniture Kits
- Hardware

Over 8,000 Items!

FREE Catalog

Call 1-800-558-1234 ask for Dept. 60030 or write Dept. 60010 PO Box 278 Woonsocket, SD 57385

READER SERVICE NO. 213

## Wood Moisture Meters

Wood moisture is a crucial factor that determines usefulness and stability of wood. Pin-type moisture testers measure surface and core moisture to avoid cracking, warping and delamination.

The versatile mini-Ligno meters from Lignomat are ideal for veneer, heavy timbers and curved plywood; a favorite for professional woodworkers and serious hobbyists. Ask about our free brochure for pin and pinless moisture meters.

800/227-2105 **Lignomat USA Ltd.**  
503/257-8957 PO 30145, Portland OR 97294

READER SERVICE NO. 59

## FREE Woodturners Catalog!

- Pen Kits
- Project Kits
- Books & Videos
- Exotic Woods
- Abrasives



- Lathes
- Turning Tools
- Finishes
- Exotic Woods
- Chucks
- Woodturning Courses

Order Online!

Offering woodturners the finest selection of woodturning tools and accessories anywhere!  
Craft Supplies USA 1287 E. 1120 S. Provo, UT 84606



Order Your FREE Catalog  
**1-800-551-8876**  
[www.craftusa.com](http://www.craftusa.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 183

CALL 1-800-201-6570 • [www.tsunamitools.com](http://www.tsunamitools.com)

### MP25

REVOLUTIONARY  
23 GAUGE  
HEADLESS MINI-  
PINNER LEAVES  
ALMOST NO HOLE!

\$137<sup>00</sup>



- Shoots to 1" pin
- Excellent for Trim
- Decorative Molding
- Ornaments
- Picture Frames

### 71/16LN

USE ANY  
PLACE WITH  
A TIGHT FIT

\$119<sup>00</sup>



- 3/8" Crown Staple with a 2-inch nose
- Shoots 22 gauge Staple up to 5/8" long
- Great for Upholstery and Toys
- Ornaments

**Tsunami Tools**

READER SERVICE NO. 222

# It's Midnight and you can't Sleep!

No, you're not suffering from insomnia. You've just purchased a Signature Series Combination Machine from Laguna Tools. While everyone else sleeps, you can't wait to sneak into the garage and work on your legendary Knapp. The best (and the most expensive) combination machine in the world was custom made in Austria just for you.

The machine's construction is more like a finely crafted metal working machine. Distinctive features such as a 6 mm steel body, cast iron dovetail raising and lowering mechanisms throughout, put the Signature Series in a class of its own. With a scraped finish on the cured cast iron work surfaces, a 10 year sliding table warranty, variable speed planer and self cleaning acme threads - it's no wonder you can't sleep!



**Rest assured, this insomnia is curable –  
take one Knapp at night and one during the day!**

Call 800-234-1976 today for further information about this truly incredible woodworking machine. The Knapp line includes several different models: 12" sliding table saw, 12" and 16" jointer/planer combinations tablesaw/ four-speed shaper combination with or without tilting shaper.

## LAGUNA TOOLS

*You Build With Wood, We Build With Trust.*

**800-234-1976**

2265 Laguna Canyon Rd. Laguna Beach, CA 92651  
(949) 494-7006 • FX (949) 497-1346

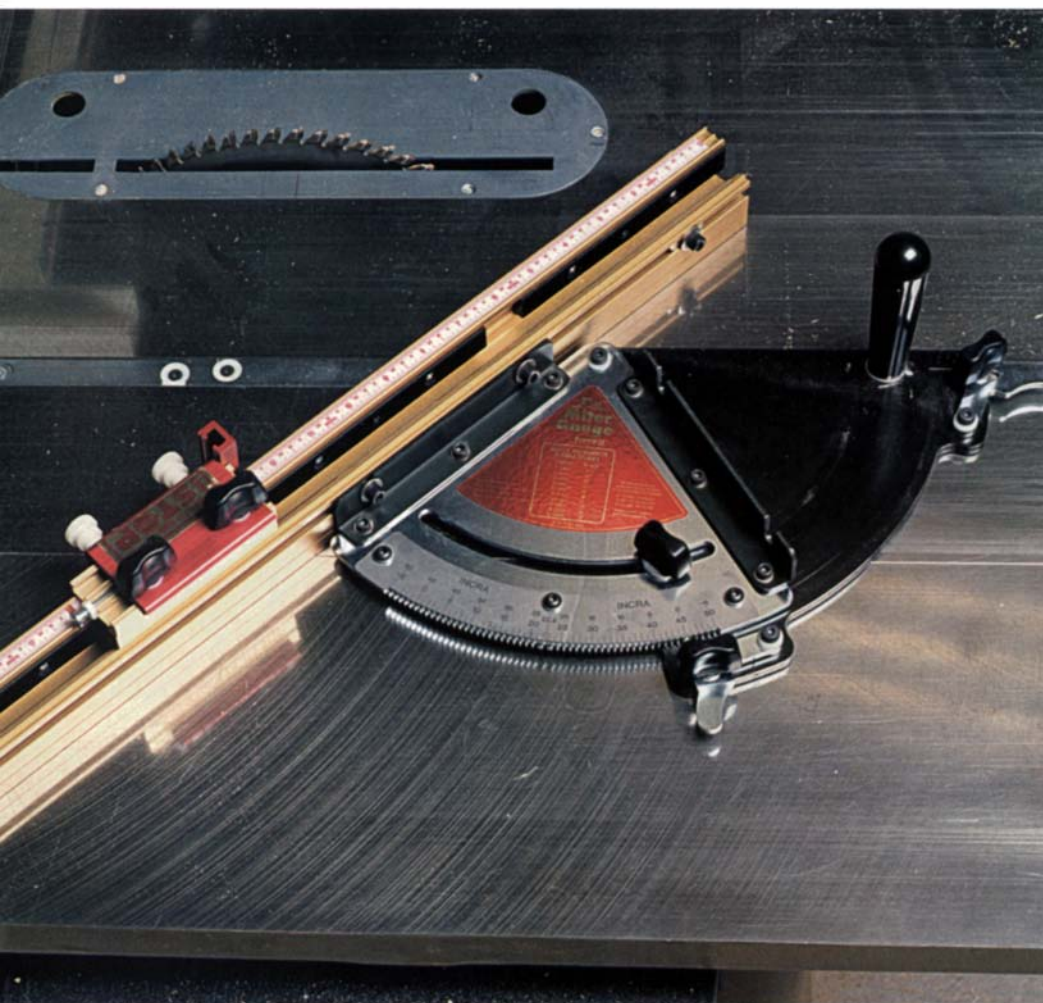
**800-234-1976**

100 Central Ave. So. Kearny, New Jersey 07032  
(973) 491-0102 • FX (973) 491-0591

E Mail: [lagunatools@earthlink.net](mailto:lagunatools@earthlink.net) Web: [www.lagunatools.com](http://www.lagunatools.com)

# Tools & Materials

## An accurate miter gauge from Inkra



**The Inkra miter gauge works with any table saw. The miter slot bar is adjustable for a snug fit, and all moving parts have fine adjusting mechanisms built in.**

Inkra's new miter gauge boasts a sturdy construction. It has provisions for positive stops in 1° increments over a scale of 55° by way of a toothed plate and indexing pin. The positive-stop feature can be disabled for even finer adjustments.

It took me about half an hour to set up the gauge. The instruction manual is easy to follow, and the setup is straightforward. Once the gauge was adjusted 90° to the blade, it was easy to cut very accurate miters with the 27-in.-long fence. An optional 52-in. fence can be ordered for \$50. Or you can simply attach an extended wooden fence to the aluminum fence and cut it for zero clearance. The gauge even comes with extra screws to make it a cinch to attach such a fence.

The gauge's optional adjustable Shop Stop will provide a solid surface for registering stock and making accurate, repeatable cuts. The stop allows you to make minute adjustments and lock them in place. A movable scale that fits into the fence of the miter gauge allows the gauge to be zeroed to the blade at any angle, on any saw. My only gripe with the stop is that it must be removed for cutting extralong stock. I'd like it better if it could be flipped out of the way. The miter gauge costs \$184.95; the Shop Stop is an extra \$32.95. For more information, contact Taylor Design Group at (972) 243-7943.

—Roland Johnson

## Nail gun for fine detail work

Micropinners, also called headless brad nailers, shoot a very thin nail (approximately 23 gauge) and are used to fasten moldings, beading and small trim pieces. The small hole that's left is virtually invisible and can be easily filled and finished.

While not designed for continuous production-type use, the Accuset A 100MP is well made for occasional use. The gun I tested never misfired, nor did it leave a noticeable impression, often a problem with brad nailers, even on softwoods.

The tool is nicely dampened, important when installing glass-retaining molding. In three month's use, I didn't break one pane of glass. Additionally, because the nails are so small, even the tiniest carved moldings can be pinned without fear of splitting them. The tool is lightweight and exhausts air and oil out the back, away from the workpiece.

At about \$129, this is an affordable, special-purpose tool. For more information, call (888) 222-8144.

—Jeff Jewitt



**Accuset's pneumatic micropinner leaves nearly invisible holes. The fine-gauge nails are good for delicate trimwork or tacking parts together for gluing.**

# Portable **SAWHELPER™ ULTRAFENCE™** BECAUSE IT DOESN'T PAY TO OWN SECOND BEST



Rated #1  
by "Fine Homebuilding"  
magazine in a  
comparison test.

- Fits all miter saws up to 15", perfect for all slide compound saws.
- The only system that is truly accurate and sets up on any terrain in 80 seconds — guaranteed.
- Steel self-squaring coupler aligns fences with saw to 1/100" accuracy — no other system has it!
- Flipstop™ fence gage has hairline pointer for extreme accuracy, lever action, Lexan view-plate, heavy steel construction.
- Extensions are made of tempered aluminum to support heavy framing lumber.
- Legs store flat under fences and adjust from 30" to 42" — great for uneven terrain.
- Center stand folds flat, includes a quick release mounting plate for saw.



**AMERICAN DESIGN & ENGINEERING, INC.**  
St. Paul Park, MN

1-800-441-1388

Ref. 12-98-2

651-459-7400

**GENERAL** PRECISION WOODWORKING TOOLS

**EXCEPTIONAL PRICING SERVICE & VALUE**  
Made In Canada

**GENERAL MACHINERY**

The only High Quality, Heavy Duty Line of Woodworking Equipment  
Tablesaws, Jointers, Mortisers, Lathes, Drill Presses and accessories including Modulus® Scoring Saw Attachment

[www.woodworktools.com](http://www.woodworktools.com)  
**ASHMAN TECHNICAL LTD.**  
351 Nash Rd, N. Hamilton, Ontario, CANADA L8H 7P4  
Phone 905-560-2400 • FAX: 905-560-2404  
**1-800-668-5721**

READER SERVICE NO. 50

The **NEW** **R<sup>2</sup>** **REPLACEABLE** and **REVERSIBLE** Microplane® Rasp.

"Microplanes® shave the wood instead of tearing and gouging."  
- Scott Phillips

For more info call: **1-800-555-2767**

**Microplane**  
A Product of Grace Manufacturing

[www.microplane.com](http://www.microplane.com)  
Info@microplane.com

READER SERVICE NO. 25

**Takumi**

Created for the Master Carpenter.

**SHARK SAW** **SHARK CORPORATION** (Formerly Takagi Tools Inc.)  
Tel: 800-91-7855 Fax: 310-541-5765  
E-Mail: info@sharkcorp.com Web: www.sharkcorp.com

READER SERVICE NO. 259

**Save Money** — saw your own lumber

**With a Wood-Mizer!**

**\$4945**

- Cut logs up to 28" D. x 11' L.
- Extra bed sections permit longer lengths.
- Easily transportable.

**Wood-Mizer®**  
8180 W. 10th Street Dept. Z97  
Indianapolis, IN 46214  
[www.woodmizer.com](http://www.woodmizer.com)

**Free \$2 Catalog\***  
\* With purchase of All Products Video @ \$10.

**LT15 Personal Sawmill** **1-800-553-0219**

## A classic wooden plane resurfaces



**The coffin-style plane is back.** Clark & Williams produces a line of wooden planes including this coffin plane, which measures 8¾ in. long.

Go to a typical flea market, and you'll see antique wooden planes stashed in boxes, peeking from beneath quilts or laid in neat rows. Dragged from basements and attics, following years of neglect or abuse, these pathetic relics will probably never work wood again and often end up used as paperweights. But wooden planes in good working order are a joy to use. For those unwilling to risk buying

an old tool, Clark & Williams in Eureka Springs, Ark., is now producing a wonderful coffin-shaped smoothing plane made of clear beech and modeled after 18th-century examples. The plane has a single blade with no chipbreaker and measures 8¾ in. long.

When Clark & Williams was just starting out, the company took its prototype to the resident tool experts and historians at Colonial Williamsburg in Virginia. They got an earful. And judging from the plane I inspected, they were paying close attention. The plane is as functional as it is beautiful. The wood has been finished smooth but with small details bearing the marks of the maker.

The coffin plane is adjusted by tapping the body and iron with a hammer, just like the originals. Adjusted properly, the plane will produce very thin shavings. The secret of the plane's performance is the 2¼-in.-wide blade coupled with a tight mouth, which allows only the finest shaving to pass through.

This plane, which costs \$265, is not for everyone. But if you have an appreciation of wooden planes and are willing to invest the time to learn how to adjust such a tool, you will be rewarded with something that functions very well. For more information about this or other tools produced by the company, call (501) 253-7416.

—Mario Rodriguez

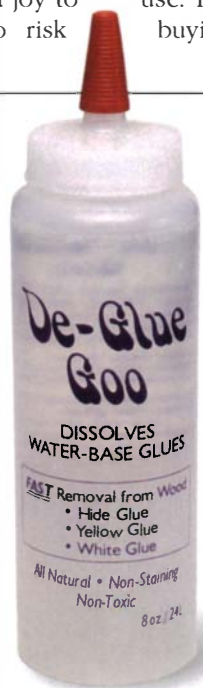
## Electronic blade-height measuring gauge

The BladeGauge is a cool little gadget that doesn't cost a lot and is very simple to use. Made of electronic circuit-board material attached to a magnetic base, the BladeGauge allows you to dial in the height of a tablesaw blade, useful when cutting joinery. When the blade touches the contacts of the device, placed at ⅛-in. increments, from ⅛ in. to 2 in. high, an LED lights up. The biggest problem with all blade-height gauges is, of course, finding the exact spot on the tablesaw to set the gauge to read the highest point of the blade. This device doesn't solve that issue. BladeGauge costs \$49.95. For more information, contact the manufacturer, Pacific Rack & Machine, at (541) 830-0340 or (877) 220-2699.

—Anatole Burkin



**BladeGauge uses simple electronics to indicate blade height.** When the blade touches one of the contacts, placed at ⅛-in. increments, an LED lights up.



**Glue remover in gel form.** De-Glue Goo contains acetic acid and will remove recently applied PVA glues and hardened hide glue.

## Gel removes glue squeeze-out

As its name suggests, De-Glue Goo is a glue remover designed for use on hide glue and polyvinyl acetate (PVA) glues. It's basically an inert gel that contains acetic acid, the primary ingredient in vinegar.

De-Glue Goo is easy to use and performs as advertised, readily softening hardened hide glue and recently applied PVAs (white and yellow glues). De-Glue Goo, however, won't remove cured PVA glue, which is not surprising considering PVA becomes harder as it ages. De-Glue Goo also won't soften cured type-II PVAs. That glue crosslinks as it cures, making it resistant to moisture and solvents.

I don't bother using De-Glue Goo on assemblies like edge joints, which can be cleaned up easily with machines and hand tools. However, De-Glue Goo is superb for cleaning up complex assemblies like carcasses and chair frames. Sponge the work with water afterward to remove any left-over remover.

At about \$10 for 8 oz., De-Glue Goo is pricey, but it keeps well and goes a long way. I only wish the gel were a little thicker so that it didn't run when used on vertical surfaces. For more information, contact the manufacturer at (540) 261-1622.

—William Tandy Young

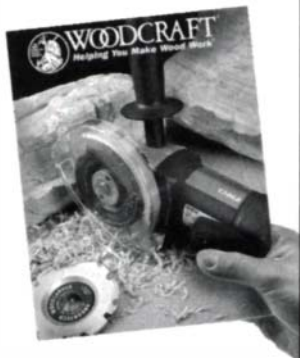
# FREE TOOL CATALOG!

## Your Best Work Starts With Us...

With over 8,000 of the finest woodworking tools in the world, Woodcraft can help you work more efficiently and skillfully than ever. Call for your Free copy today.

**1-800-542-9115**

www.woodcraft.com



**WOODCRAFT®**  
Helping You Make Wood Work®

Visit one of our stores located nationwide! Call us for the store nearest you.



Proud sponsor of "The American Woodshop" hosted by Scott Phillips on PBS.

560 Airport Ind. Park,  
Dept. 00WW03Q,  
PO Box 1686,  
Parkersburg, WV  
26102-1686

READER SERVICE NO. 30

## IS IT A TABLE SAW OR IS IT A MOLDER?

It's both when you use the Magic Molder!



### NOW YOU KNOW...

that you can teach your old saw new tricks with the balanced, carbide tipped Magic Molder. You're a professional

**MAGIC MOLDER™**

because you know a good thing when you see it—so what are you waiting for? It's more than an accessory...

it's a whole new machine that installs in just

minutes. Quiet, carbide sharp and infinitely variable, the Magic Molder puts custom capability in your hands when you call

**818.782.0226**



A Division of:  
**LRH**  
Enterprises, Inc.

6961 Valjean Avenue, Van Nuys, CA 91406  
818.782.0226 or FAX 818.909.7602

READER SERVICE NO. 74

## Operate 3-phase shop motors from single-phase power



DIFFERENT MODELS TO FIT YOUR NEEDS

**The Ronk ROTO-CON®** Rotary Phase Converter will provide 3-phase power from single-phase sources to operate single or multiple motor applications found in woodworking shops.

**The Ronk Phase-Shifter** is a medium-duty static-type converter for shop applications such as drill presses, mills, saws, etc., where continuous full load use is not required, but low initial cost is important.

Ph. 1-800-221-RONK, Ext. 216

**RE RONK**  
ELECTRICAL INDUSTRIES, INC.

P.O. Box 160, Dept. 216 • Nokomis, IL 62075 • Ph. 217/563-8333, Ext. 216 • Fax 217/563-8336

READER SERVICE NO. 208

## JOINTECH®

Ultra-Precision Woodworking Systems



CabinetMaker's System® shown on JOINTECH ROUTING CENTER

With JoinTech's CabinetMaker's System you can make any kind of joinery for boxes or drawers, even make your own raised panel doors. Systems include Clincher Machine which uses joint making templates and the Award Winning SmartFence for all shaping & jointing operations.

System can adapt to any standard router table in minutes, or with our new Saw Train rails you can now bring incredible precision to any Cabinet, Bench or Contractors saw... With Jointech all you need is ONE FENCE to do it all - NOT THREE!

To request a catalog call 1-800-619-1288 or go to: [www.jointech.com](http://www.jointech.com)



CabinetMaker's System® shown on JOINTECH SAW TRAIN™  
8ft Rails Shown

- 5-Pt Locking System
- Absolute Parallelism
- Large Rip Capacity
- Vacuum Fence
- Micro-Adjustable
- Reversible
- .001" Repeatability

READER SERVICE NO. 102

## Supergrit® SANDPAPER

HOOK & LOOP



4 1/2"	8 Hole	\$10.00/50
5"	5 or 8 Hole	\$12.50/50
6"	6 Hole	\$17.50/50

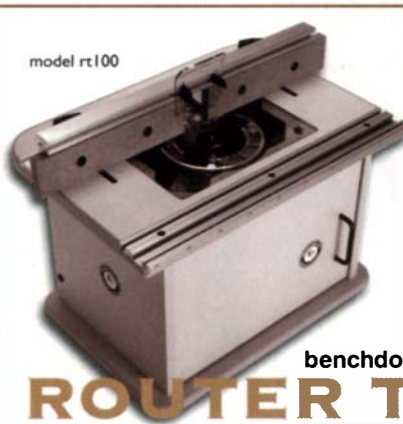
"LAPIKA" MICRON 1/4 SHEETS  
10-40 MICRON (400-1500 GRIT)  
REG. 39.95/50 SALE \$12.50/50

BELTS—A.O. RESIN		SHEETS—9" x 11", A.O.	
1 x 30	\$ .75	4 x 24	\$1.10
1 x 42	\$ .75	4 x 36	\$1.40
3 x 21	\$ .85	6 x 48	\$3.50
3 x 24	\$ .90	6 x 89	\$6.20
		ABRASIVE ROLLS	
		60D, 80D	\$14/50
		120C, 150C	\$23/100
		180A, 220A	\$21/100

**RED HILL CORP.** FREE 48 PAGE CATALOG & Incredible close-out sheets.  
P.O. BOX 4234

GETTYSBURG, PA 17325 **800-822-4003**  
www.supergrit.com

READER SERVICE NO. 84



model rc100

In a world of look-alike router tables, it's nice to find an original. See Bench Dog for professional router tables and power tool accessories like Blade-Lo<sup>™</sup>, the first ever blade changing tool for your table saw.

Our most recent tool is Feather-Lo<sup>™</sup>, a revolutionary 4-in-1 feather-board. Also, watch for our innovative table saw-mounted routertop. Click over to our web site for all the latest info. Or, give us a call and we'll be glad to mail you a catalog.



1500 Jackson St. NE  
Minneapolis, MN 55413

[benchdog.com](http://benchdog.com)

**ROUTER TABLES**

**1-800-786-8902**

READER SERVICE NO. 169

## Triple roller stand can support heavy loads



Jim Tolpin

**A stable roller stand.** Wolfcraft's triple roller stand can be folded for easy storage.

I have not had much luck with inexpensive, portable roller stands. Most are too light and flimsy to be of much use unless weights are placed across their base frames, which defeats the purpose of an easy-to-set-up, portable device.

Wolfcraft's triple roller stand is different. Though priced under \$80, it is sturdily built and can support heavy loads without additional base weighting. The wide stance and relatively heavy base frame (the whole unit weighs 32½ lbs.) resists any tendency to tip under load, even when I asked it to support a sheet of ¾-in.-thick plywood. The stand extends up to 43½ in. high to accommodate tall machines and folds up quickly into a flat package that can be hung out of the way.

An unusual and unique feature of this stand is its two-position roller system. Set at standard height for typical usage, the rollers clear their side supports and offer rolling support. When set at the lower po-

sition, however, the rollers drop below the supports, which can then act as an attachment frame for a solid surface. The stand then becomes a portable worktable that can adjust to a variety of heights. While this feature may be useful for construction-site woodworking, where multiuse tools are more appreciated, I found it annoying. Because the rollers tend to drop into the lower position whenever the stand is moved around, you have to check each roller every time you make a setup.

Out of the box, the roller support arms did not sit parallel to the support base. This meant that the rollers would not orient parallel to a level work surface, forcing one of the rollers to do most, if not all, of the work. It was an easy fix, however: I simply loosened the bolts holding the arms to the vertical supports and shifted the assembly slightly. Wolfcraft's stand is available at many home centers and hardware stores.   
—Jim Tolpin

**FLEXAUST**

24 HOUR SERVICE

- Flexible Dust Collection Connections
- To Convey Air, Fumes, Dust and Chips from Machinery
- Temperatures: From -65° to 600°F
- Widest Size Range: From 5/8" to 48" ID
- Many Products Listed as UL 94V-0 Flame Resistant

Flexaust flexible hose and ducting products are available in a full range of materials including plastic, TPR, PVC, urethane, silicone and rubber. Please contact us for all of your flexible hose and ducting needs . . . We have the right product for every application.

**THE FLEXAUST COMPANY INC.**  
1510 Armstrong Road P.O. Box 4275  
Warsaw, IN 46581-4275  
Phone 800-343-0428 E-Mail sales@flexaust.com  
Website <http://www.flexaust.com>  
Fax 800-382-8464

READER SERVICE NO. 252

Professional Tools  
On-line  
Save Money  
Save Time

[www.toolmarts.com](http://www.toolmarts.com)

Web Special  
*freud*  
Router Bits  
45% OFF

**SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS**

*Simply the Best*

Square Drive Beats Driver Slippage  
Deep Thread for Super Grip  
Hardened Steel for Superior Strength  
Made in the US or Canada!

**McFEELY'S** PO Box 11169, Dept. FWW  
SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS Lynchburg • VA • 24506-1169  
Call Toll Free: 1-800-443-7937

READER SERVICE NO. 29

**Kreg Jig®**

**HAVE YOU DISCOVERED THE POCKET HOLE ADVANTAGE?**

WE OFFER A COMPLETE LINE OF POCKET HOLE SYSTEMS RANGING FROM \$20-\$1685.

"Cuts project time in half, eliminates the need for an expensive arsenal of clamps." *WOOD magazine*

"A pocket hole jig that changed my mind about pocket hole joinery." *FINE HOMEBUILDING magazine*

**800-447-8638**  
[WWW.KREGTOOL.COM](http://WWW.KREGTOOL.COM)

READER SERVICE NO. 49



# 2000 WOOD at HAYSTACK

Jenna Goldberg • Michael Hurwitz  
Gord Peteran • Stephen Whittlesey



2000 two and three week Summer Sessions, June 4 thru September 1. Brochure available by writing Haystack Mountain School of Crafts, Box 518FW, Deer Isle, ME 04627, or by calling (207) 348-2306. [www.haystack-mtn.org](http://www.haystack-mtn.org)

READER SERVICE NO. 232

## Quality Pen Kits and Other Turning Kits



• Designers & Manufacturers • Wholesale & Retail

### THE BereaHardWoods CO. Inc.

Manufacturer of quality writing instruments, components and kits.

CALL FOR FREE CATALOG

6367 Eastland Rd. • Brookpark, Ohio 44142 U.S.A.  
Ph: 440-234-7949 • Fax: 440-234-7958 • [bereahard@aol.com](mailto:bereahard@aol.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 41

### WAGNER SAFE-T-PLANER™

For Drill Press or Radial Arm Saw

For Professional or Hobby Use!

Surface Planes, Tenons, Rabbits, Moulding, Rosettes, Raised Panels, Concave Cuts and Tapered Legs

**MAKES:**

**ABSOLUTELY SAFE**  
Impossible to grab or kick back!

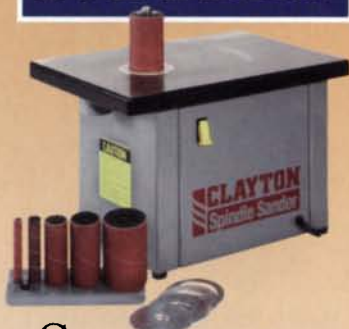
Drill Press Kit \$42.00	Radial Saw Kit \$45.00
----------------------------	---------------------------

\$5.00 S & H - Add State Tax where applicable.  
For Radial Saw state the make, model and shaft size.  
KIT INCLUDES: Illustrated instruction guide.  
Safe-T-Planer™, grinding wheel, arbor and wrench.  
Order direct, or through established and recognized quality wood working catalogs and stores. Money back guarantee. Free literature available.

**G & W TOOL CO., INC.**  
P.O. Box 691464 • Tulsa, OK 74169 • (918) 486-2761  
MADE IN THE USA

READER SERVICE NO. 80

## THE STANDARD IN SANDERS



Clayton Spindle Sanders are built in the USA with precision balanced spindles, oversized bearings, and a premium Baldor Induction Motor.

- Benchtop and full-sized, professional models
- Large table surface
- Built-in dust port
- Quick-change drums

Clayton tackles the toughest sanding jobs...smoothly.

FREE COLOR CATALOG,  
call: 1-800-971-5050

**CLAYTON**  
Spindle Sanders

ROYAL OAK, MI 48068-0520  
READER SERVICE NO. 167

The most useful tool since the opposable thumb.

Gorilla Glue® is a serious woodworker's dream. It holds everything including hardwoods, softwoods, hard-to-glue exotics and pressure-treated lumber. Gorilla Glue joints are incredibly stable, and the glue lines are nearly invisible. Plus, it's 100% waterproof so it's perfect outdoors, too. Successful projects are within your grasp. Call 800-966-3458 for a dealer, or find out more at [www.gorillaglu.com](http://www.gorillaglu.com).

**THE TOUGHEST GLUE ON PLANET EARTH™**

READER SERVICE NO. 5

## Shellac from Hock

I like shellac. It is a durable and versatile finish. It can be sprayed, brushed or wiped on and used as a topcoat, sealer or barrier between disparate finishes. If you've never tried shellac, consider getting a small sample kit, now available from Ron Hock, known for his plane blades.

A Hock shellac kit consists of enough shellac flakes and denatured alcohol to mix up a 9.5-oz. batch, just enough finish for a small project. A brochure includes a bit of shellac history and directions for applying the product (brush, pad or spray). Hock sells both blond (light-colored) and orange (darker) shellac.

Why buy unmixed when you can purchase ready-mixed at the home center? Premixed shellac is usually only available in orange and has a short useful life span. Shellac loses its water resistance and dry-




ing ability over time. Mixing fresh shellac from flakes guarantees good performance of the product.

Considering that shellac is available in dry form for around \$20 per pound, the kit price of \$19.95 is an expensive way to buy shellac. It is, however, a convenient, informative and well-packaged introduction to using the finish. The product is available from Woodcraft (800-225-1153) or from Hock (888-282-5233). —*Michael Pekovich*

*Roland Johnson works wood in Sauk Rapids, Minn.; Jeff Jewitt refinishes furniture in Cleveland, Ohio; Mario Rodriguez is a contributing editor to Fine Woodworking; Anatole Burkin is a senior editor of Fine Woodworking; William Tandy Young is a woodworker and author from Stowe, Mass.; Jim Tolpin is a woodworker and writer in Port Townsend, Wash.; Michael Pekovich is associate art director of Fine Woodworking.*

**Shellac starter kit.** Plane-blade maker Ron Hock sells a kit containing shellac, denatured alcohol and instructions for application.

## Profit on wheels!




### Our molder will make your custom work...


### ...customarily profitable!

For over 40 years the USA made W&H Molder has been a wise investment for woodshop owners. Find out more about this quality machine!

**TURN THIS...INTO THIS...**



**...INTO \$\$\$!**



**Williams & Hussey Machine Co., Inc.**

PO Box 1149 • Wilton, NH 03086  
**1-800-258-1380(USA)**  
 603-654-6828 fax: 603-654-5446  
 Visit us on-line at: [williamsnhussey.com](http://williamsnhussey.com)

CALL TODAY & ASK ABOUT OUR VIDEO!

READER SERVICE NO. 62



# SUNHILL

**HURRY!**  
Sale ends April 30th!

## Spring SALE

### 15" TWO SPEED PLANER

• 3HP, 1Ph motor



**CT-388**

Regular \$925<sup>00</sup>  
**Spring SALE \$849**

### 16" DOUBLE SIDE PLANER

**CT-400D**

PLANES TOP & BOTTOM SIDES IN ONE PASS

• Can also be used as a single sided planer



Regular \$2,500<sup>00</sup>  
**Spring SALE \$1995**

### SUNHILL 15" PRODUCTION WIDE BELT SANDER

Single or 3 phase AVAILABLE!



**SDM-15**

Regular \$4,250<sup>00</sup>  
**Spring SALE \$3095**

• 6' x 30" Capacity  
 • 5HP, 1Ph or 7.5HP, 3Ph  
 • Call for full specs

### SUNHILL 25", 37", 44", 52" SINGLE & DOUBLE BELT WIDE BELT SANDERS

• Pneumatic belt tension for quick & easy belt changing



**SDS-25 25"**

Regular \$6,250<sup>00</sup>  
**Spring SALE \$5395**

**SDS-37 37"**

Regular \$11,450<sup>00</sup>  
**Spring SALE \$9075**

Single or 3 phase AVAILABLE!

**Call 1-800-929-4321** CALL FOR MORE SPECIALS!

[www.sunhillnic.com](http://www.sunhillnic.com)



**SUNHILL MACHINERY**

The Best Machinery Values in America.™

**SUNHILL MACHINERY**  
 500 Andover Park East  
 Seattle, WA 98188  
 Toll-free: **1-800-929-4321**  
 Fax: 206-575-3617  
 e-mail: [sunhill@sunhillnic.com](mailto:sunhill@sunhillnic.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 235

**NEW!!** Forrest Woodworker II now available for DeWalt Cordless Portables - DW936, DW935, DW930

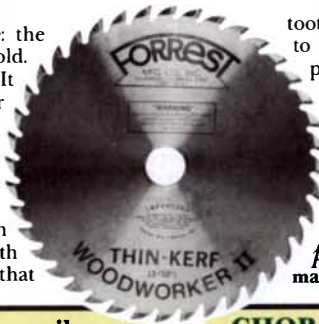
**Made & Serviced in AMERICA**

# No Splintering, No Tearout, Life-Long Performance. Now That's Precious Metal.

**FREE SHIPPING**  
on orders over \$275  
**1-800-733-7111**  
through 4-30-00

A quarter of a million satisfied woodworkers agree: the Forrest Woodworker II blade is worth its weight in gold. Maybe more. And it doesn't take a jeweler to see why. It rips through thick hardwoods with no scratches or tearouts. Miter and cross-cuts with flawless precision. It makes short work of one-sided laminates and splintery oak plywoods... flawlessly. In short there are sawblades... and there are Forrest blades.

Here's why. The hardness of C-4 carbide, combined with the low breaking point, of C-2 carbide, creates a tooth that's as permanently tough as it is sharp. Once that



tooth is hand-brazed to the plate, the blade is hand-straightened to a perfect flatness—and an astonishing ±.001" runout for peak performance.

Sawing is believing. Prove it to yourself— completely without risk! Call (800) 733-7111 today for your chance to try a premium Woodworker II blade or any other Forrest blade in your own shop.

**"The ONE BLADE THAT LEAVES A SMOOTH-AS-SANDED SURFACE."** Outperformed 36 other premium blades, both foreign and domestic, WOOD magazine test, Sept. 1998, pg. 45.

## FORREST WOODWORKER II: 5 1/2"-14" dia. avail.

All-purpose—tablesaws and portable circular saws.  
**Special 10% Discount! Take 20% off second blade of your choice.**  
**EDITORS' CHOICE AND TOP RATING OVER 18 COMPETING SAW BLADES.**  
*The 10" x 40T earned the Editors' Choice Award for the best performance regardless of the price. See American Woodworker April 1998 pp 68-69.*

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
14" x 40 T x 1"	<del>\$149</del>	\$134	\$119
14" x 30 T x 1"	<del>\$139</del>	\$125	\$111
12" x 40 T x 1"	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
12" x 30 T x 1"	<del>\$119</del>	\$107	\$95
10" x 40 T x 1/8" or 3/16"	<del>\$119</del>	\$107	\$95
10" x 30 T x 1/8" or 3/16"	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
9" x 40 T	<del>\$109</del>	\$98	\$87
9" x 30 T	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
8 1/4" x 40 T x 3/32"	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
8" x 40 T 3/32"	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
8" x 30 T 3/32"	<del>\$99</del>	\$80	\$71
7 1/4" x 30 T 3/32"	<del>\$89</del>	\$62	\$55
**6" x 40 T 3/32"	<del>\$99</del>	\$80	\$71
***5 3/8" x 40 T x 5/64"	<del>\$99</del>	\$80	\$71
→ 5 3/8" x 40T x 10m	<del>\$99</del>	\$80	\$71



\* Sears & Makita Tablesaws \*\* Saw Boss

\*\*\* NEW for DeWalt Cordless Portables

**BLADE STIFFENER.** Make all your blades cut better and quieter with a blade stiffener! 4" ● \$21 5" ● \$24 6" ● \$25



## FORREST DADO-KING: 6"-12"

**Unmatched Precision on Every Dado Cut!**

The Forrest Dado-King gives you flat-bottomed grooves and no splintering—even when crosscutting oak plys and melamine. This award-winning set comes with six 4-tooth chippers (including 3/32" chipper), two 24-tooth outside blades plus shims. Cuts 1/8" to 29/32" grooves.

	Free \$21 value 10" BLADE RUNNER CARRYING CASE!	Sale Price	10% Off First Dado	15% Off Second Dado
6" set	Protects and holds up to 10 blades. Shipped with 6", 8" or 10" Dado Sets.	<del>\$269</del>	\$242	\$229
8" set		<del>\$269</del>	\$260	\$245
10" set		<del>\$349</del>	\$314	\$297
12" set		<del>\$449</del>	\$404	\$382

**2-4 Days Sharpening**  
ON ALL MAKES OF CARBIDE BLADES, ROUTERS, CUTTERS, PLANER & JOINTER KNIVES

## NEW "EASY-FEED" STANDARD DADO

For solid hard and soft woods only! (No plys, no melamine!) 8" D, with positive hook 24 tooth blades & 2 tooth chippers and shims. Cuts 1/8" to 1/16" wide

LIST	SALE	10%	15%
\$249	\$218	\$196	\$185

## DURALINE HI A/T: 7 1/4"-16" dia. avail.

Cuts melamine PERFECTLY. Our best PLYWOOD blade. 220 mm & 300 mm available.

For absolute splinter control!!	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
8", 7 1/4" & others available			
10" x 80 T (1/8" or 3/32" K)	<del>\$159</del>	\$143	\$127
12" x 80 T (1" hole, 1/8" K)	<del>\$181</del>	\$163	\$145
14" x 80 T (1" hole)	<del>\$197</del>	\$177	\$158
14" x 100 T (1" hole)	<del>\$226</del>	\$203	\$181
16" x 100 T (1" hole)	<del>\$243</del>	\$219	\$194

**PEELS PLUS**  
\$7.95 per can plus \$6 S&H if purchased separately.

## CHOP MASTER BLADE: 6 1/2"-15" dia. avail.

Specially designed for sliding compound miter, miter chop, and radial saws. New specs, 5° neg. pts. & flat, runs out less than .001/.002 for perfect, tight, smooth, splinter-free miter joints!

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
6 1/2" x 40 T x 5/8" Delta, Sidekick & others	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
8 1/4" x 60 T x 5/8" Sears, Delta, Ryobi	<del>\$109</del>	\$98	\$87
8 1/2" x 60 T x 5/8" Hitachi, DeWalt, Ryobi, Freud TR125	<del>\$119</del>	\$107	\$95
9" x 80 T x 5/8" Delta & others	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
10" x 80 T x 5/8" Delta, Bosch, Hitachi, Makita, Ryobi, AEG & all	<del>\$139</del>	\$125	\$111
12" x 80 T x 1" Delta, Hitachi, Makita, B&D, Sears & all	<del>\$149</del>	\$134	\$119
14" x 100 T x 1" Makita, Ryobi	<del>\$189</del>	\$170	\$151
15" x 100 T x 1" Hitachi, Ryobi	<del>\$199</del>	\$179	\$159

## WOODWORKER I: 7 1/4"-14" dia. avail.

Designed for radial arm or tablesaws—fine crosscut.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
8", 8 1/4", 7 1/4" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$109</del>	\$98	\$87
10" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
12" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$139</del>	\$125	\$111

## EXTRA BONUS! 9 AT \$5 EACH!

(Use one coupon per blade or dado.)

Buy a blade or dado and get \$45 worth of sharpening discount coupons from Forrest, good on any make blade or dado set you own. The first 100 customers will receive a **FREE Picnic Table Plan & Router Poster.**

**For Info, Tech Help, or to Order, Call:**

**1-800-733-7111**

973-473-5236 • Fax 973-471-3333

Shipping & Handling  
blade \$6  
dado \$8  
stiffener \$2

All Major Credit Cards Accepted

FL, NJ, NY residents please add sales tax.

## EXCLUSIVE OFFER

Select one of these items FREE when placing an order for any sawblade or dado from this ad.

You must mention you saw this ad in *Fine Woodworking* magazine, when ordering. Hurry! This special offer is limited while supplies last on orders placed by 4-30-00.

16 oz. spray can non-toxic PEELS PLUS blade cleaner

**YOURS FREE!**



## Unconditional Money-Back Guarantee

Use any of these blades for a month. If you are not completely satisfied, return the blade for a complete refund. No other blade company will make that kind of guarantee—because there's no other blade like a Forrest blade!

WE RECOMMEND OUR FACTORY SHARPENING as some local sharpening creates problems with MICRO-CHIPPED EDGES reducing blade life and cutting quality. 2-4 DAYS ON THESE AND ALL MAKES OF FLAT FACE AND CONCAVE CARBIDE TIP SAWS. Ship via UPS - typical 10 x 40T \$17.00, 60T \$19.00. Add return UPS \$6.00, \$1.00 each additional blade.



**FORREST MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.**  
DEALER INQUIRIES WELCOME

457 River Road, Clifton, NJ 07014 • Phone 800/733-7111 • In NJ, Call 973/473-5236 • Fax 973/471-3333

WESTERN CANADA: Call European Sharpening 403/287-0850 • Fax: 403/287-1622

CANADA SALES: Call CMR - Ron Collier, 3644 Schumann Rd., Bay City, MI 48706 • Phone: 800/229-4814 • Fax: 517/684-0402

**SEE OUR INTERNET STORE AT:**  
woodmall.com OR  
stores.yahoo.com/forrestman

# Gluing and Clamping Strategies

Lots of tape, lots of cauls and lots of clamps  
make glue-ups easy

BY LON SCHLEINING

If you don't have complete confidence in your gluing systems, perhaps it's time to take a closer look at them. When I ask a group of woodworkers how many trust their glue-ups completely, very few hands pop up. Personally, I couldn't sleep if my gluing techniques were suspect. When my stairbuilding shop is really cranking, it is not unusual to go through 10 gal. or 12 gal. of glue in a year. That's not much by some standards, but it represents a fair amount of gluing for a three- or four-person shop. We've developed systems for gluing that are reliable and fast, not so much because we set out to do so, but because we have to have reliable glue joints so that we can sleep at night.

In this article I'll outline a few common gluing situations a woodworker has to tackle and provide a few tips that, hopefully, even the seasoned woodworker can use.

## It's easy to test your gluing system

If a glue joint fails, the first suspect is the glue itself. But the glue is seldom the real problem. Modern glues are so effective as to be nearly foolproof. More often than not, operator error is the problem, not the glue.

You can easily test both the glue and



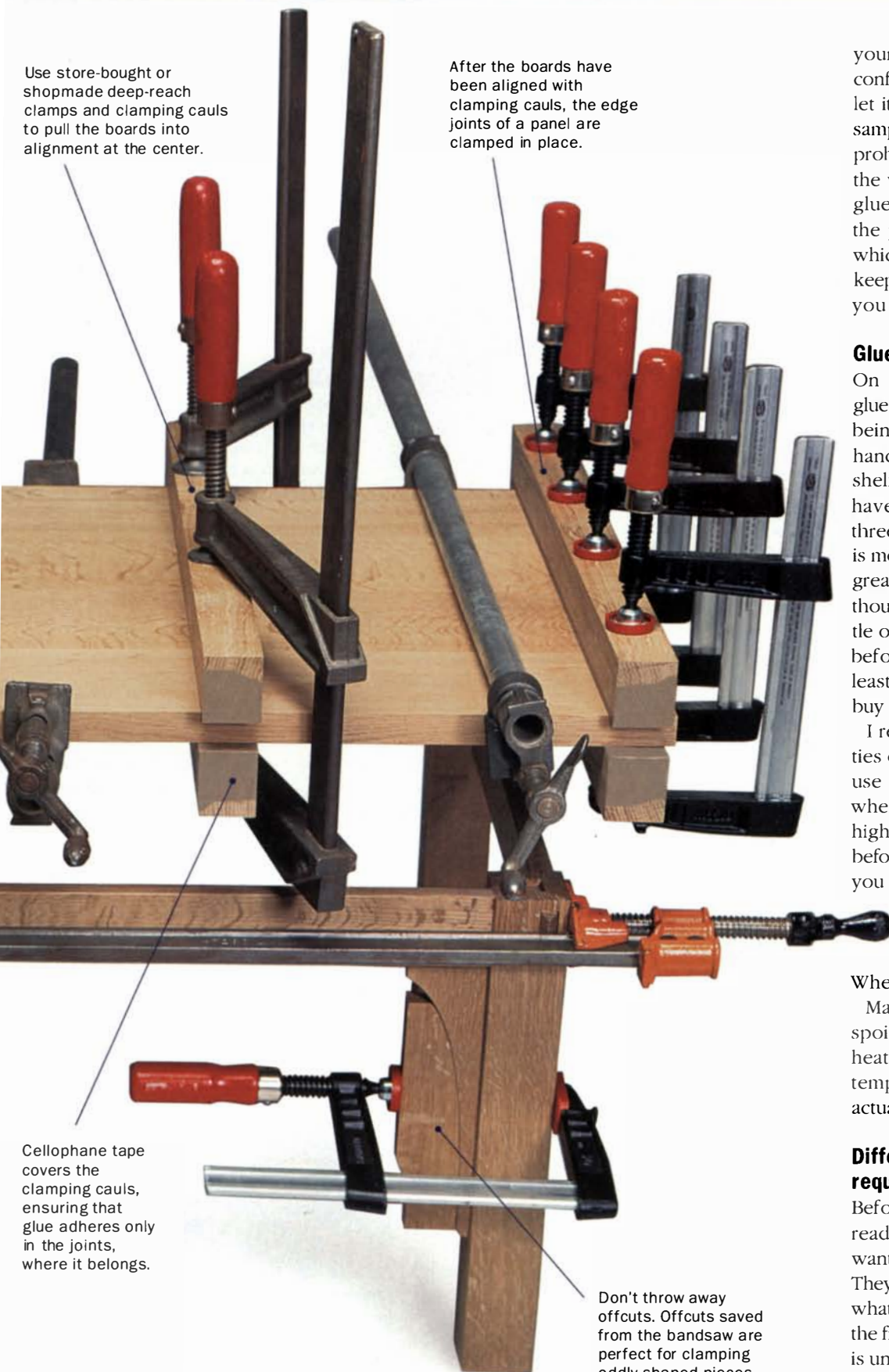
### Before you squeeze

- Make sure the glue you're using is fresh.
- Cut all of your cauls to the right length.
- Cover the cauls and clamping pads with cellophane tape.
- Set clamps to approximate length.
- For easy clamp access, set up blocks to elevate the assembly.
- Keep a ruler nearby so you can check to see that the assembly goes together squarely.
- Be sure that clamps are plentiful and within reach.
- Do a full dry-run of the glue-up to eliminate surprises.

When gluing up square legs or forming multisided tubes, packing tape wrapped around the pieces helps pull the joints closed.

Use store-bought or shopmade deep-reach clamps and clamping cauls to pull the boards into alignment at the center.

After the boards have been aligned with clamping cauls, the edge joints of a panel are clamped in place.



Cellophane tape covers the clamping cauls, ensuring that glue adheres only in the joints, where it belongs.

Don't throw away offcuts. Offcuts saved from the bandsaw are perfect for clamping oddly shaped pieces.

your gluing system to increase your confidence. Simply glue up a sample, let it cure, then break it apart. If the sample breaks at the joint, you have a problem with the glue or the joint. If the wood does not break along the glueline, the test demonstrates that the joint is stronger than the wood, which is what you want. If necessary, keep modifying your system until you achieve satisfactory results.

### Glue has a limited shelf life

On those rare occasions when the glue itself fails, either the type of glue being used is unsuitable for the job at hand or the glue has exceeded its shelf life. Remember, some glues have a very short shelf life—as little as three months in some cases. One year is more common, although it varies a great deal. One thing is certain, though: If you are still using that bottle of glue you got from Uncle Harry before he died a few years back, it's at least suspect. Do yourself a favor and buy a new batch.

I recommend buying small quantities of glue, as much as you'll likely use in a few months, from a place where the turnover of merchandise is high. That way, you'll run out of glue before it gets a chance to spoil. When you bring home a new bottle, write the date on the bottle with a felt-tipped marker. Relatively speaking, glue is cheap. When it gets old, throw it away.

Many glues are susceptible to spoilage from freezing or excessive heat. It's important to keep track of temperature for both storage and actual gluing.

### Different operations require different types of glue

Before you even buy a bottle of glue, read the label. Glue manufacturers want your glue-ups to be successful. They make a point to tell you exactly what you need to know right there in the fine print. If the label says the glue is unsuitable for use around moisture or under stress, no doubt they mean

just that. Lamination bending, for example, puts the glue joint under constant stress. Yellow glue, tough but flexible, is unsuitable. Epoxy or plastic resin is a better choice.

Some glues, the polyurethanes for example, like dampness, but most glues do not. Another reason to read the label and do some testing.

### Well-fitted joints are a must

Clean, dry, well-fitted and porous edges glue well. If the mating pieces do not fit well enough without clamping pressure, perhaps the work is not yet ready for gluing. Joints ought to fit naturally without being forced by oversized clamps. If you have to force the joint together, you're asking a lot of your glue to keep it that way once the clamps are released.

Porous edges allow the glue to ooze into the pores and strengthen the joint. If you make a very slow pass over a dull jointer, chances are you'll pound the fibers of wood together instead of cleanly slicing them. This forms a glazed, nonporous surface that won't be suitable for gluing.

### Cauls and dry-fitting are the keys to success

Moving too slowly may well be the most common cause of glue failure. Very quickly—especially in warm, dry weather—the surface of fresh glue will form a skin, a sort of blister. This blister prevents liquid glue from adhering to the other surface. If the glue skins over before the two mating pieces come together, you might as well call it a day. Sure, you can scrape off all of that excess glue, but the residual glue will seal the surface. The edges will need to be remilled, not just cleaned.

One sure way to reduce the time it takes to get something clamped up is to practice. Especially if the gluing operation is complex or large, a rehearsal helps ensure that you have all of the clamps you need and that all of the little blocks and pieces of masking tape are at hand. It's a good idea to dry-fit and clamp up the project entirely, as if you had spread the glue already, to make sure one last time that the pieces actually go together.

Keep in mind that the addition of glue

## EDGE-GLUING



**Raising the panel allows room for clamps.** With glue and clamps at hand, begin by laying cauls on blocks so that it's easy to keep boards flat and in place.

**Tape is the Teflon of glue-ups.** Cellophane tape prevents the cauls from sticking to the glue joint and also provides a slick surface so that the pieces can slide together easily once pressure is applied to the cauls.

**W**hen woodworkers edge-glug boards, it's common to see them relying on clamps not only to squeeze the joint together but also to keep the boards in alignment. These two jobs are easier if they are done separately. Shop-built clamping cauls align the boards first. Then the clamps squeeze them together.

Clamping cauls are nothing more than straight, surfaced clamping blocks covered on one side with cellophane tape. Clamping the cauls from above and below pulls boards precisely flat, even if they are warped or cupped. The cauls also will hold the boards flat as they are squeezed together, even if their edges aren't milled perfectly square.

I make cauls from 8/4 square hardwood. Make sure they are

## FACE-GLUING

**N**othing is more frustrating than having the boards you're trying to clamp together move around when the clamps are applied. You have to unclamp the whole mess to move them back again, and by that time they're usually stuck in place. Enter our old friend, the clamping caul.

Cauls for face-gluing work just as well as they do for edge-gluing, making the job much quicker and easier. For face-gluing you need only small blocks covered with cellophane tape. First use cauls to control the alignment, then apply pressure to the glue joint. It's that simple.



**Clamping face-glued joint with cauls.** First, use cauls to keep pieces aligned, then squeeze the joint together. Glue flows more easily when you start at one end and work toward the other.



**Tape and scrap make simple and effective deep-reach clamps.** Tape a spacer between two stout scrap boards and slide the assembly over the cauls. Pressure applied near the edge is transferred to the middle of the panel.



**Cauls keep edge joints aligned.** As the cauls are clamped together, the boards are pulled into perfect alignment. After the cauls have been firmly clamped in place, use bar clamps to pull the joints together.



**Bar clamps squeeze the joints together.** Apply just enough pressure to close the joints—too much pressure will force glue out. Keep the bar clamps above the surface because black marks will appear everywhere the clamps touch the wet glue.

straight, then apply cellophane tape to one side. The tape prevents the cauls from adhering to the project and allows the gluing pieces to slide together once they're under control. Start by putting the lower cauls on blocks so you can get access to them for clamps. Then spread glue on the edges, place the boards into position and begin clamping the cauls down securely.

Start by clamping the caul in the center of the panel. Deep-reach clamps are great to have, but they're expensive. I find that a shop-built version works just as well. Just tape a few scraps of wood into a U shape and slide the assembly over the cauls (see the left photo above). With this setup you can easily clamp the center of even a 4-ft. panel. After clamping the center cauls,

move toward the ends. Feel the alignment of the edges along the joints. Add a new set of cauls any place one board is above another. Once the assembly is perfectly flat, use bar clamps to squeeze the joints together. The boards slide between the cellophane-covered cauls with no trouble.

Because the joints fit very nicely, it takes only a little pressure—just enough to make contact between the two boards. Too much pressure forces the glue out of the joint.

If your test glue-up indicates that a joint is stronger than the surrounding wood already, it's hard to justify using something to strengthen it further. When you use cauls during a glue-up, most reasons for using dowels, biscuits or splines go out the window.

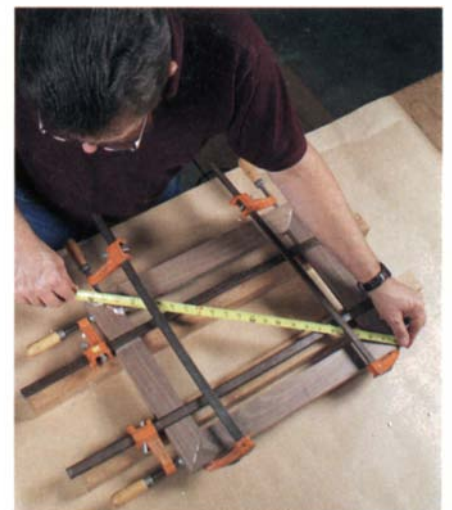
## MITERED FRAMES

**P**icture frames and mitered boxes—both basically end-grain glue joints—present some of the biggest challenges for gluing and clamping. This is the perfect time for biscuit joinery; and the more biscuits you use, the better. Although clamping is tricky, I prefer plain, old bar or pipe clamps over the various gizmos on the market for clamping picture frames.

Glue up all four corners, keeping the pieces in alignment as much as possible. Set a bar clamp across each corner as close to the center of the joint as possible. Keeping the frame down on a flat surface, apply pressure very gradually to one clamp at a time, squeezing the joint into alignment as you go, back and forth until the pressure is even and the joints are aligned. Remember that light pressure is usually sufficient. Tighten just enough to keep the joint together, but stop before forcing all of the glue out of the joints.



**Two biscuits make a stronger joint.** Biscuits provide ample gluing surface and keep the pieces aligned. Once clamps go on, check the diagonals to make sure everything is square.



## DOVETAIL AND BOX JOINTS

in the joints will change the operation a great deal. It lubricates the pieces just enough for them to move around when you don't want them to. Then the glue begins to set up and grab the pieces, holding them in place just when you want them to move. But these problems are easily solved. The key for almost every gluing situation is to use clamping cauls. Simply put, clamping cauls hold boards in alignment while other clamps close up the joints.

**Clamping time**—The amount of time a project has to remain clamped up depends on temperature, humidity and the complexity of the project. It's important to follow the directions on the label of the glue you're using. If the label says clamping time is an hour, give

**TIP**  
PVC pipe cut into narrow sections works like mini spring clamps. The pressure varies by the diameter of the pipe, its thickness and the width of the section you cut off.



it an hour. If the label says overnight, wait until the next morning to remove the clamps.

Remember that the temperature requirements are critical. If the label says the minimum is 50°F, that means the air, the glue and the material itself must be at least that warm. It also means that the materials must stay that temperature for the duration of the curing time. It's worth noting that a simple light bulb inside a small, insulated enclosure will keep the contents quite warm, even if the rest of the shop is cold.

**Cleanup**—Gluing over butcher paper or newspaper certainly saves you from having to do a great deal of cleaning up. Wearing vinyl gloves not only keeps hands clean but also helps you avoid contact with toxic chemicals.

With most of the common polyvinyl acetate (PVA) glues, under normal conditions, a project usually has to stay in the clamps about an hour. I have been accused of using too much glue, but

**W**hen gluing a box or drawer together, all four corners typically have to go together at the same time. This might be as simple as a small drawer or as complex as a chest carcass, but the processes are the same.

Nowhere is a rehearsal more important than with a box joint or dovetail glue-up. There is no time to fuss with cutting clamping cauls when the glue is beginning to set up. This is one instance when it's nice to have an extra set of hands.

Cauls set just back from the joint on all four corners provide a clamping surface but still allow the joint to move together without interference. The cauls also help spread the clamping pressure evenly.

Apply glue to all of the surfaces and immediately press each corner together. Once all four sides are together and the joints have been hand-fit as much as possible, set the cauls in place and begin to apply light clamping pressure. As soon

as the joint comes into contact, that's enough pressure. It's entirely possible to bend and permanently distort the sides of the box by applying too much clamping pressure.

The box needs to be glued up on a flat surface. To be sure there's no twist in the box, see if it rocks. If it does rock, use clamps to apply downward pressure on the high sides until you bring it back into alignment.

To check that the box is square, and while the glue is still soft, measure diagonally across the corners. If the box is square, the measurements should be the same. If it's slightly out of square, a single bar clamp, placed diagonally, will bring it square. Checking the squareness by measuring the diagonals is usually preferable to using a square because it's faster and more accurate, especially if excessive clamping pressure has pulled a curve into the sides of the box.



**Masking tape keeps your project clean.** Apply glue sparingly to the joint. With clamps handy and everything in place, apply masking tape along the inside of the joint. The tape eliminates the need to clean excess glue out of the inside of the box.

**Clamping cauls spread the pressure.** Dovetail and box joints are squeezed together from both directions, so make sure the cauls don't cover the joint. Cauls placed right next to the joint evenly distribute the pressure of the clamps.





## MITERED BOXES OF ANY SIZE



**Packing tape binds the box.** Stranded tape with imbedded fiber has tremendous strength. Strips of tape are laid on the face side of the box, keeping everything in place.



**Mitered parts roll up to form a box.** After the pieces have been turned over, glue is spread in the miters, and the box is rolled up.



**Shopmade blocks allow opposing clamps.** Shop-built clamp blocks provide a perpendicular pad for the clamps. As opposing clamps are tightened, the box is pulled square.

Mitered boxes are quite easy to glue up by using shop-built blocks, stranded packing tape and a bit of patience. Lay the four pieces faceup along the bench, and run the tape every few inches across the faces of the boards. Turn the assembly over, spread glue in the joints and roll it up like a tool pouch. It sounds simple, and it is.

To ensure that the box remains square, clamp the box diagonally with the help of clamping blocks. The blocks are made of 2x2 stock and have a mitered groove on one side (see the right photo above). By placing the clamps opposite each other, you can

easily check along the box with a square to see that everything is in place. It's easy to make adjustments accordingly.

Packing tape makes clamping even a complex shape like an octagon very straightforward. Start with the pieces faceup on the bench. Using the same technique as the mitered box, apply the tape across the faces every few inches, leaving an overlap to pull the last joint together.

Turn the assembly over, spread glue and roll it up, pulling the tape ends tight. Check to make sure the distance between faces is even all around so the assembly will be square and consistent.

## MORTISE-AND-TENON DOORS



**A little glue goes a long way.** Apply glue only deep into the mortise and on the end of the tenon to keep squeeze-out to a minimum.

More often than not, well-fitted mortise-and-tenon joints align themselves, but you still have to keep everything square and flat. The center panels, if solid wood, need to float so they can expand and contract freely. For  $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. panels, little rubber pellets, called space balls, can be placed in the dados that accept the panel. These space balls keep the panel centered and securely held. On wider panels I trim pieces of cork to fit in the groove and never apply glue to the panel.

Frame-and-panel doors using cope-and-stick joints usually are glued up without dowels. Considering the amount of use a door might get, it's worth placing a couple of dowels in the corners. The dowels should fit loosely in the holes to allow a bit of room for glue and expansion.

If the cope-and-stick joint is not-quite perfect, cauls are an easy way to keep the pieces flat and aligned. It's important to make sure the door is flat and square, adjusting it as you would a box.

### Let the panels float



Cork cushions keep the panel centered but allow it to expand and contract. No glue is applied to the floating panel. Use a utility knife to cut cork slightly oversized. Space balls—perfect for  $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. dados—are hard rubber pellets designed to do the same job as cork (available from louis and company: 800-422-4389).

because scraping glue before it hardens is so simply done, I see no need to skimp on glue.

Along a glueline, I want to see at least a thin bead of glue. When the glue has set up in the joints and the clamps are removed, the excess glue should still be soft and pliable. This is the perfect time to remove the excess with a scraper. I never wipe up glue with a wet rag, because the added water will raise the grain and the finished surface will be uneven.

My favorite glue-scraping tool is a small hook scraper, available in the paint section of almost any paint or hardware store. With a good edge on it, a small hook scraper will remove excess glue while it's still soft, thus saving hours of sanding. If you wait until the glue has hardened to scrape off the excess, it is very likely, especially with

**TIP**  
Use inner-tube strips to hold laminae together for bending. The strips hold firmly yet allow the bundle to flex as it bends.



softer woods like mahogany, that you'll tear chunks out of the surface.

I do my best to use a simple and quick system for gluing. Once the glue has been spread, I use every trick I know to speed it along. I always follow the manufacturer's instructions to the letter. When in doubt, I call the manufacturer on the phone. Manufacturers have always seemed more than happy to discuss individual situations. I have a habit of testing my glue joints constantly. If I trim a glue-up to length, I take the scrap piece and snap it over the corner of the bench to make sure the joint is reliable. I am always happiest when it breaks 1/2 in. away from the glueline. Your confidence builds with every test. If you adopt this habit, you'll soon be confident in the boards you glue together. You'll sleep better, too. □

Lon Schleining builds custom stairs in Long Beach, Calif.

## COOPERED PANELS



**A simple form keeps the curve uniform.** Nowhere is the caul system more useful than with gluing up a coopered panel. By making a female caul, the staves are kept in alignment. Holes in the form's ribs serve as clamp pockets. A little tape keeps the staves from being glued to the form.

**A** simple form for clamping curved shapes is easy to make and extends the clamping-caul principle to include shapes that are not flat. The idea is the same.

With this form, the alignment of the staves is easy. The form sits flat on bench blocks to make sure there is no twist. Use cellophane tape to prevent the form from being glued to the project and to allow the staves to slide. Drill holes in the ribs to serve as clamp pockets for the clamps on each side.

Align the pieces, in the case of a coopered door or chest lid. Lay all of the staves in the curve of the form. Then, and only then, clamp the staves together to force the glue joints to close up. Gently apply pressure to one clamp at a time until the joints close.

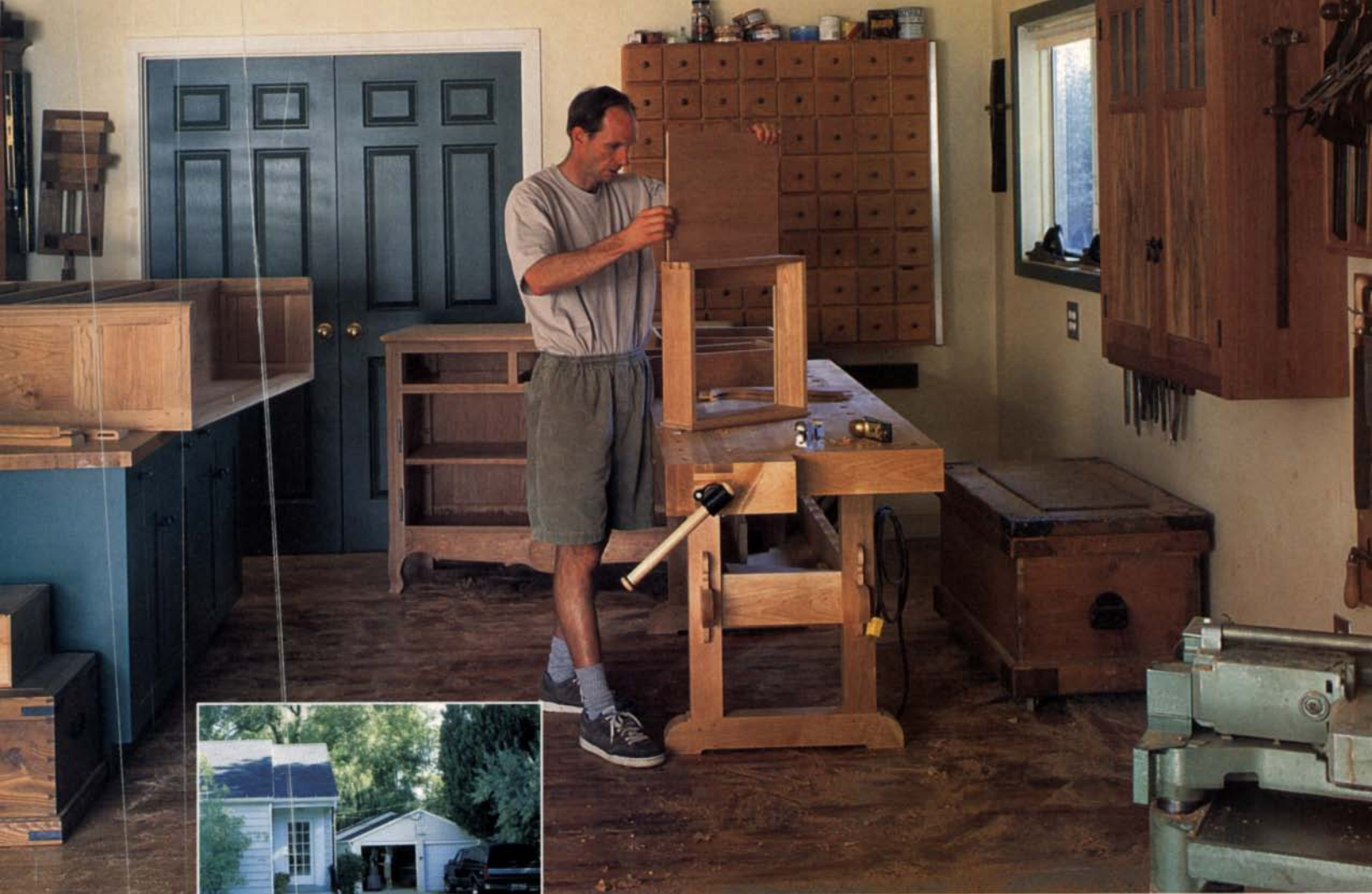


**Clamp pressure must be distributed evenly.** Clamps grab onto the pockets drilled into the form's ribs, allowing the author to apply even pressure with opposing clamps.



**Hook scraper removes excess glue.** A hook scraper, filed razor sharp, quickly removes excess glue once it has blistered over but before it hardens.

# Turning a Parking Place into a Great Shop Space



Expansion and a thoughtful layout make an excellent professional workshop from a two-car garage

BY CHRIS GOCHNOUR

When my wife and I bought our house 15 years ago, I set up my first real shop in the freestanding two-car garage. Built in the 1940s, the garage was 18 ft. by 20 ft., with a concrete slab and wood siding. I entered and exited through the overhead garage doors, attempted to heat the space with electric radiators and worked with low ceilings, no insulation, a lot of airborne dust and very little natural light. I loved it. At least for a while. As I acquired more tools and machines, the space quickly became crowded. In the mean time, I had quit my job and begun making furniture full time. When I took that step, I realized I needed to retrofit the shop completely. I took the opportunity not just to enlarge the space but to revamp the layout using all that I'd learned about the way I work.

Several core decisions have made my shop a pleasant and effi-

## A WELL-DESIGNED SHOP



The author expanded a typical two-car garage shop, doubling the space by adding on at the back. As he rebuilt and rearranged the shop, he based his decisions on aesthetics as well as efficiency, creating a space that is a pleasure to work in.

Scissors trusses create vaulted ceiling.

cient place to work. Most important, I divided the shop's layout according to the three main activities of my work—machine work, bench work and finishing. Then, within those three areas, I arranged the machines and tools to reflect the flow of work while keeping the layout as fluid as possible so that it could be changed to accommodate different projects. To store hand tools, hardware and accessories for various machines, I built a number of smaller cabinets rather than several large ones. This enabled me to place tools and equipment right where they are most often used. I also put a lot of effort into aesthetic improvements. For instance, I took the time to build handsome cabinets for tool storage instead of whacking them together from scrap.

Most of the ideas I've built my shop around can be adapted to any workspace. Even so, I don't expect them all to suit yours, because designing a personal workshop is just that—personal. The best design is the one that responds directly to the way you work. But I've put a lot of effort into

the slow process of evolving my shop, and I hope you'll find some tips here that help.

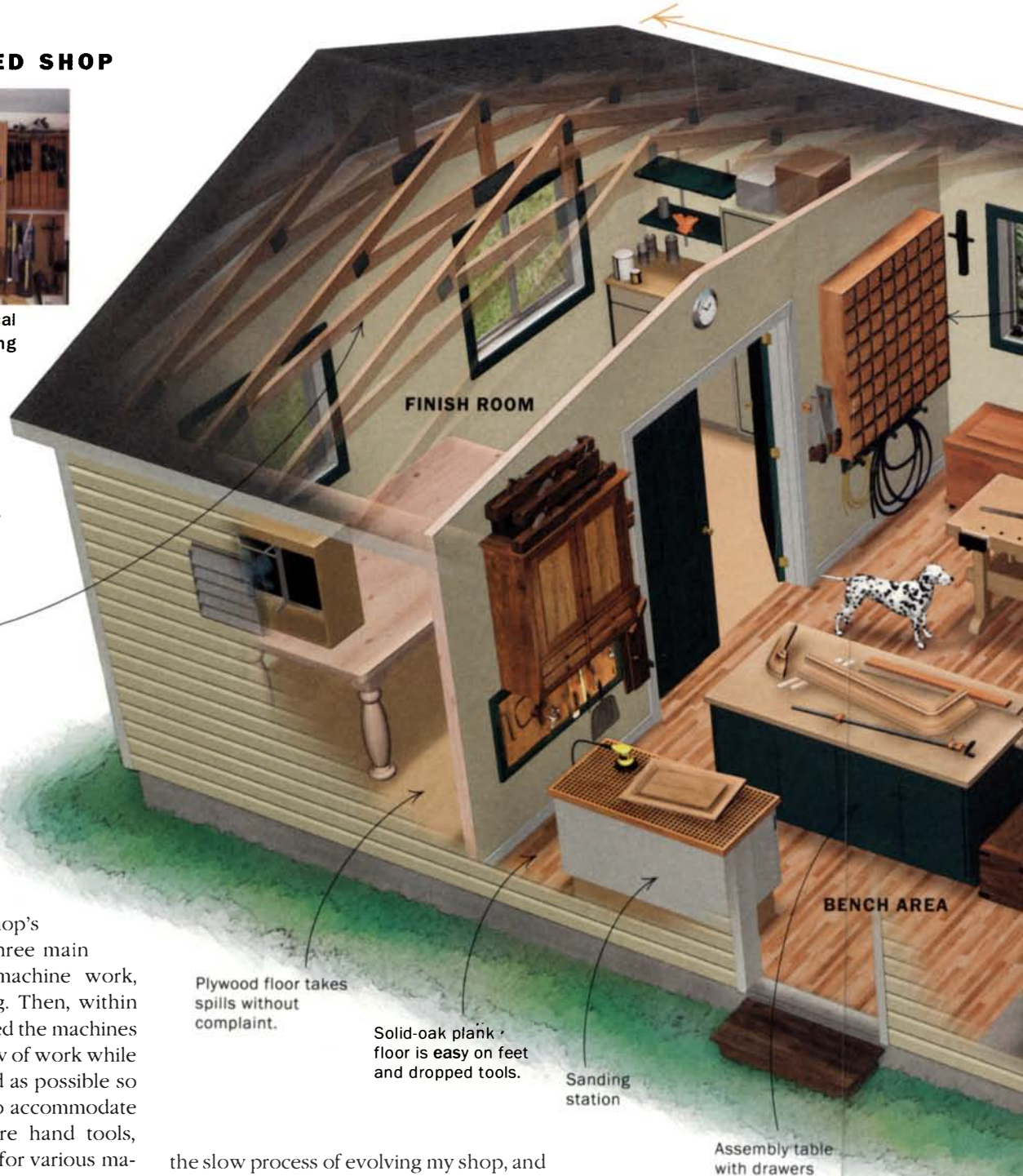
### Enlarging my garage

Because the lot is small and my budget was modest, it made sense to enlarge the garage rather than to put up a separate shop building. I started the renovation by making my best decision first: I chose not to tackle the whole job myself. As a furniture maker, I may be familiar with a carpenter's tools, but that doesn't make me a carpenter. So I hired a contractor friend and signed myself up as a laborer.

The roof was the key to the renovation. We replaced the old rafters and collar ties

with scissors trusses, and where I used to have a flat 8-ft. ceiling, I suddenly had a ceiling that is 8 ft. at the side walls and rises to 11 ft. at the center. Hallelujah.

Along with a higher ceiling, I brought far better lighting to the renovated shop. The first improvement came with installing two large windows in the bench area. The added natural light throughout the shop helps with color matching and simply makes me feel better. In addition, instead of reinstalling the suspended fluorescent



Plywood floor takes spills without complaint.

Solid-oak plank floor is easy on feet and dropped tools.

Sanding station

Assembly table with drawers

**ADDITION**

64-drawer chest for hardware

Small cabinets keep tools near where they are used.

Dust collector's noise and mess are isolated in an attached shed.

Two dust hoses shared between jointer, planer and tablesaw.

**ORIGINAL BUILDING**

**MACHINE AREA**

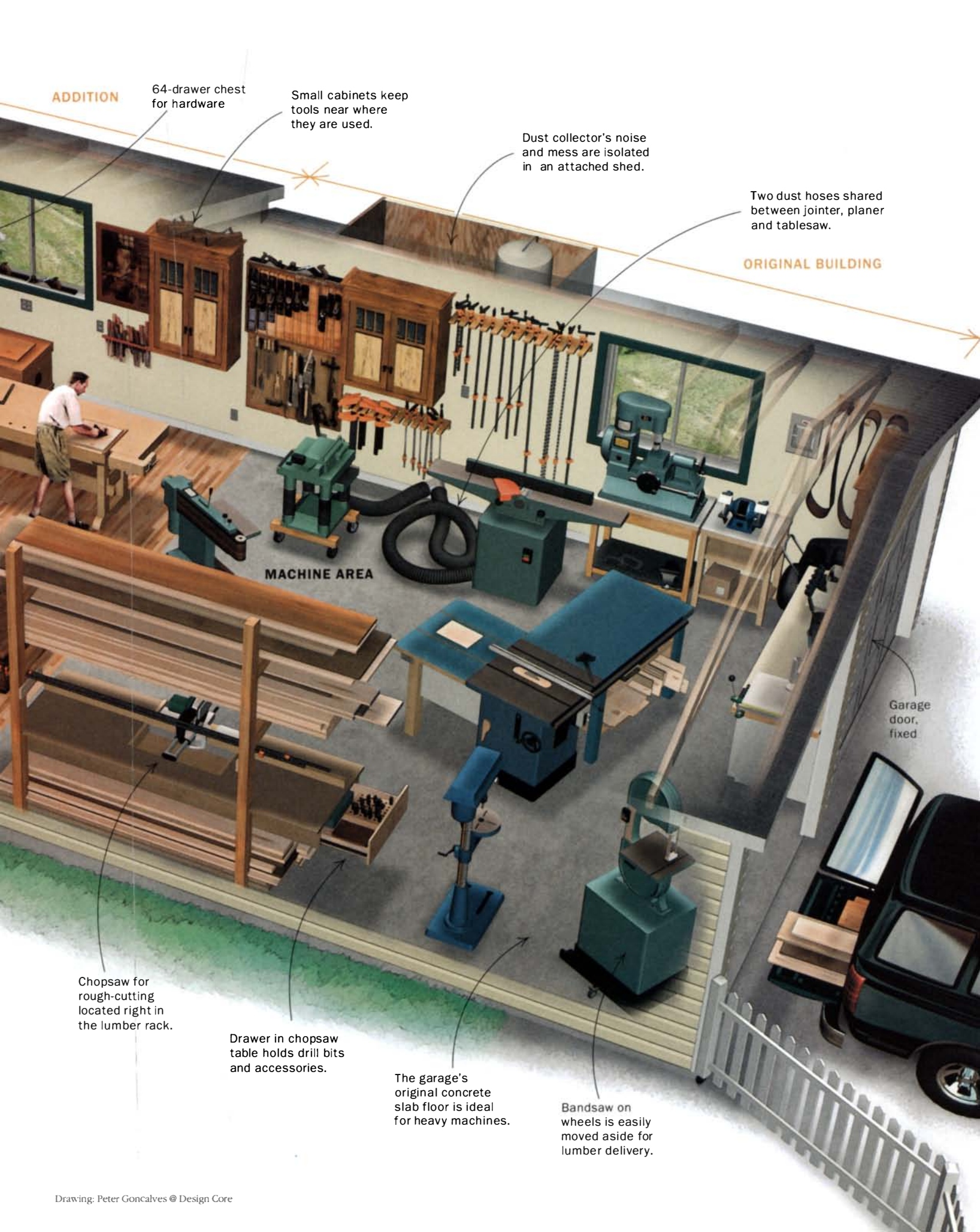
Garage door, fixed

Chopsaw for rough-cutting located right in the lumber rack.

Drawer in chopsaw table holds drill bits and accessories.

The garage's original concrete slab floor is ideal for heavy machines.

Bandsaw on wheels is easily moved aside for lumber delivery.



**The tablesaw is king.** In the machine area, the tablesaw stands fixed near the center, and the other machines are arranged around it.



lights I had before, I recessed some fluorescent fixtures in the ceiling and covered them with Lexan. This was a miraculous improvement—it looked much better, provided even illumination and meant there'd be no more whacking of dust-laden light fixtures with the end of a board.

To help retain the heat (and the noise), I added better wall insulation and replaced the old garage doors with insulated metal ones. I installed a basic dust-collection system, placing the collector outside in a small shed attached to the building, which reduces the noise and makes it less messy to empty. I supplemented the dust collector with a ceiling-mounted dust filter.

In the end, the only parts of the original shop that were preserved were the concrete slab floor and the front and side walls. The whole job took about seven weeks and cost about \$13,000. Although I can't claim that the outlay was painless, in most ways the renovation was extremely low-impact. Even though the headroom had increased dramatically and the floor space had doubled to 720 sq. ft., if you were looking at the garage from the street, you'd never guess that anything had changed.

### Machine area

The space once occupied by automobiles became my machine area. It was in the right place in terms of workflow—just inside the overhead doors—and it had a good floor for heavy machines: the garage's original concrete slab.

All of my work starts with rough lumber,

so I built my lumber rack near the one still-operable garage door, along the side wall. When I buy lumber, I back my truck up to the garage door and unload the wood directly onto the rack. The rack I made has a pair of vertical posts bolted to the wall and support arms cantilevered from the posts. This provides unobstructed access to the wood and takes up the least possible space in the shop.

I use a chopsaw for rough-cutting lumber to length, and I wanted it right where the lumber was. So I cleared out a shelf of lumber and used the same cantilevered support system to hang a chopsaw table. I built the table using torsion-box construction and attached the chopsaw to a small, removable section at the middle of the table. When I need the saw on an installation, I simply unscrew two bolts and lift the saw and its small platform out of the table.

In arranging the major machines, I started by placing the tablesaw, with its huge demands for infeed, outfeed and side support, in the center of the machine space. All of the other machines were placed on the periphery, arranged to work in harmony with the tablesaw.

Whenever feasible, I put my machines on wheels. Flexibility in the layout of a small shop is imperative, and wheels help tremendously with this. I have all of my major standing machines on wheels except for my tablesaw and jointer.

The jointer and planer are near the tablesaw, which makes sense from the perspective of workflow, and it also helps with

dust collection. Arranged this way, these three primary generators of dust can share the two hoses that I have hooked up to my dust collector. In my old shop, I had ceiling-mounted PVC pipe running to every machine. I found it to be overkill, and it produced enough static electricity to keep my hair standing on end much of the time. These days I simply have flexible hose running on the floor. It may be a slight nuisance to step over, but it works fine, is a more adaptable system and doesn't mess with my hair.

The tablesaw took precedence not only in laying out the machine area but also in my tool budget. My theory of machine purchases is this: For machines I use most heavily and rely on most for precision work—tablesaw, jointer, planer, mortiser, pin-router—I cough up the money for high-quality, heavy-duty equipment. For more peripheral machines, where accuracy is less critical—edge sander, grinder, dust collector—I tend toward Taiwanese knock-offs.

### Bench area

The two main work surfaces in my bench area summarize the work I do there. One is a traditional cabinetmaker's bench, and the other is a broad assembly table. Having the two in proximity—they are parallel and stand about 6 ft. apart—is extremely functional. Both are movable (with some effort), and I can change their locations depending on what I am building.

Whereas the cabinetmaker's bench is

open underneath, the assembly table is packed solid: I utilized the large space beneath the top by filling it with cabinets and heavy-duty drawers. These hold all of my handheld power tools and their accessories and much hardware. This way, the tools are stored within arm's length of where they are used. The drawers are also easily reached from the workbench. The assembly table has several outlets built in under the top, and I added one to the workbench as well.

The cabinetmaker's bench is fairly traditional, but I did make a few departures. One was to leave out a tool trough in favor of a larger work surface. I built in a tail vise, which is invaluable, but in place of a traditional shoulder vise I opted for a commercial metal side vise. I find a shoulder vise to be a bit of an impediment, and these metal vises are hard to beat with their convenient quick release, great holding power and easy installation.

Building my own bench meant I could design it for just the way I work. Working with handplanes a lot, as I do, a good, solid bench is almost as important as a sharp blade. You want all of your energy transferred into the workpiece and the cutting action—not into a rickety bench that racks and wobbles with every stroke.

For tools used primarily at the workbench, I built shallow, two-door cabinets and hung them on the wall by the bench. They store chisels, handplanes, scrapers, spokeshaves and other supplies. Storing tools and supplies behind doors helps with dust problems, and keeping the cabinets shallow makes for simpler storage and easier retrieval of the tools.

My approach in building storage cabinets is a little different from some. Instead of building shop furniture quickly and cheaply, I put real effort into building it. If I can save some labor or money, I do—two of the tool cabinets were extras from custom kitchens I built. But considering how much time I spend in my shop, it makes sense to please myself with the environment there. And the effort is not lost on clients who visit my shop. The cabinets demonstrate the type of work I do and the pride I take in my work and my tools.

My bench area has a third table, where I do most of my sanding. I may be a handplane fanatic, but I am practical enough to know that sanding is a reality. When I must sand, I want it to be as painless as possible.

Thus, I built a dedicated sanding station. It is essentially a big box with a perforated top surface and a couple of vacuum motors below: One vacuum motor pulls the sanding dust down through a series of furnace filters; the other works as a hold-down system to keep the workpiece in place without clamps. The thing works so well that I don't need a dust mask, even when sanding with aggressive paper. I placed the station next to a window so that my time spent sanding is enriched by the changes of the seasons in my backyard. I still don't love sanding, but this device has certainly taken the sting out of it.

I put a hardwood floor in the bench area. The wood floor is easier on my feet and back and more forgiving if I drop a tool. Better yet, the wood is honestly more inspiring to work on. I've even draped off a wall and used the bench area as a place to photograph my work.

### Finish room

I decided to separate the finish area from the rest of the shop, and I'm glad I did. Having it walled off keeps the dust in the workshop and the fumes in the finish room. I kept the ceilings high and installed large double doors that lead to the bench area. Even though the floor space in the finish room is fairly limited, the high ceilings and wide doorway make it easy to move even dining tables and tall case pieces in and out. It is also nice to be able



**The importance of aesthetics.** In building his storage cabinets, shop furniture and cabinetmaker's bench, the author took the time to make things that would be visually pleasing as well as functional.



**Lumber and a place to cut it.** A system of cantilevered arms provides easy-access lumber storage as well as support for a chop saw table designed for rough-cutting planks.

to close the doors and not see the oversprayed walls and the clutter in there.

Perhaps as important as anything else in a finish room is the lighting. Two large windows bring in natural light. The natural light helps in matching color when mixing stains and in seeing just how a coat of lacquer is laying down. And the windows, in combination with the door and an explosion-proof fan, provide good ventilation. I also have fluorescent lights recessed in the ceiling. To make them explosion-proof, I put the lights behind sheets of Lexan that are sealed at the perimeter with a rubber gasket. I also ran the switch to the bench area. To provide raking light for bringing out the details of a finish, I use a couple of portable halogen spotlights.

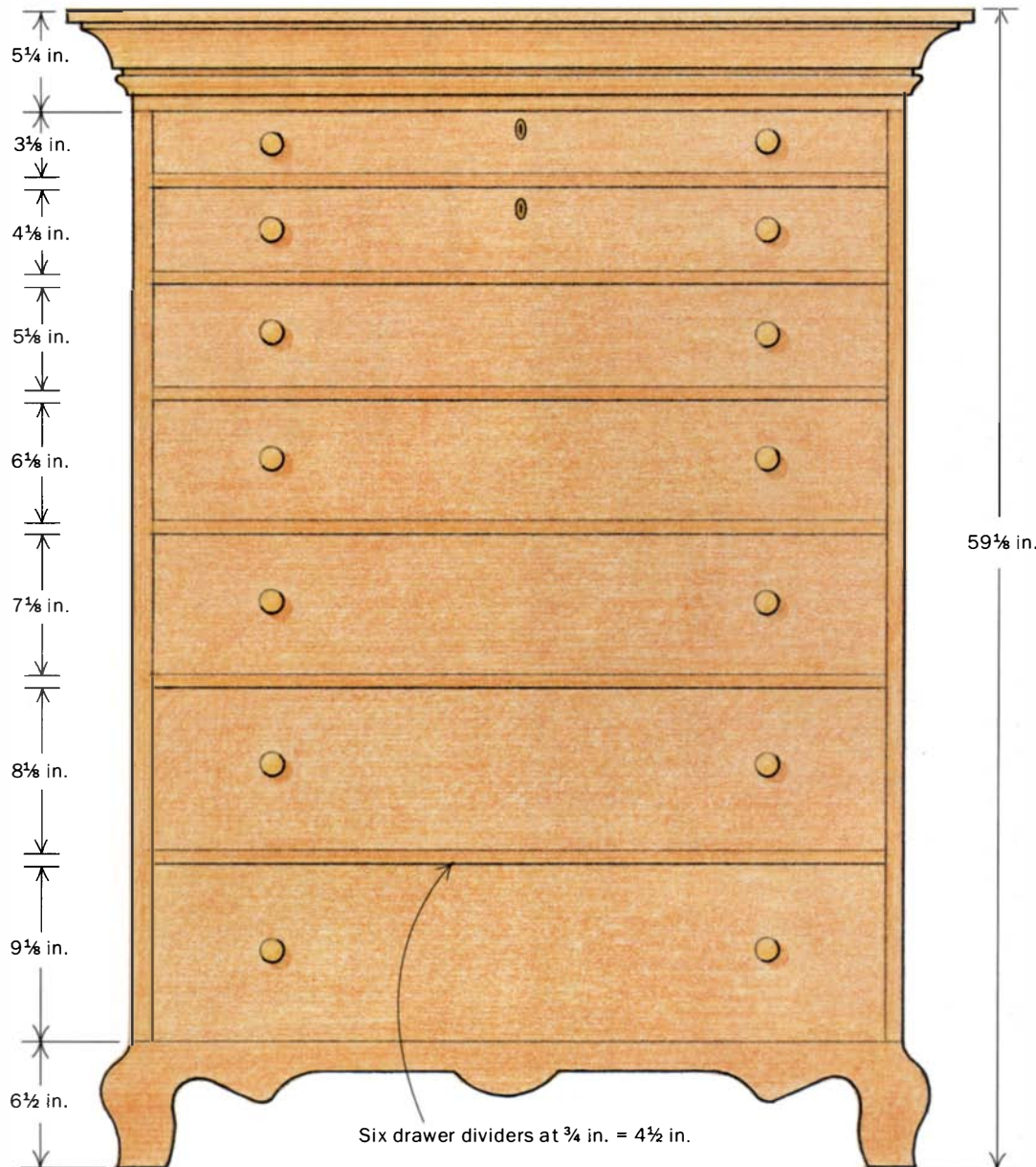
The floor in my finish room is just plywood. That way I don't feel so bad about lacquer overspray or stray splashes of pigments and stains. I keep all of my supplies in a metal cabinet and have a small work area for pouring and mixing finishes.

It has been six years now since I renovated the shop. With the added space, functional layout and aesthetically pleasing surroundings, it's been a great place to make furniture. But the evolution continues. Future improvements include more windows, upgraded electrical service and, perhaps most important, a better place for my wife to park. □

Chris Gochmour makes custom furniture and cabinets in Salt Lake City, Utah.







## A CASE WITH AN ODD NUMBER OF DRAWERS

A case with an odd number of drawers has a middle drawer with an equal number of drawers above and below it. The method of determining the average drawer height is the same as for a case with an even number of drawers. The formulas for the example here—a seven-drawer chest with 1-in. graduations—can be used for any chest with an odd number of drawers.

To get the usable drawer height, subtract the dimensions of the top (5 1/4 in.), base (6 1/2 in.) and drawer dividers (6 × 3/4 in. = 4 1/2 in.) from the chest's total height (59 1/8 in.):

$$59\frac{1}{8} - (5\frac{1}{4} + 6\frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2}) = 42\frac{7}{8}$$

To find the average drawer height, divide the usable drawer height (42 7/8 in.) by the number of drawers (7):

$$42\frac{7}{8} \div 7 = 6\frac{1}{8}$$

For the drawers below the middle drawer, increase the drawer heights in 1-in. increments. For the drawers above the middle drawer, decrease the drawer heights in 1-in. increments.

be equal to the average drawer height. For the drawers above, simply subtract the amount by which you want the drawers to get smaller—the graduation interval—and add this amount to the drawers below the middle one.

When figuring drawer graduations for a case with an even number of drawers, you still need to find the amount of available drawer space and calculate the average drawer height. However, there will be no average-height drawer in the case when you are through; the average drawer height is just the starting point in your calculations. Determine an average drawer height, then add or subtract one-half the graduation increment to or from that average height to get started. Then proceed by full graduations.

Always remember that you have some flexibility. If needed, you can add a fraction of an inch to the top molding or remove a fraction of an inch from the base to make the numbers work in a simple way (making your life a lot easier) without compromising the

chest. You probably can't change the dimensions of your dividers, though, which have to be a specific size if they are to fit into dovetails or dados cut with a standard router bit.

The illustrations above are examples of how to graduate the drawers for a case with an even number of drawers and for one with an odd number of drawers. Here's an important thing to keep in mind: You can graduate drawers by any increment—1 in., 2 in., 3 in., even fractional inches—as long as you subtract the increment from the drawers above the average-height drawer and add the increment to the same number of drawers below the average-height drawer. The formulas can be used for any number of drawers, from the smallest case with three drawers to a floor-to-ceiling built-in with 16. □

*Chris Becksvoort is a contributing editor to Fine Woodworking. He is also the author of The Shaker Legacy (The Taunton Press, 1999).*



# Think Finish First

BY JEFF JEWITT

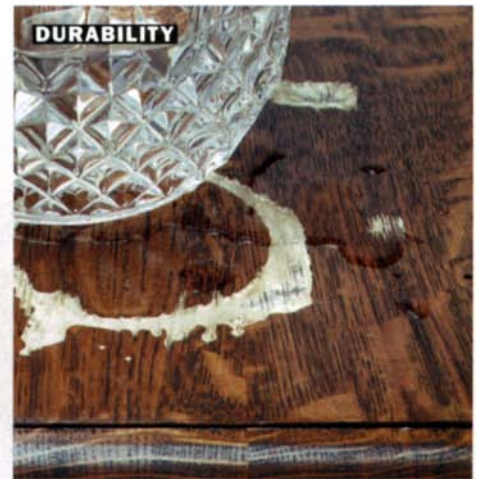
Before you start your next furniture project, consider a finish's appearance, its method of application and its durability

Finishing is one of the biggest bugaboos for many woodworkers. Though they remain undaunted by complex joinery or intricate and precise machining, scores of woodworkers still cringe at the thought of applying a finish to their work. “What’s the best finish for my project?” is a question I often hear. Being able to answer that question confidently and comfortably is an important hurdle to overcome.

Finishing products can be grouped into manageable categories, based on general working qualities and the degrees of protection they offer: waxes, oils, varnishes, shellacs, lacquers and water-based finishes. Different finishes offer varying degrees of protection, durability, ease of application, repairability and aesthetics. Unfortunately, no single finish excels in all of these categories—a finish that excels in one may fail in another—so in choosing a finish you must accept trade-offs.

As a professional refinisher, I routinely ask my customers a series of questions to determine the best finish for their furniture. I’ve modified my standard questions for this article and added a few as a checklist (facing page) for woodworkers trying to decide which finish to use on their own projects. Answers to these questions will point you toward the right finish to use on a given project, based on how well you need to protect the surface, how well the finish will hold up, how easy it is to apply and how you want it to look.

## TO DETERMINE THE BEST FINISH,



## ASK THE RIGHT QUESTIONS

- **How will the item be used? Will it be subjected to a lot of moisture, solvents, food, scrapes and dents?**

- **What is your skill level, and how big is your work area? Does it stay clean, and is it heated and dry?**

- **What do you want the wood to look like? Do you want an “in-the-wood” natural look or a thicker film finish that accentuates depth?**

- **Will you be filling the pores to attain a highly polished finish?**

- **Will you be rubbing out the finish to achieve a particular sheen?**

- **Do you want the finish to alter the color of the wood? Is yellowing an issue? Do you want to minimize color changes as the wood ages?**

- **Safety and health: Are you sensitive to some solvents or concerned about flammability or the environmental impact of certain finishes?**

- **Toxicity of the finish: Will it be used near areas of food preparation?**

To get a better understanding of the choices, let's first take a look at the different categories of wood finishes.

### An overview of what's out there

All wood finishes can be classified as one of two distinctly different types, based on how they dry, or cure. Evaporative finishes—such as lacquer, shellac and many water-based finishes—dry to a hard film as the solvents evaporate. (Water is not a solvent—it's a carrier for the finish emulsion.) These types of finishes will always redissolve in the solvent used to thin them, long after they've dried, so they tend to be less durable than reactive finishes. Most reactive finishes—such as linseed or tung oil, catalyzed lacquers and varnishes—also contain solvents that evaporate, but they cure by reacting with either air outside the can or a chemical placed in the can before application. These finishes undergo a chemical change as they cure, and after that they will not redissolve in the solvent originally used to thin them. Except for the pure oils, reactive finishes tend to hold up better to heat and chemicals.

**Waxes**—I don't consider wax an appropriate finish in and of itself. I use paste wax (carnauba mostly, sometimes beeswax) to polish furniture but only over other finishes, such as lacquer or shellac.

**The true oils**—Linseed oil and tung oil, the drying oils most often used in finishing, are readily available and relatively inexpensive.

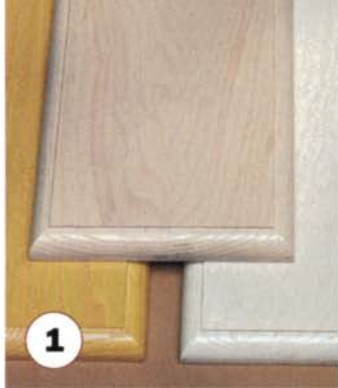
These finishes are called *true oils* to distinguish them from other products hyped as oil finishes and to separate them from naturally nondrying or semidrying oils used in finishes, such as soybean oil. These true oils change from a liquid to a solid through polymerization, a process that strengthens the cured finish.

Linseed oil is available in several forms. Unrefined, it's called raw linseed oil, which is rarely used on wood because it dries so slowly. Finishers long ago discovered that by boiling the oil, the resulting product was thicker and dried more quickly. Even though linseed oil that has actually been boiled is still available—it's called heat-treated or polymerized oil—most of the boiled linseed oil sold these days is raw oil that has been mixed with chemical additives to speed up the drying time. For wood finishing, you should use only boiled linseed oil.

Tung oil is derived from the nuts of trees that are native to Asia but have been cultivated in other parts of the world. Tung oil is available in a pure, unrefined form and in a heat-treated or polymerized form. The heat-treating process makes the oil a bit more durable and speeds up the drying time. It also minimizes a tendency of tung oil to “frost” (dry to a whitish, matte appearance). Tung oil is paler in color and has better moisture resistance than linseed oil.

Both linseed and tung oils are penetrating finishes, which means they penetrate the fibers of the wood and harden. These are the easiest finishes to apply: Wipe them on, allow them to penetrate

## APPEARANCE



1



2



3



4



5



6



7

**1** On light-colored woods, the color of the finish matters. On these samples of ash, the warm, amber tone of nitrocellulose lacquer (top) is just right. The orange shellac (left) and water-based lacquer (right) impart too much or too little color to the wood.

**2** Do you want that tabletop filled? With the open pores of some woods (such as mahogany and walnut), and on large horizontal surfaces (such as dining tables), filled grain (top sample) will make a huge difference in the way a finish looks.

**3** The kind of finish you choose will greatly affect the way it looks. Some people prefer the flat look of oil finishes (bottom); others prefer a film finish such as the acrylic lacquer (top) that reflects more light.

**4** Most finishes turn yellow over time; some don't. To illustrate the difference, the author applied a CAB acrylic lacquer (left) and a standard nitrocellulose lacquer (right) over panels coated with white paint (bottom). The CAB acrylic lacquer is your best choice to avoid the effects of a yellowing finish.

**5** Slow-drying finishes collect dust. Shellac and most lacquers dry so fast that small amounts of airborne dust don't pose a threat to the end result. Oil-based varnishes, on the other hand, are virtual dust magnets and can be problematic in dusty shop environments.

**6** Use oil as a sealer to highlight depth. The swipe of linseed oil across this curly maple tabletop shows what a difference it makes in bringing out the figure in the wood. You can apply a topcoat of just about any other finish over a dried coat of oil.

**7** A thinned finish goes on easier and looks better. Both of these samples of white oak have two coats of polyurethane varnish. The bottom sample was thinned to avoid the obvious buildup you can see on the top sample.

the surface of the wood and wipe off the excess with a rag. These oils are usually not built up with enough coats to form a surface film, like that of varnish or lacquer, because the film is too soft.

**Varnishes**—Varnish is made of tough and durable synthetic resins that have been modified with drying oils. Labels on cans of varnish will list resins such as alkyd, phenolic and urethane, and the oils used are tung and linseed, as well as other semidrying oils such as soybean and safflower. Varnish cures by the same process as true oils—polymerization—but the resins make this finish more durable than oil. In fact, oil-based varnish is the most durable finish that can be easily applied by the average woodworker. Varnish surpasses most other finishes in its resistance to water, heat, solvents and other chemicals.

Varnishes that contain a high percentage of oil are called long-oil varnishes. These include marine, spar or exterior varnishes and some interior varnishes for sale on the retail market. Long-oil varnishes are more elastic and softer than medium- and short-oil varnishes that contain a lower percentage of oil. Medium-oil varnishes comprise most interior varnishes on the market. Short-oil varnishes (also known as heat-set varnishes and baking enamels) require extremely high temperatures to dry, so they're used only in industrial applications.

The type of resin used in the varnish determines the characteristics of the finish. Alkyd varnish is the standard all-purpose interior variety with decent protective qualities. Phenolic varnish, usually made with tung oil, is predominantly for exterior use. Urethane varnish, also called polyurethane, offers a better resistance to heat, solvents and abrasions than any other varnish.

Varnish is typically applied with a brush, although a highly thinned and gelled version, called wiping varnish, can be applied with a rag.

**Oil and varnish blends**—These mixtures, mostly oil with some varnish added, offer some of the best attributes of both ingredi-

## A COMPARISON OF COMMON FINISH PRODUCTS

	Product	Ease of application	Repairability	Flame resistance	Health and safety	Water resistance	Chemical resistance	Scratch resistance
<b>EVAPORATIVE</b> finishes dry as their solvents disperse into the air. They will always redissolve into the solvent originally used to thin them, making them easier to repair but also a little less durable.	<b>Wax</b>	Excellent	Excellent	Good	Good	Poor	Fair	Poor
	<b>Shellac</b>	Good	Excellent	Fair	Excellent	Fair	Poor	Fair
	<b>Nitrocellulose lacquer</b>	Fair	Excellent	Poor	Poor	Good	Good	Fair
	<b>Most water-based finishes</b>	Good	Poor	Excellent	Fair	Good	Good	Good
<b>REACTIVE</b> finishes undergo a chemical change as they cure, making them not only more difficult to repair but also more durable (except for linseed and tung oil) than most evaporative finishes.	<b>Linseed oil</b>	Excellent	Excellent	Good	Excellent	Poor	Fair	Poor
	<b>Tung oil</b>	Excellent	Excellent	Good	Excellent	Fair	Fair	Poor
	<b>Oil-based varnish (alkyd resins)</b>	Good	Poor	Good	Poor	Excellent	Good	Good
	<b>Oil-based polyurethane</b>	Good	Poor	Good	Poor	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent
	<b>Catalyzed lacquer (and conversion varnish)</b>	Poor	Poor	Poor	Poor	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent

ents: the easy application of true oils and the protective qualities of varnish. (Watco-brand Danish oil, teak oil and a number of other finishes fall into this category.) It's difficult to ascribe accurate protective qualities to these products because manufacturers don't usually disclose the ratio of oil to varnish. Oil and varnish blends will dry a bit harder than true oils, and the finishes will build quicker with fewer applications.

**Shellacs**—While most people think of shellac as a liquid finish found at a paint store, in its pure form it's a natural resin secreted from a bug that feeds on trees, mostly in India and Thailand. The secretions, in the form of cocoons, are gathered and eventually refined into dry flakes, which are then dissolved in denatured (ethyl) alcohol to make the shellac solution that winds up in cans at the store.

Shellac is available in several varieties. You can buy it premixed, or you can buy it in flake form and mix it yourself with denatured alcohol. The premixed variety is available in orange (amber) and clear, which is shellac that's been bleached. With the flakes, shel-

lac is available in a wider variety of colors and wax contents than with the premixed version (which contains wax). The wax in shellac decreases the finish's resistance to water and prevents some finishes from bonding to it.

**Lacquers**—Most professionals still regard lacquer as the best all-around finish for wood because it dries fast, imparts an incredible depth and richness to the wood, exhibits moderate to excellent durability (depending on the type used) and rubs out well. There are several different types of lacquer, and they exhibit different performance characteristics.

Nitrocellulose lacquer is the most common. If the label on the can says lacquer, it's most likely nitrocellulose, which is made from an alkyd and nitrocellulose resin dissolved and then mixed with solvents that evaporate quickly. This type of lacquer has moderate water resistance, but it's sensitive to heat and certain solvents. The biggest drawback is the finish's tendency to yellow as it ages, which shows clearly on light-colored woods.

Acrylic-modified lacquer is made from a mixture of a nonyel-

## APPLICATION



**1** *By atomizing the finish into a fine spray, you can achieve a smoother, more even finish faster than you can with any other method. You can spray shellac and oil-based varnishes (including polyurethane), as well as water-based, nitrocellulose and catalyzed lacquers.*

**2** *Whether you use a disposable sponge brush or the more traditional bristles, laying on a coat of finish with a brush will require fewer applications. Careful technique means everything toward the goal of a neat job. Brushes work best with oil- and water-based varnishes.*

**3** *The time-honored French polish is essentially many coats of shellac put on with a rag. Besides oils, you can also apply varnishes using this method, which is time-consuming but almost foolproof. Wiping on a finish requires patience.*

lowing cellulose resin (called cellulose acetate butyrate, or CAB) and acrylic. This lacquer possesses the same general properties of nitrocellulose lacquer, except it is absolutely water-white, meaning it will not show as an amber color when applied over light-colored woods. Also, the finish won't turn yellow over time.

Catalyzed lacquer bridges the gap between the application traits of nitrocellulose lacquer and the durability of varnish. Catalyzed lacquer is a complex finish composed of urea formaldehyde or urea melamine and an alkyd that has some nitrocellulose resin added to make it handle like normal lacquer. The addition of an acid catalyst initiates a chemical reaction that forms a very tough, durable finish. Catalyzed lacquer comes in two versions: precatalyzed and post-catalyzed. Precatalyzed lacquer has the components premixed, either by the manufacturer or at the store when you buy it; post-catalyzed lacquer is a two-part system that you must mix in your shop, following precise ratios. Once the catalyst has been added, these lacquers have a fairly short pot life (the time in which they can be used).

**Water-based finishes**—Water-based finish contains some of the same ingredients as varnish and lacquer—notably urethane, alkyd and acrylic—but many flammable and polluting ingredients have been replaced with water. The chemistry in this product is complex. Because the resins don't have a natural affinity for water, they must be chemically modified or forced to combine with water.

Water-based finish is usually made with either an acrylic resin (sold as water-based lacquer) or an acrylic urethane mixture (sold as water-based polyurethane). As with varnish, the addition of the

urethane makes the resin tougher and more scratch resistant, but water-based urethane does not have the same solvent and heat resistance as its oil-based counterpart.

### What finishes are more durable?

The durability of a finish is measured by its resistance to water, chemicals, solvents (such as those in alkaline cleaners and acidic foods), heat and scratches. Wax, shellac, lacquer and some water-based finishes will be damaged if exposed to water long enough. Most of these products also scratch easily; however, they rub out well. (That's the flip side of scratch resistance.) Wax is surprisingly resistant to acids and alkalis. Aside from that, it is the least durable finish. Shellac is neither resistant to alkalis such as ammonia nor to alcohol. Of all the evaporative finishes, lacquer (nitrocellulose and acrylic, water- and solvent-based) fare the best in terms of overall durability. Oil-based polyurethane is the most durable finish you can apply by hand, and catalyzed lacquer and varnish are the most durable sprayed finishes.

### Choose a finish to match your skill level

Your level of experience, the environment in which you work and whether you're set up to spray all play a part in deciding which finish to use. The temperature and dampness of your shop, as well as the amount of sanding dust in the air, will affect your choice. Dust falling onto a finish does not pose as great a problem with lacquer or shellac as it would with a slow-drying finish such as varnish. Shellac and lacquer are also the least temperamental when it comes to cold temperatures, and they can be modified with retarder additives for hot and humid conditions. Oils and oil-based products dry slowly in cold temperatures and humid conditions, and dust is always a problem when it has time to become embedded in the dried film.

Spray equipment requires a larger budget and, in most cases, expensive equipment to exhaust the overspray. There's also a learning curve with spraying, so it will likely take some practice before you get decent results.

### The type of finish will notably affect the look of the wood

Do you want a natural "in-the-wood" finish? Or does your work demand an elegant, deep, glass-smooth finish? Is the color of the finish a problem, or will yellowing of the finish be a problem down the road?

Traditionally, woodworkers have turned to oil, wax or oil and varnish blends (such as Watco) for a natural-looking finish. None of these easy-to-apply finishes dries to form a hard surface film.

## DURABILITY



- 1** *Catalyzed lacquers and conversion varnishes will hold up to heat damage better than any other finishes.*
- 2** *Alcohol is the original solvent for shellac, an evaporative finish, and will melt right into the dried film in no time.*
- 3** *Standing water (from a leaky vase or one that collected condensed moisture from the air) can wreak havoc on most finishes. Catalyzed lacquers and oil-based varnishes fare the best against moisture damage.*
- 4** *A dining table might make a nice racetrack—especially to a child who hasn't noticed his rubber tires are missing. Polyurethane and catalyzed lacquers resist scratches better than any other finishes.*
- 5** *Damage to an evaporative finish, such as the shellac on the surface of this cherry table, is relatively easy to fix.*



However, you can get a natural-looking effect with any finish—including varnish, shellac and lacquer—as long as you don't build it up more than a few coats and you rub out the dried film with steel wool. But if your goal is a filled-pore, deep, lustrous finish, you must use a hard, film-forming finish (varnish, shellac or lacquer). This type of finish is also mandatory when you have to perform complex coloring options like toning and glazing.

The color and the penetration of the finish itself may be an issue. Orange shellac and phenolic-resin varnish both have colors that may be too dark for woods that you may want to keep as light as possible. In addition, many finishes deepen or darken the wood surface. In most cases this is desirable, because it adds depth and increases luster. However, you may want to downplay any deepening effect. Some delicately figured woods (such as pearwood) will appear muddy when an oil finish is applied.

Oil and oil-based varnish, solvent-based lacquer and shellac all deepen the color of the wood and increase surface luster the most. These finishes wet the cells of the wood, penetrating into the surface. Other film finishes—notably water-based finishes and some catalyzed lacquers—tend to lie on the surface. By not penetrating it as much, they make the wood appear lighter in color.

The plastic look that's sometimes ascribed to polyurethane and catalyzed lacquers has more to do with the incorrect application of these finishes than it does with the finishes themselves. On open-pored woods (plainsawn ash or oak, for example) the application of thick varnish and lacquer can result in a soupy look on the surface. This is a consequence of the finish film bridging across the open pores rather than flowing into them. By thinning

these finishes you can achieve more attractive results. My favorite method to apply oil-based polyurethane is to thin the finish 50% with mineral spirits and wipe it on.

A finish film that turns yellow with age will be noticeable with unstained, light-colored woods, such as maple or birch. An acrylic finish, water- or solvent-based, does not have this problem. Paste wax and some catalyzed finishes also will not yellow.

### Think about safety and the environment

A solvent-based finish, such as varnish and lacquer, contains a good deal of organic solvents, which can affect the environment as well as your health. It's also highly flammable. If these particulars pose a problem for you, use a water-based finish to eliminate the fire hazard and to mitigate the environmental and health impact. Pure oil is a surprisingly good alternative to a solvent-based lacquer or varnish: Pure oil contains no solvents and comes from renewable resources. However, oil-soaked rags must be disposed of carefully. Shellac is also a good alternative. The solvent for shellac, denatured alcohol, is distilled from corn, and most people don't find the fleeting odor objectionable.

All finishes are nontoxic when fully cured, despite what you may have read or heard. Once the solvents have evaporated, any cured film is safe for contact with food. This does not mean that the finish itself is safe to gobble up. It means simply that additives such as heavy-metal driers and plasticizers are encapsulated well enough that they do not migrate into your food. Wax and shellac (apples and candy are coated with these) are the only edible finishes that I'm aware of, besides mineral oil, which is sold as a laxative.

Spraying wastes a great deal of the finish material, and the organic solvents are dispersed into the air. Brushing or wiping on a finish is a practical, though less speedy, alternative. □

*Jeff Jewitt writes frequently for Fine Woodworking. His latest book, Great Wood Finishes, was recently published by The Taunton Press.*

# Basswood, Linden or Lime

By any name, this wood,  
a carver's delight,  
proves that it's sometimes good  
to be weak and bland

BY JON ARNO

To understand the virtues of basswood, you must adopt a totally different mindset. A wood need not be strong, durable and stunningly beautiful to fulfill a role in fine woodworking, and you could find no better example than basswood to prove that point.

A quick review of basswood's technical properties makes you wonder why anyone would want to use it. With an average specific gravity of only 0.32, it is the softest and weakest of our commercially important domestic hardwoods—softer even than our softest white pine, which weighs in at 0.34. Basswood's extremely fine and even texture makes it appear to have no figure, and its anemic, off-white to creamy-tan color is downright dull. Its average volumetric shrinkage of 15.8%, green to oven dry, is exceptionally high, and its resistance to decay is so poor that it might best be described as pure fungi fodder when used in any exterior application. And though all of this seems to suggest that basswood, sometimes called linden or lime, is a real loser, nothing could be further from the truth.

## A wood with one special purpose

No other wood is so perfectly suited for intricate carvings and detailed scroll-saw projects. Basswood is so soft and its texture so fine that it yields to a cutting edge with hardly any effort applied. Its ability to hold sharp detail is outstanding, and the freshly sheared surface is so smooth that it is comparable to sculpted marble. Very little about basswood suggests that it is even wood. In fact, a painted basswood carving looks more like glazed ceramic. But this deception melts the moment you pick up the carving and sense how light in weight it is.

In this respect, the very essence of basswood is that its benefits are contrary to those of other woods. While a cab-





inetmaker typically selects a wood because its natural beauty will enhance a completed project, sometimes the objective is to choose a wood that offers the least visual competition. This is often the case in carving, and few woods are as masterful as basswood in playing this unobtrusive, supporting role.

### The basswood family tree

Four species of basswood are native to temperate North America, but only two of them are commercially important timbers: American basswood, *Tilia americana*,

and white basswood, *T. heterophylla*. The woods of

these two species are so similar that the lumber trade does not segregate them. Also, scant evidence exists to distinguish these two species from the 20 or so Old World lindens that belong to the *Tilia* genus.

It may seem rational to conclude, therefore, that the basswood family is a rather homogeneous clan, but this is true only of the north-temperate genus. The basswood family, Tiliaceae, is primarily tropical in distribution, totaling about 40 genera and nearly 400 species, including vines and herbs as well as trees. From a broader botanical perspective, hints of its kinship with the cocoa family, Sterculiaceae, can be found in its chemistry.

### Historic and modern uses

Settlers on the American frontier once used the oven-dried flowers of basswood for making a cocoa-like tea. Also, the honey produced

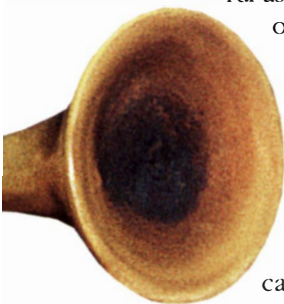
when bees have access to basswood groves has a unique and much-prized flavor. In Europe, the flowers of the linden—also called the lime tree—are used to produce lime-flower oil, an ingredient found in perfumes. Another common feature of many members of the basswood family is the tough, stringy inner bark, called bast. The bast fibers of European linden and American basswood were used for making rope and coarse floor mats. The “bass” in the American name for the tree probably stems from this now, almost forgotten bast industry.

Considering the lack of strength and durability of the lumber, it is surprising how important a role basswood and its European cousin have played

in our woodworking tradition. Linden was the wood of choice for the inspired religious carvings found in Gothic cathedrals and in the royal palaces of the Renaissance. In the 19th century, basswood was the source material for beautifully carved carousel horses and decorative circus wagons that charmed a generation of children and that draw crowds even today. It is still one of the preferred woods for piano soundboards, and its cabinetmaking uses have changed little since the 18th century. No synthetic or composite material has managed to replace basswood as a practical choice for drawer dividers, interior panels, scrollwork and light-duty substrates for veneered projects. Basswood comes to mind when a woodworker needs a relatively inexpensive wood that can be easily worked and that will perform well in a structurally undemanding role.

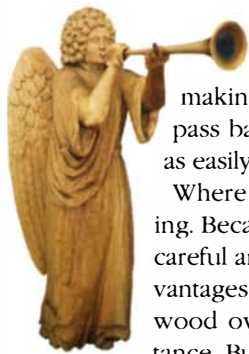
### Basswood substitutes

A multitude of other woods vie with basswood in its various roles. Yellow poplar, aspen, red alder and soft maple are relatively interchangeable with basswood as secondary woods in many cabinet-



**Basswood is heavenly.** Master wood-carver Fred Wilbur carved these four angels (left and right) as a commission bound to adorn the organ of a church in Savannah, Ga. He finished the figures with an oil and varnish mix and gilded the trumpets. Carvers prize basswood for good reason: It peels off the edge of a chisel effortlessly and crisply (top photo).





making applications. Most of them surpass basswood in strength, but few are as easily shaped and finished.

Where basswood truly excels is in carving. Because the carving process involves careful and tedious effort, fairly subtle advantages in the working properties of one wood over another are of great importance. But even within the carving world, basswood has its rivals, and some of them have cornered a private segment of the market: tupelo, or black gum, buttress-cut stock for duck decoys and Olivewood for chess sets.

Also, a few other woods stand out as important carving and pattern-making species: jelutong, mahogany and sugar pine. In terms of density and texture, perhaps jelutong is the most serious rival, but this Southeast Asian cousin of the rubber tree has latex ducts in the wood that limit the size of clear lumber it can produce. Mahogany, still available in large sizes and possessing outstanding stability, has a coarser texture and is denser than basswood. And



finally, sugar pine, only slightly more dense than basswood, has prominent resin canals that can interfere with finishes. As most carvers know, basswood is hard to beat, and being plentiful and inexpensive makes it all the more appealing.

### What the connoisseurs look for

Selecting the very best basswood can be a downright demanding skill. While it's normally important to identify the correct species when choosing most cabinet woods, pedigree is of little consequence when it comes to basswood or its cousin linden. Selecting just the right material rests on other factors relating more to growing conditions and how the wood has been processed.

Most carvers prefer sapwood because it is slightly softer. However, there are some aficionados who extend their demands to an almost cultlike level, believing that only the air-dried sapwood of northern trees is worth dulling a gouge on. Personally, I think the right way to buy basswood carving stock is to look at it and decide if it has precisely the characteristics that you want for a given project. But the aficionados cannot be wholly dismissed: Sapwood is softer, and the wood of the northern trees does seem to be slightly finer and more evenly textured. The controversy over how it should be dried rests on far more complex and subtle issues.

Ordinarily, kiln-dried lumber contains less drying stress and is more stable than air-dried stock, but basswood isn't your typical hardwood in this respect. Although basswood undergoes a high volumetric shrinkage in the drying process, it seems to develop little stress and is quite stable once it has dried. I can cite no laboratory results to confirm it, but I suspect basswood remains stable no matter how it's dried because the cells of its wood tissue have thin walls. Instead of fracturing, the cell walls flex and deform to absorb the drying stress.

Also, the high temperatures of kiln-drying give basswood a slightly darker, sort of dirty gray-tan color. And although color is of little importance if the finished project will be painted, the attitude that whiter is better seems to be the prevailing quality standard. Then again, achieving white wood by air-drying is not as simple as it sounds, either: Basswood is extremely susceptible to sticker stain, and moisture can foster bacterial growth that will result in a rank, sour odor. If you are a carver who intends to cuddle up to a chunk of basswood for days on end, every subtle nuance of its character is important. Even the scent. □

*Jon Arno, a frequent contributor to Fine Woodworking, profiles various woods of the world.*



**Basswoods make good shade trees.** European lindens (photo above) are often planted as ornamental trees, prized for their full shapes and abundant foliage.

**No knots allowed.** Solid blocks of clear basswood make up the stuff of carvers' dreams. The microscopic view at right reveals why: The pores are small and evenly distributed, lending a smooth texture to the surface of the wood.



# Shop-Built Horizontal Mortiser

BY JOHN F.  
MATOUSEK

My wife and I had just transformed our basement into a sitting area, home office, alcove and bar, but it was clear to me that we weren't finished. I envisioned three major furniture projects I'd have to complete. We needed a built-in storage cabinet in the sitting area for a television and VCR; base cabinets in the office for a computer, a printer, a copier and a fax machine; and shelf units in the alcove for books, albums and assorted art objects. I planned to build the shelf units in a Craftsman style, based on some bookcases I'd seen in an article by C. Michael Vogt (*FWW* #110, pp. 58-60). I could foresee dozens—if not hundreds—of mortise-and-tenon joints, and I began to question my plan to tackle all of these projects.

I had read an article about mortise-and-loose-tenon joints, and I remembered that loose tenons are simple to make. If I could speed up the mortising process, I could complete my three projects in a reasonable amount of time. So I began to design a machine to make mortises.

## The machine is designed to make accurate cuts

I wanted a system that could be set up easily and be operated safely and that could accurately



Using a router and two sliding tables, this homemade setup is a versatile joint-making machine

duplicate a mortising operation. Also, I needed a machine that could raise or lower the cutting bit as necessary for precise adjustments. But I wasn't sure that my scheme would work, and I didn't want to spend a lot of money on a failed experiment, so I built this setup with scraps

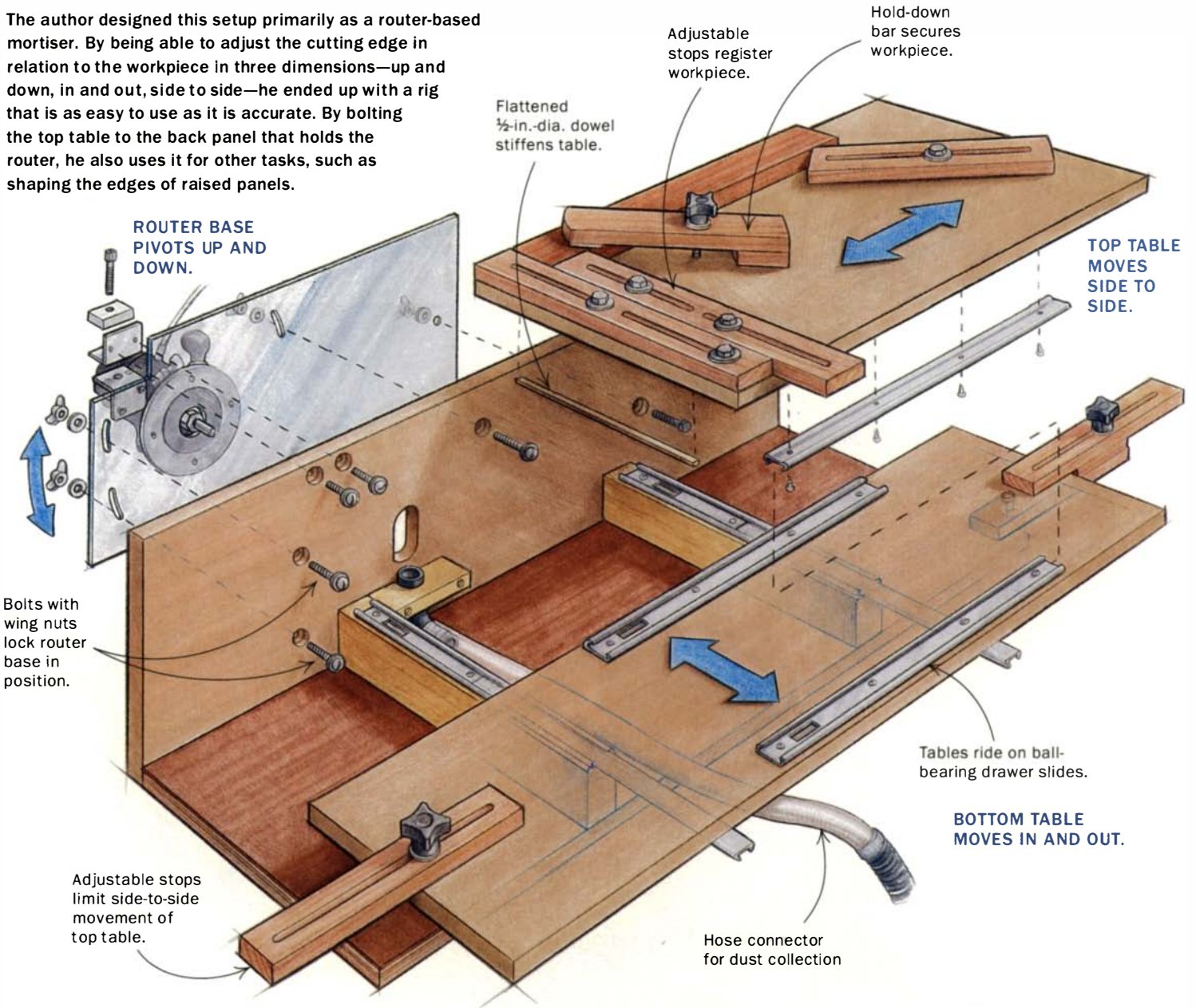
and hardware left over from previous projects. The design I finally built (see the drawing on p. 68) was that of a horizontal compound-mortising table. As designed, it is meant to mortise mostly  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in.-thick lumber workpieces, using a solid-carbide,  $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. spiral upcut bit,

powered by a standard  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hp router, which I mounted on a vertical back panel. (I did buy a new Porter-Cable model No. 690 router, figuring that I could use it in the shop even if my experiment failed.)

The machine has two movable tables. The top table moves

## ONE NIFTY SHOP-BUILT MACHINE

The author designed this setup primarily as a router-based mortiser. By being able to adjust the cutting edge in relation to the workpiece in three dimensions—up and down, in and out, side to side—he ended up with a rig that is as easy to use as it is accurate. By bolting the top table to the back panel that holds the router, he also uses it for other tasks, such as shaping the edges of raised panels.

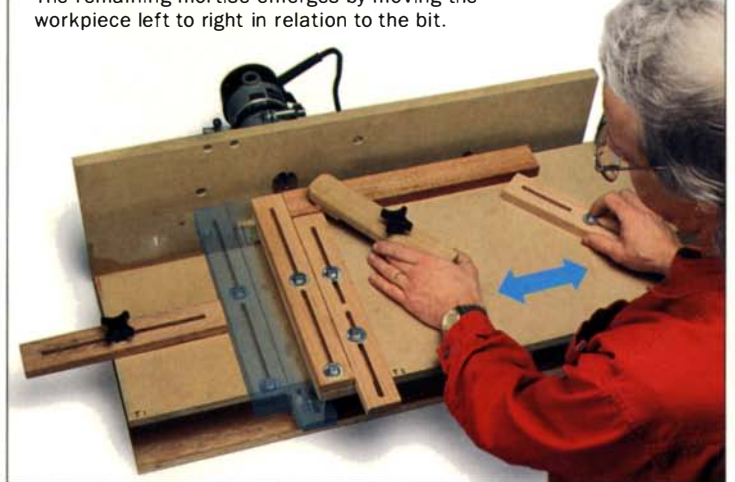


### HOW IT WORKS

The first cut for a mortise begins by plunging the workpiece into a spinning router bit.



The remaining mortise emerges by moving the workpiece left to right in relation to the bit.



at right angles to the bit, and the bottom table moves parallel to it. I mounted two drawer slides (Accuride model No. C-1029 center-mount slides) under the tables to provide for the side-to-side and front-to-back movements of the tables. Movable stops at each end of the bottom table can be set to control the distance the top table can move and thus the length of the mortise.

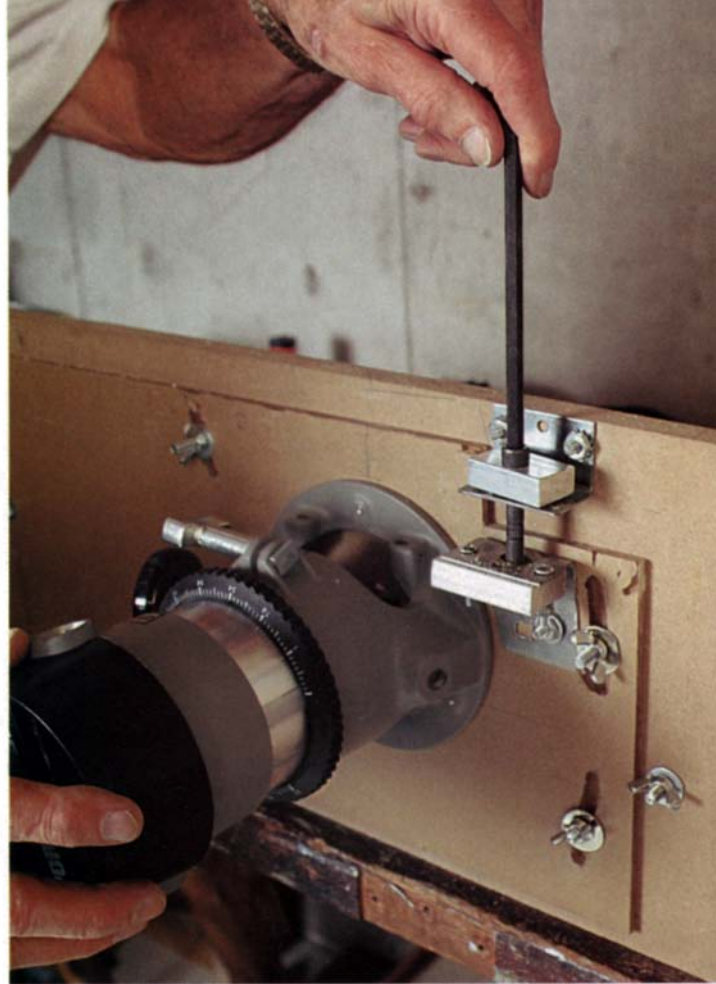
**Indexed adjustments are the key to accuracy**—To improve accuracy and to speed up the mortising process, I wanted stops wherever possible to position the workpiece for mortising rather than to depend upon pencil layout lines. By butting the workpiece against a stop, I could ensure the accuracy and the reliability of matching stile-and-rail joints.

For a given frame or set of frames, I wanted to position the stops only one time for both left and right mortises. The other option would have been to reposition the stops when going from a left to a right mortise, but it would be faster to flip the workpiece over, end for end.

To position the mortise with such a high level of precision in the center of the workpiece, the router would have to be mounted on the back panel so that it could be raised or lowered until the bit cut into the exact center of the workpiece. Using a threaded bolt to raise and lower the router (see the photo above) and a dial indicator to check the adjustments, I could fine-tune the height of the cutting bit very easily.

To make a mortise near the middle of a stile—such as that required for a center rail—the stops have to be removed, and you must use layout lines to position the workpiece for the cut.

**The original setup needed some tweaking**—The proto-



**One turn of the threaded bolt can raise or lower the router.** The author rigged up the adjusting device shown here to enhance his ability to fine-tune the height of the router bit in relation to the workpiece. The router swivels up and down on a Plexiglas base that is hinged on one end of the vertical panel to which it is secured.

type of this machine worked beyond my expectations, except for one defect.

When moving the top table forward into the cutting bit, I tended to press down on the table with enough force to deflect it sufficiently that it cut the mortise off center. To correct this, I snugly fitted a flattened 1/2-in. dowel to the underside of each end of the top table and added a little wax on the surfaces where the dowels slid against the bottom table.

Also, I added a hold-down bar on the top table for safety and to improve the accuracy of each setup. And finally, a 1 1/4-in.-dia. vacuum hose (mounted directly beneath the router bit and connected to a standard shop vacuum) collects most of the dust

and chips generated by mortising operations.

### **Use this machine as a mortiser or as a conventional router table**

After setting up the machine to cut a mortise, it's best to plunge the workpiece repeatedly into the cutting bit, drilling a series of holes, by moving the bottom table in and out and adjusting the top table a little for each plunge.

After that, clean up the sidewalls of the mortise by moving the top table left to right between the stops (which are mounted on both sides of the bottom table). Also, by clamping a fence on the top table 45° to the back panel, you can drill mortises into the ends of a 45°

miter using essentially the same procedure.

By bolting the top table to the back panel—using two brackets on the underside—you can turn this machine into a router table, good for any number of shaping tasks. For years I've wanted to cut raised panels, but I've always felt uneasy about using either a 4 1/2-in.-dia. shaper cutter or a vertical router table. The amount of spinning steel in a large cutter scares me, and using a vertical panel-raising bit in a vertical router doesn't appeal to me because it's awkward to move a large panel through the cutter resting only on its edge. But by using a vertical panel-raising bit horizontally in this machine, I was able to address all of my concerns and to get good results because the panel lies flat on the table, and it's easy to control.

### **Loose tenons can be made in large quantities**

I manufacture a variety of loose tenons before I need them, making 100 or so at a time in varying widths and lengths. I use 1/4-in. hardboard, ripped to width, and I round over the edges with a 1/4-in. bullnose bit. Because the length of the mortise can be controlled with considerable accuracy by the mortising machine, the width of the tenons is not a critical dimension, and I'm able to stockpile a pretty good supply without worrying about whether they will fit later on.

I completed my three projects in a reasonable period of time and in the process made several hundred mortise-and-loose-tenon joints with safety, accuracy and speed. This machine is quite specialized, and I don't have to use it very often, but when I do, it saves me a bundle of time. □

*John F. Matousek lives in Englewood, Colo., and is retired from his career as an information systems engineer.*



# Building **WITHOUT** Plans

Rough sketches and quick mock-ups offer an unintimidating way to design your own furniture

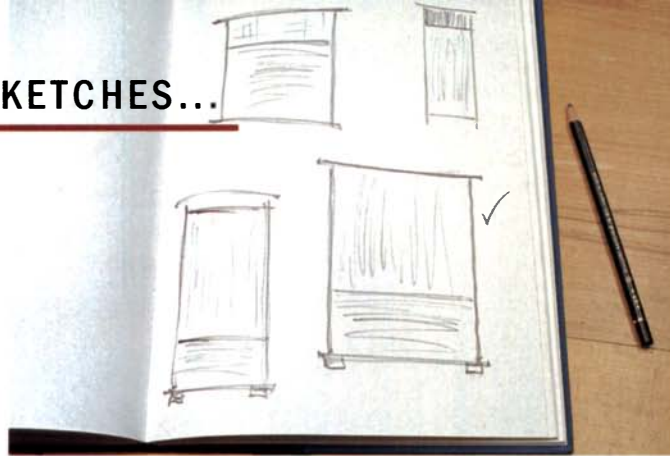
**BY CRAIG VANDALL STEVENS**

**M**ost of us who work with wood began by making at least some things from plans. I was no exception. But working from plans can begin to feel restrictive. At some point we all wonder, “What if I designed it myself?”

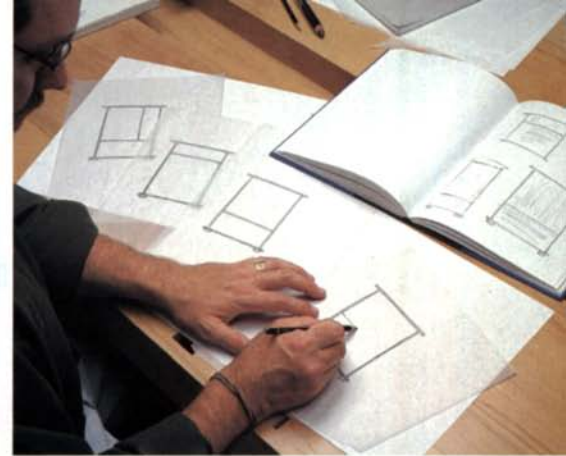
Making a standing screen presents a wonderful chance to explore the design aspect of woodworking. With its straight lines and straightforward joinery, a screen presents a minimum of construction challenges, opening the way for thoughts of design. The length of the project usually can be measured in days rather than in

## FROM QUICK SKETCHES...

You don't need finely detailed drawings to design a good piece of furniture. Small drawings without much detail provide a good way to explore overall proportions.



**The proper proportions.** Early on, while he's searching for an overall shape he likes, the author draws quickly, placing a handful of drawings on a page to make comparing them easier.



**Tracing refines the sketch.** Once he's picked a drawing he likes, the author uses tracing paper to refine some details. Here, he traced the proportions of the frame but experimented with different ways of dividing the panels.

weeks, and that can reduce the pressure of working with your own design. Still, although I've chosen to illustrate the process of design by following the development of a standing screen, the techniques I outline in this article apply not just to screens but also to any type of furniture. If you take the leap into designing your own work, I think you'll see it's a very rewarding process.

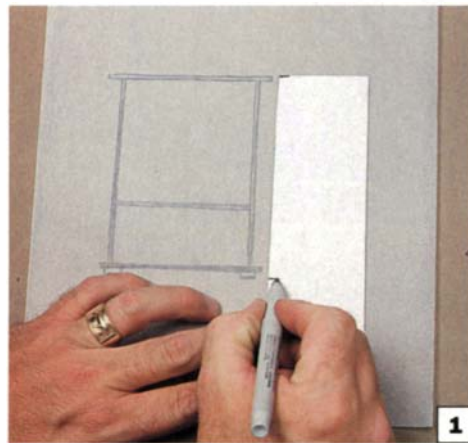
### Rough sketching is fine

I develop furniture ideas by sketching. I tend to make small sketches and make them quickly, especially early in the design process. I don't want to get hung up on a lot of detail early on, when I'm trying to establish the overall form of a piece. Finding attractive proportions is one of the most challenging aspects of designing furniture, and sketching quickly enables me to explore proportions effectively. I don't think you need to be talented at drawing to design good furniture, and drawing small and quickly reduces the artistic burden.

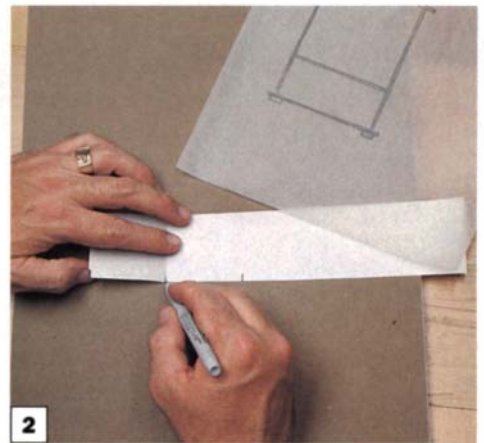
I have a number of sketchbooks, large ones that I use in the shop and small ones that go on the road. I typically use a soft pencil, but in a pinch I'll use anything handy. I have a 9mm mechanical pencil that makes clean lines and doesn't arouse suspicion at church in my choir folder. I also have some fat drawing pencils that are great for putting the first idea for a piece down on paper. The line they leave is wide enough that I'm not tempted to draw a lot of detail, just shapes and proportions. Whatever pencil I use, I resist the temptation to erase—I just live with errant lines or work them into the drawing. The main idea is to get some ideas down, not to make the

## TO A SIMPLE SCALE...

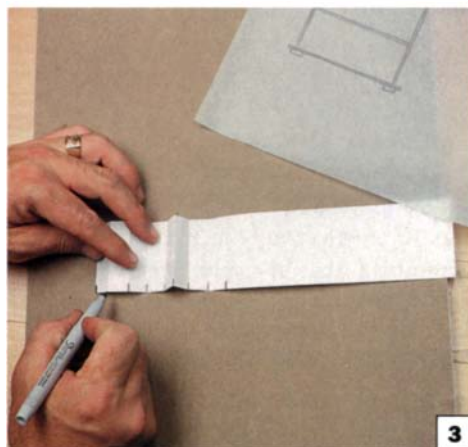
An easily made paper scale enables you to assign dimensions to your drawing and make the leap from a small, freehand sketch to a full-scale mock-up.



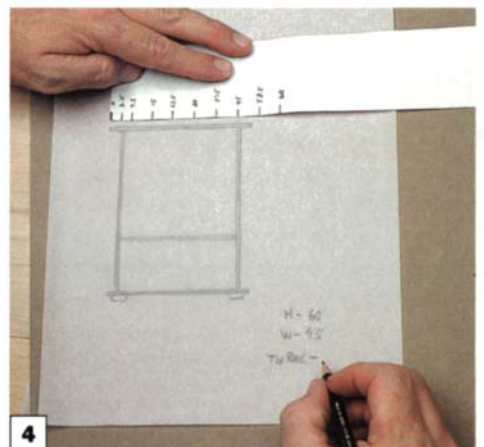
**The first dimension.** Assign a measurement to one dimension; the author decided the screen would be 60 in. tall. Tick off the top and bottom of the piece, and the distance between them will represent 60 in.



**Fold, crease, mark.** Fold the scale so that the first two tick marks meet. Then tick the crease halfway between them—it will equal 30 in.



**Keep on ticking.** Continue folding the scale in half and marking the creases.



**Rough sketch gets real dimensions.** Once the scale has been marked, it can be used to measure any part of the screen.

## TO A FULL-SCALE MOCK-UP...

Many details can be worked out at the mock-up stage. Built with 2x stock, dry-wall screws and kraft paper, this mock-up is quick to make and easy to revise.



**Get me out of the shop.** Placing a mock-up in a room for a few days can help clarify the design's strengths and weaknesses.



**To the big board.** A piece of plywood propped on a chair (another old mock-up) serves as an easel for sketching the carving design. The author uses a fat pencil to produce a flowing line.

**Sizing up the frame.** Before determining any of the details, the author considers the overall proportions of the screen and the placement of the crossbar.

drawing perfect. If you can't keep your fingers off the eraser, try drawing with ink.

When one of these sketches strikes an idea I like, I usually draw a number of variations of it. I'll often sketch out half a dozen or more takes on it in a sketchbook or on a large sheet of paper. Then I choose the one I like best and refine it further. I often use tracing paper to duplicate the basic shape of the piece a number of times, and then I sketch in variations on the details. Aside from saving time, tracing ensures that the part of the original drawing I like—the overall proportions, say—remains constant while I play with various details I'm less certain about.

### Homemade scale provides dimensions

The freehand concept drawings I've described are a great way to arrive at shapes

and proportions you find pleasing. But if you don't draw to scale or in accurate perspective, how do you turn a small, rough sketch into something you can build from? While a student of James Krenov's at the College of the Redwoods, I learned to use a simple homemade scale to assign dimensions to a concept sketch.

To make the scale (see the photos on p. 71), you need to assign a value to one dimension of the piece you've drawn. The measurements of all other parts will be derived from that first one. For example, in the case of my standing screen, I decided its overall height should be 60 in. On a piece of scrap paper slightly longer than my sketch of the screen, I made pencil marks that corresponded to the top and bottom of the screen. That gave me my scale: For this sketch, the distance between the two marks would equal 60 in. I folded

the paper in half with the pencil marks touching, creating a crease halfway between the marks that equaled 30 in. I made a tick mark at the crease. I folded the scale in half again and again until it was folded up like a Japanese fan. I put tick marks and the appropriate number of inches at each of the folds, and the scale was ready to use. Holding the scale horizontally across the



sketch, I used it to measure the width of the screen. Such a scale can be used to determine most all the dimensions of a sketch.

### **Mock-ups let you see the piece before building it**

Once I have dimensions on my drawing, you might expect that I'd make a dimensioned shop drawing. Instead, I move at this point directly to making a mock-up of the piece. Making a mock-up is one of the most helpful steps along the path of building a piece of furniture. A full-sized mock-up allows me to see the object in three dimensions and to make informed decisions regarding proportions and size. A full-sized drawing of a piece doesn't give me anything like the impact of a mock-up. It also locks me into decisions on detailing before I'm ready. I generally don't make a scale model, either, because it doesn't provide the sense of physical presence that a mock-up does.

My mock-ups aren't built to last. I use common materials (for the screen I used 2x stock for the frame and kraft paper for the panels) and the quickest possible joinery (drywall screws, brads). I want a mock-up to be as simple as possible to make and easily modified again and again until I'm comfortable with the design. I probably spent about an hour and a half building the screen mock-up. The less time it takes to build one, the more inclined I'll be to alter something I don't like. And that's the whole point of a mock-up.

I use my first mock-up, like my first sketches, to determine the overall shape and proportions of a piece. When I had the first mock-up of the screen in front of me, I saw that it was far wider than it appeared in the sketch. What had looked nicely balanced on paper was somewhat clumsy in three dimensions and full size. I made decisions regarding the overall width of the screen (I decided it needed narrowing), the thickness of the lower rail (it needed thinning) and the way the feet relate to the rest of the screen (they needed to be less clunky).

Implementing such changes is easy. I don't need a second mock-up; I simply unscrew the first one (or unclamp it if I haven't yet driven the screws) and use the chopsaw to shorten some members and

the bandsaw to shave a bit off the elements that look too heavy. With the bandsaw, I'm not measuring and taking off specific amounts, just taking off enough to make a difference visually. I generally start with all of the parts a little oversized and work down from there. I had roughed out a few extra blanks for feet, and I quickly cut out a couple of new possibilities on the bandsaw. I put two different feet on the mock-up to compare likely candidates.

When I finish a mock-up, I take it into the house and live with it a while. I place it so it's the first thing I see when I walk into the

## **TO THE FINISHED PIECE**



**The author developed the screen's pleasing proportions, careful detailing and calm presence without benefit of elaborate shop drawings.**

room. Over the next few days, I try to let it surprise me when I enter the room. The first impression I have of the proportions is telling. It's not a life-changing moment of clarity. It's usually just a quick thought like, "It's too tall," or "The feet are too fat." I pay attention to these impressions, because they are uncluttered by logic, analysis, formulas and so on. Everyone has such responses, but it may take some coaxing to get yourself to trust them.

With this new input, I take apart the mock-up, make the changes, reassemble it and take another look. At this stage, I might also add some fine detailing to the mock-up. (Before this, I have avoided including details such as subtle textures and reveals

because I find them distracting early on.) The new proportions may result in the need to fiddle with the dimensions of other parts, but the mock-up is definitely making headway. Overall, I find that a mock-up provides an enjoyable and reassuring way to develop and refine a design.

### **How I design a carving**

The screen's panels provide a wonderful canvas for the free-flowing type of carving I do. To design a carving, I use sketching techniques very similar to those used to design the screen itself. I start small, drawing on the panels of my thumbnail sketch of the screen. Working small helps me see the carving design as a whole and keeps me from getting bogged down in details.

Once I have an idea that works well with the screen design, I begin sketching full scale. I use kraft or butcher's paper from a wide roll to make the drawing. I'll prop up a piece of plywood and tape the paper to it so that I can draw while standing. I keep the small sketch nearby for reference as I work full size.

I use a soft pencil, and often instead of holding it the way I would to write, I hold it almost flat under my palm. This produces a wider, bolder line and permits my arm and hand to move in comfortable arcs, creating graceful lines more easily.

I pin the finished sketch to the mock-up so I can stand back and see it framed in the screen. Sometimes after seeing it in place, I make changes to the drawing to create a better sense of balance with the screen.

Once I'm satisfied with the sketch, I'll lay out the real panels in the order they'll take in the screen and transfer the design to the panels with carbon paper. Then the carving can begin. (For more on how to do this style of chip carving, see *FWW* #134, pp. 68-71.)

One important general tip on carving design: Resist the urge to fill the whole space. Leaving some space uncarved can significantly increase the impact of the carving. Particularly when you are working a large surface in this style of chip carving, the old maxim applies: Less really is more. □

*Craig Vandall Stevens lives and works wood in Sunbury, Ohio.*

# Trestle Table with Breadboard Ends



Cut all of the joints  
before cutting any of the shapes

BY CHARLES DURFEE

The neo-Sears & Roebuck table that you have been dining at since your student days is getting tiresome. And now a big party, months in the planning, is tangibly close. It's time to unveil your wood-working skills for a large and appreciative audience. It's time to build that trestle table you have thought about for years.

First, settle on the size. A dining table for the average family, 3 ft. by 6 ft., will seat six comfortably—seven or eight in a pinch. An 8-ft. model will give you more space. Be sure to allow about 3 ft. all around the table for seating. Trestle-table widths are limited to 3 ft. for structural reasons (more on that later). Next, decide on the type

of wood you want. Domestic hardwoods, especially cherry, walnut, birch and maple, work well for this project. If the R.S.V.P.s are coming back, there's no time to lose.

#### Build the base first

It doesn't really matter whether you build the top or the base

first. Starting with the base is a good idea because it takes the bulk of the work (generally true for tables). And if that's all you have done by the day of the party, at least you can slap a piece of plywood down, put a tablecloth over it and still hear plenty of praise. But you should at least skim-plane the top boards at this time to be sure

that you will have sufficient stock to make it wide enough. Allow ¼ in. per piece, after trimming off sap and bad edges, for jointing. Tops have a way of getting narrower as you work them up.

Stop caressing that lovely, thick, cherry stock for which you just liquidated your retirement portfolio, and pick up some cardboard, thin wood or plywood to make patterns. The latter two are better choices because they can be used for pattern-shaping parts on a router

table, if you are so inclined.

Make patterns for

the feet and cleats, as well as for the posts. Although the posts are straight and square, having a pattern for them makes it easier to lay out your rough stock to get the best yield. Make the patterns carefully and accurately. I write construction notes on them also. After seeing the table, your next-door neighbors will want you to build one for them, and the notes will help you remember how you did it.



**Patterns make perfect.** Use patterns for the trestle table's foot and cleat. Construction reminders written on the patterns help you avoid mistakes and remember salient details. After tracing the patterns on the stock, joint the top and bottom of each piece and then lay out the mortises.

For the beam, find a nice piece of 6/4 or 8/4 stock, 6 in. wide. The feet and cleats will come out of 8/4 stock, while the posts can be from 6/4 or 8/4 stock. Bear in mind that most of the base assembly will be exposed on all sides, so there is no chance to hide knots, sapwood or other imperfections. (Unless, of course, you choose to make them a design element, which I don't advocate.) You can tuck

small flaws up on the inside of the cleats, if necessary.

I have two general rules for ease and efficiency in construction: 1) complete the joinery on each part before cutting out the shapes; and 2) chop the mortises before cutting the tenons. Thus, after jointing and planing the stock to thickness, rough out the feet and cleats on a bandsaw. Joint the flats on the bottoms of the feet and tops of

the cleats. Rip these parts to their overall heights on the tablesaw, but don't cut the tapers yet—joinery before shape, remember? Because the posts and beam have no particular shape, the four sides can be cut to size at this time.

Now, lay out the mortises, making sure that they are centered in their respective pieces, then chop them. For chopping I use a vintage, floor-model hol-

## Chopping through-mortises by hand



**1** **Cutting through-mortises requires extra precision.** Instead of using his mortising machine for the beam-to-post mortises, the author uses a 3/8-in. bit to rough out the 1/2-in.-wide mortise from both sides, which he then finishes with chisels.

**2** **Marking with a razor knife makes for a crisp edge.** The through-mortises are 3/16 in. longer on the outside faces of the posts (see the drawing on p. 77). Prior to assembly the tenons will be kerfed on the bandsaw, and during assembly, wedges driven into the kerfs will close the gaps at the top and bottom of the elongated mortises.

## Sizing tenons



**1** **Mortises first, then tenons.** After all of the mortises have been cut, hold a scrap of stock to the mortise and mark the tenon width.



**2** **Made in the shade with a dado blade.** Centered tenons are easy to cut with a dado blade because the blade will cut the same amount of wood from both sides of the stock. The author makes a test cut and then raises or lowers the blade to the pre-marked pencil line on the scrap stock.



**3** **Test fit.** After cutting the scrap to the marked lines, the author tests the fit in the mortise. When the fit is right—it may take several tries—he cuts tenons on the real stock.

low-chisel mortising machine that crunches out the slots with authority. But in my earlier days, I would have drilled out the waste and pared the sides with a sharp chisel—an inexpensive method that works very well. Indeed, this latter method is preferred for the post-to-beam through-mortises (see the bottom photo on p. 75) because hand tools will provide the crisp outline you want. For these mortises, mark out on one

side and transfer the marks to the other side. Waste and pare halfway in from each face. Slightly lengthen the ends of the slots on the outside faces by  $\frac{3}{16}$  in. top and bottom, which creates a dovetail effect when the beams are wedged.

For the layout, mark from the mortised piece onto the to-be-tenoned piece. Tenons can be cut with a handsaw and chisel or by machine. I prefer to cut them laid flat on a tablesaw fit-

ted with a dado head. Use the miter gauge to push the piece across, and the fence as a stop. A sharp dado blade will cut the shoulder and cheeks cleanly in a few passes, with one setup. I don't like standing a piece on end to cut tenons. The thought of a long piece of wood waving about above the sawblade doesn't inspire confidence. And even with a jig to hold the piece, getting the sawcut plumb into the cheeks can be difficult.

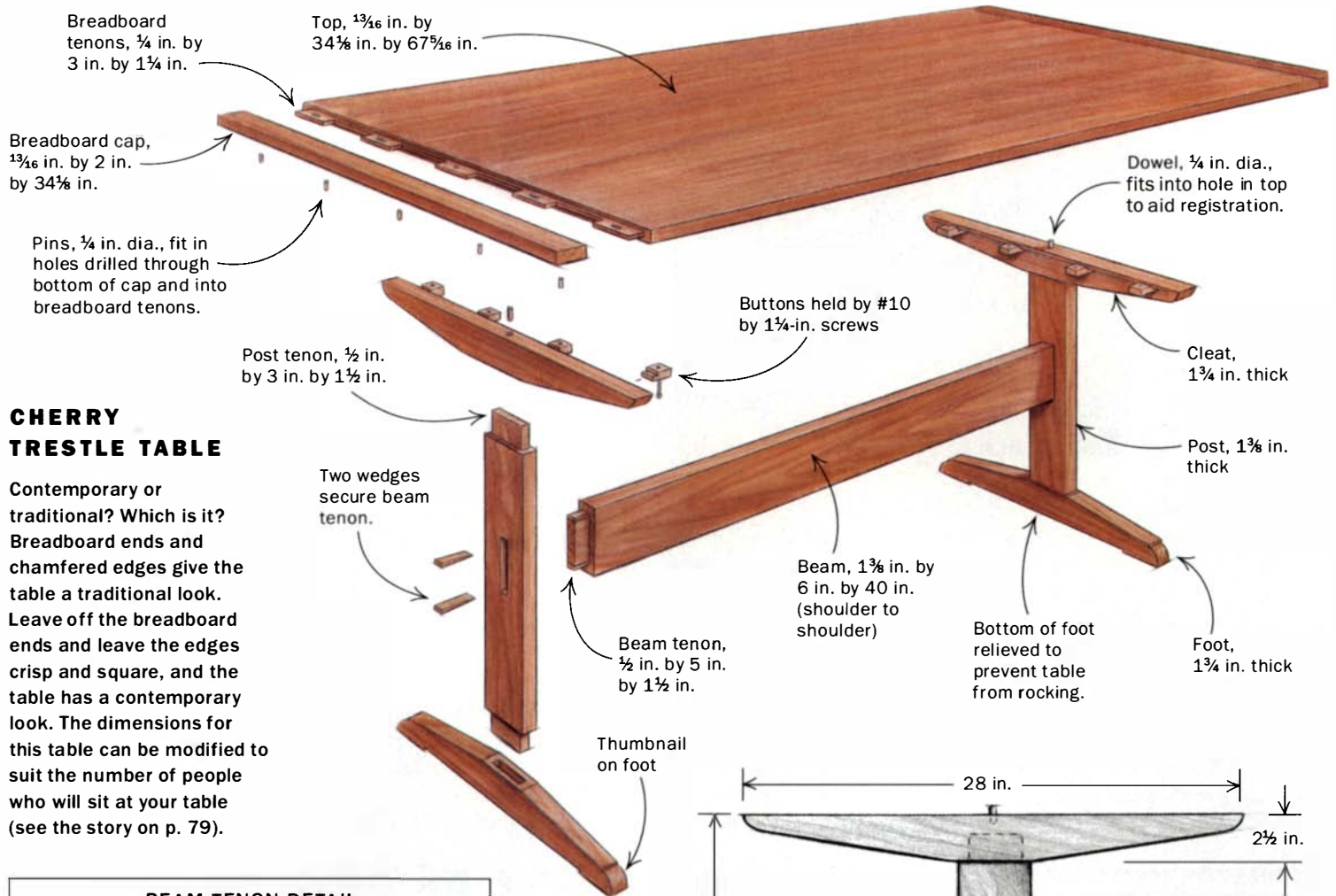
It's a good idea to make test cuts in some scrap that's the same thickness as the posts and beams. Set the blade a bit shy of the correct height, and raise it in increments, as needed. Flipping the piece over and cutting off the same amount from both sides will automatically center the tenon.

Test the fit, and if necessary, use a rabbet plane to trim the tenon just right. I often have to do this, no matter how carefully I had done the machine work. You should be able to push the tenon into the mortise simply using hand pressure. If you feel like you have to hammer the tenon into the mortise, don't. Stop, and pare the cheek more. If it drops in with its own weight, it's too loose. In that case, glue a shim of veneer to one cheek and try again. The shoulders can be back-cut slightly to improve their fit.

Test-fit the mortise-and-tenon joints, including the beam-to-post ones. Take your time, and have patience to make them right: snug fits for the cheeks, no daylight under the shoulders and everything square. Give yourself a chance to feel the

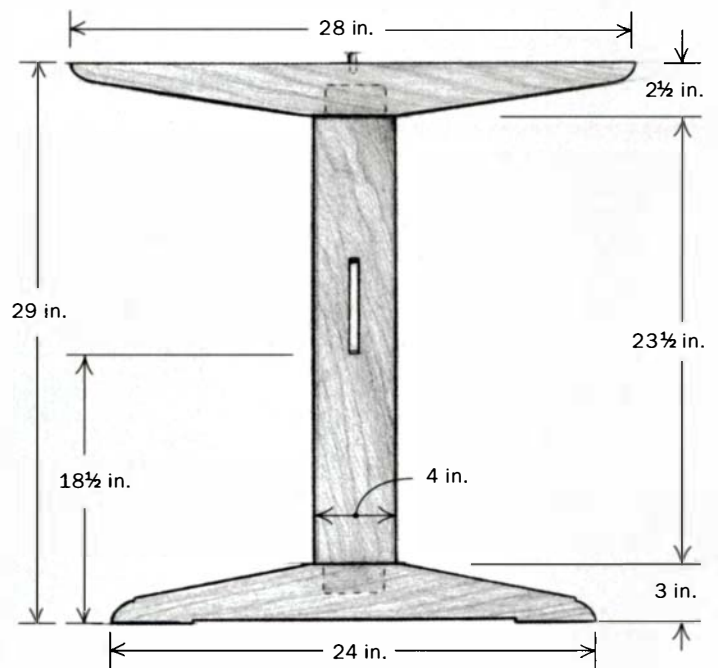
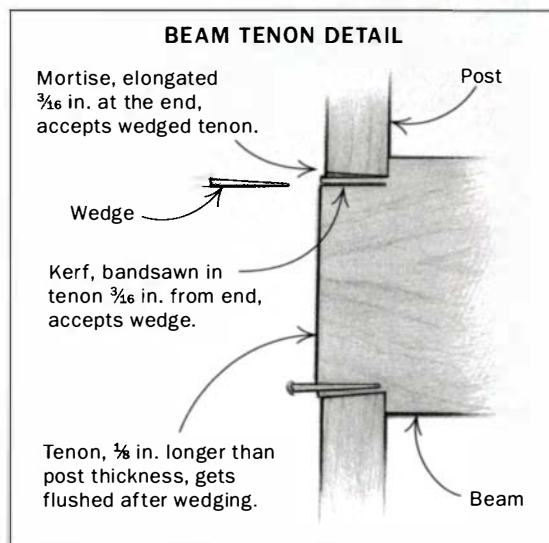
**Bandsaw to shape; finish by hand.** Feet and cleats, the only curved parts of the table, are cut on a bandsaw and then finished with a plane and scraper. The ends of the feet are adorned with a thumbnail, which the author shapes with a rasp and file.





## CHERRY TRESTLE TABLE

Contemporary or traditional? Which is it? Breadboard ends and chamfered edges give the table a traditional look. Leave off the breadboard ends and leave the edges crisp and square, and the table has a contemporary look. The dimensions for this table can be modified to suit the number of people who will sit at your table (see the story on p. 79).



pride in a job well done—it's worth it!

### Shape the feet and cleats with a bandsaw; finish with hand tools

Now shape the feet and cleats. Mark the areas where the post shoulders will land so that you

don't cut into these areas. The tapers can be roughed out on the bandsaw and easily finished up using a handplane, rasp and scraper and, if necessary, doing some light sanding. If you're dying to use the router table, attach the pattern to the stock with double-stick tape and trim

away using a flush-trimming bit.

It is helpful to clean up the surface on each piece before assembly. Use a handplane or cabinet scraper—both are efficient to use and crisply focus the grain patterns. As a bonus, you can listen to music instead of the loud whine of a power

sander. But sand, if you must. Whichever method you use, go lightly in areas where tenon shoulders touch down, so you do not ruin the careful joinery work. (I must confess that I do sand on occasion, but only lightly and after assembly to prepare the surface for finish-

**Clamp and measure.** After a dry run with clamps, the author spreads glue on the tenon faces and on the mouths of the mortises and clamps together the leg assemblies. Before the glue has time to set, he measures from the tips of the feet to the tips of the cleats, making sure the distances are the same.



ing. I also sand spots where the grain stubbornly resists being cut cleanly.)

Now use a router to knock off a moderate  $\frac{3}{16}$ -in. chamfer on all of the edges. Just how much you trim from the edges depends on the look you want: Trim more for the antique effect, less for the contemporary.

Begin assembly by putting together each foot-post-cleat unit.

After brushing glue on the tenon cheeks and in the mouth of the mortise, press the parts together. Usually, a clamp or two from top to bottom will close the joints nicely. Check that the cleat and foot are square to the post and that the measurements from the cleat tips to feet tips are equal. It's easier to clean up glue now than it is to chisel it out later. Of

course, the real trick is to use only enough glue to have a tiny bit of squeeze-out. I have some high-tech tools I use for glue cleanup: an old toothbrush, a corner of a plastic credit card and a sharpened stick wrapped with a damp rag.

After the post assemblies are dry, they can be joined to the beam. Make the wedges and cut the kerfs for them. I use my bandsaw to cut both the wedges and the kerfs in the beams for the wedges.

Now you are ready for the final assembly of the base. Being too impatient to wait for my wife or the UPS man to be on hand, I usually do this step alone. But it's tricky and goes more smoothly with some help. Maybe a dinner guest can come early to help out?

Make a dry run, but don't drive the wedges. Once you're sure everything fits, brush glue around the joinery, assemble the pieces and pull tight. Don't

muscle down on the clamps too much, or you risk cracking the posts across the beam. It's best to have one clamp on each side of the beam, as shown in the left photo below.

Once the joints have been pulled tight, you can begin to drive the wedges. Dip the tip of the wedge into the glue and, working quickly before the glue sets, place it into the kerf.

Drive the top and bottom wedges at the same time with the hammer, giving them alternate taps. When the sound of the hammer blows changes from ringing to dull, you know the wedges are home.

Again, clean up glue squeeze-out before it sets in the inside corners. Leave the outside of the wedged mortise and tenon until later; you'll be able to attack it easily. When you do, cut off the protruding wedges, and flush off the whole end with a sharp handplane. A low-angle one works well here. The base



**Wedges close the gap.** Remember those mortises you elongated? It's time to close them up with bandsaw-cut wedges. Dip the wedge tips in glue and tap them into the kerfs cut in the beam. Alternate hammer taps: hit one wedge, then the other. You'll know the wedges are home when the sound of the taps changes from ringing to dull.

**Put clamps near the through-mortises.** Protect the posts from clamp tracks with blocks of wood held by smaller clamps. Do not put the long clamps too high on the posts or on the feet or cleats; there's a danger of bending the posts or, worse yet, splitting the mortises with too much pressure.

## Variations on a basic design

Mention the trestle table, and many images come to mind. It could be a Colonial family gathered for dinner around a few rough planks

over a crude X-trestle. It could be Shakers

in the 19th century, silent and divided by sex, eating at one of their elegant and refined but understated dining tables. For myself, it could just as easily be a double-post trestle supporting a glass top. Every large furniture manufacturer in the country now offers some version of the trestle table. Indeed, it is the very image of family life.

In the course of building many types of trestle tables, I have developed what I call my basic design and have found it to be highly adaptable. Need more width to support a heavy glass top? Double up the posts and beam. Want a desk? Add a pencil drawer, a wing and an organizer. A workstation? Put a keyboard tray underneath

the top. A trestle table can be small enough for breakfast or big enough for a grand banquet. By placing extra sets of posts and legs along the way, a table can be stretched out to at least 12 ft., as the Shakers did.

There are limitations, of course. Although not constrained in length, the design is very much so in width. While you need a minimum width of 32 in. to 34 in. for dining—less than that becomes a knee-knocker—a top wider than 36 in. will put too much stress on the post-to-cleat joint. One solution is to adopt a double-post and beam design, which gives the piece a contemporary look. Several years ago, a customer requested a base design to go with a plate-glass top, to be 42 in. by 84 in. Using my basic design, I doubled the posts and beams and made the feet and cleats proportionately longer. The result turned out to be very successful—the glass nicely complemented the openness of the trestle base, which was strong enough to support the weight. A word to the wise, however: As you add width to the table and begin to approach square, the design loses its point of view and should be abandoned in favor of a leg-and-apron, pedestal or other type of base.

Moving out of the dining room and into the office, you can find a lovely cherry trestle table being used as a writing desk. Because you work only from one side, a width of 26 in. is fine. The height can be the same as that of a dining table, i.e., 30 in. Again, the length can be as short or long as desired. A pencil drawer hung un-

der the top provides useful storage, and there is plenty of leg room to stretch out into as you chew on ideas. When I built the first of these desks, typewriters were still in use. Now, typewriters are only at the Smithsonian. But the trestle-table desk can be adapted to the digital age. A keyboard tray can replace the pencil drawer. Or, if you have enough room, keep the main desk for writing and set the monitor on a wing (this time kept flush with the main surface), with the keyboard tray under the wing. Wires can be clipped up under the top. Other computer components can be put on the desk or in a separate piece of furniture.

Design decisions can be made about the base as well. The Shakers raised the standard beam out of harm's way—underneath the top. This idea makes for good leg room and gives the table a wonderfully light, almost floating, effect. You don't need to be an engineer, however, to know that this will make the base less rigid. Indeed, at least one of the Shakers' tables showed trouble in that regard. Their solution to improve this was to use a drawbolt arrangement, as I had in my reproduction of the Hancock table design. The Shakers adopted this system because they could disassemble the table and transport it to another community to be shown as a model. However, when assembled, it was surprisingly solid, with no water spilling when the turkey was being carved.

On my basic design, the beam is about two-thirds of the way off the floor, giving good leg room and avoiding the Shakers' bolted joint. The beam is 6 in. wide, through-mortised and wedged into the post. No water spills.

Many early Colonial trestle tables had feet that were broad and flat, combined with posts nearly square in section. This setup often has problems with rigidity, however. The feet on the basic table are higher and narrower, with a post that is wider than it is thick, which affords more substantial joinery. The Hancock Shaker feet are arched and up on their toes, evoking classical styles and providing more landing for the joint. Again, the posts are wider than they are thick.

A good furniture design will work well in a variety of settings. The music of Bach has been played as jazz and pop, used and abused. So too has the trestle table. But it is healthy, and it endures. Rightfully so.

is now done and can be pressed into use for your dinner party.

### A good-looking top begins at the lumberyard

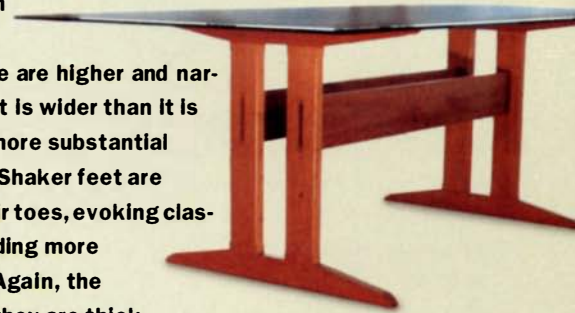
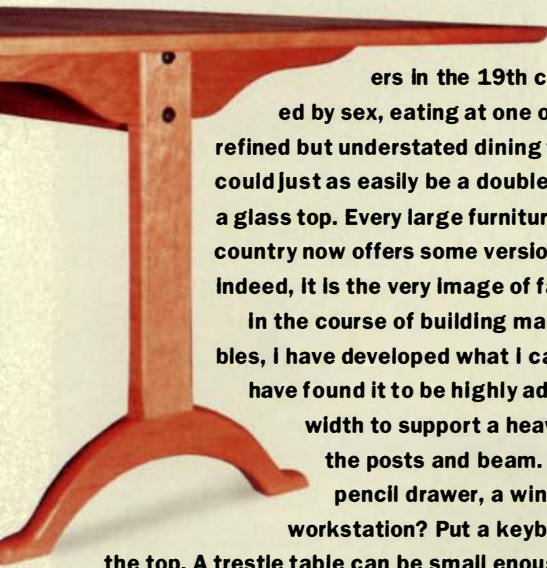
Look for consistency in grain and color in the wood that will make up the top. Sapwood on

one face can be turned under, but you'll need the outer two edges clear.

Try to have no boards under 6 in. wide; wider boards are preferable. However, it looks awkward to have one very wide, monster board among

some narrower ones, so look for consistency here as well. The lumber can't have much warp or twist, either. Beginning with 4/4 stock, you won't have a lot to give while achieving a clean, flat surface that's  $1\frac{3}{8}$  in. to  $\frac{7}{8}$  in. thick.

Because you are beginning with rough stock, you can keep design options open. Avoid stock that's already been planed to  $\frac{3}{4}$  in., as you are paying for a barrel of chips, which you may have wanted back on the board. The tabletop will look more



## Making breadboard ends



**1 A circular saw in a woodworker's shop?** Using a saw guide made from two strips of  $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. plywood, the author roughs out the breadboard tenons by cutting a series of kerfs on both sides of the top.



**2 Slick work.** A few passes with a wide chisel cleans up the debris between circular-saw kerfs.



**3 Plunge-router cleanup.** After sawing and chiseling the breadboard tenons to their rough thickness, the author uses a plunge router to get the breadboard tenon to the exact thickness of the mortise he'd previously cut in the breadboard end cap.

substantial if it is thicker than  $\frac{3}{4}$  in., especially if it is longer than 6 ft. Learn to develop the X-ray vision needed to tell what's under the surface of rough lumber, or buy lumber that has been only skim-planed. If you can't thickness the lumber yourself, have the yard take it down to about  $\frac{7}{8}$  in., which leaves a whisker for cleanup.

Joint the edges and test clamp. I recommend using biscuits to help align the top boards while gluing. They aren't needed for strength, so there's no need to glue them in. But they will help with the dressing process afterward and will maintain the thickness you want. After glue-up, it's a good idea to take the top to a mill shop with a thickness sander wide enough to accommodate the top's width.

### Add breadboard ends for stability—and tradition

Putting breadboard ends, or caps, on a tabletop is time-consuming. At minimum, you

should allow a day's work for them. They can be dispensed with, if you wish. The reasons for having them are both aesthetic and structural.

Caps give a rectangular shape an ending point, dressing off the ends of a tabletop, drop-front desk lid or, not surprisingly, a breadboard. The caps help keep the top flat, especially at the ends where it is floating freely. For this table, though, the best reason for caps, in my opinion, is tradition. Put them on, and you have a classic Colonial table. Leave them off, and it looks contemporary. Aesthetically and structurally, a top will do just fine without breadboard ends.

The construction process for caps can be as simple or difficult as you wish. On many antique pieces, the caps were simply nailed onto the ends. The next step on the road to fine joinery is to plow a tongue-and-groove joint, then nail the caps on. Screwing on the caps

gives a bit more longevity to the joint. Although this method doesn't accommodate seasonal wood movement, I must confess to having done this years ago on some tables. To this date the caps, after almost 20 years, show no signs of loosening.

However, I prefer to join the caps to the top by cutting a series of tenons, connected by a tongue that is stopped at the ends. The tenons fit into a corresponding series of mortises, and the tongue fits into a dado that also stops short of the ends. The center mortise-and-tenon joint is glued and pinned. The others are pinned and left dry, with the holes in the tenons elongated (see the top right photo on the facing page) to allow for wood movement. This method makes a firmer connection and allows for the top's seasonal expansion and contraction. One final touch is to spring the cap-to-tabletop joint by planing the inside edge of the cap slightly concave. When

clamped on to the top, the middle of the cap will be sprung in, holding the ends tightly.

### Apply the finish, then attach the top to the base

Dressing the top and base can also be done by hand with planes, scrapers or sandpaper, which will give you a nice workout in preparing a surface for finishing. I find it difficult to see the difference between one sanded to 180 grit and one done to 400 grit. For some reason, the finer grit equals more boasting rights. Typically, my surfaces are handplaned and scraped, and then, if necessary, gone over with 180 grit before finishing. After all, I'm not looking for guitar-body quality in a tabletop that's meant to be used. The color will be lovely, with the grain in focus. The smoothness will be in the finish.

Okay, now it's time for true confessions. How many of you get to this point of a project and go for the quickest, simplest fin-





**4** **Tongues and tenons.** A jigsaw quickly cuts the long, single breadboard tenon into a tongue-and-tenon sequence that will fit into mirror-image mortises already cut in the end cap.



**5** **Extralong cap comes off with a tap.** It'll take some fussing and fiddling to get the cap to fit just right. It's a good idea to leave the cap a few inches long on each end while fitting, and then after everything is fit, drilled, glued and pegged, you can cut the caps flush with a handsaw.



**6** **No glue in the long holes.** The center tenon has a round hole, which will get glued and pegged during assembly. The other four tenon holes are elongated to allow for wood movement. When assembled, the long holes are pinned without glue.

ish available? I'm sure many hands are up. Being one of that group, I use an oil-varnish blend. With a bow to those who use varnish, shellac or lacquer, it's hard to beat an oil-varnish finish for ease of use and maintenance and for bringing out

the wood's natural tones. Cherry and walnut do especially well with it. The varnish will give some body to the penetrating oil but not any more surface buildup than you want.

Although in the past I've mixed my own brews, I now

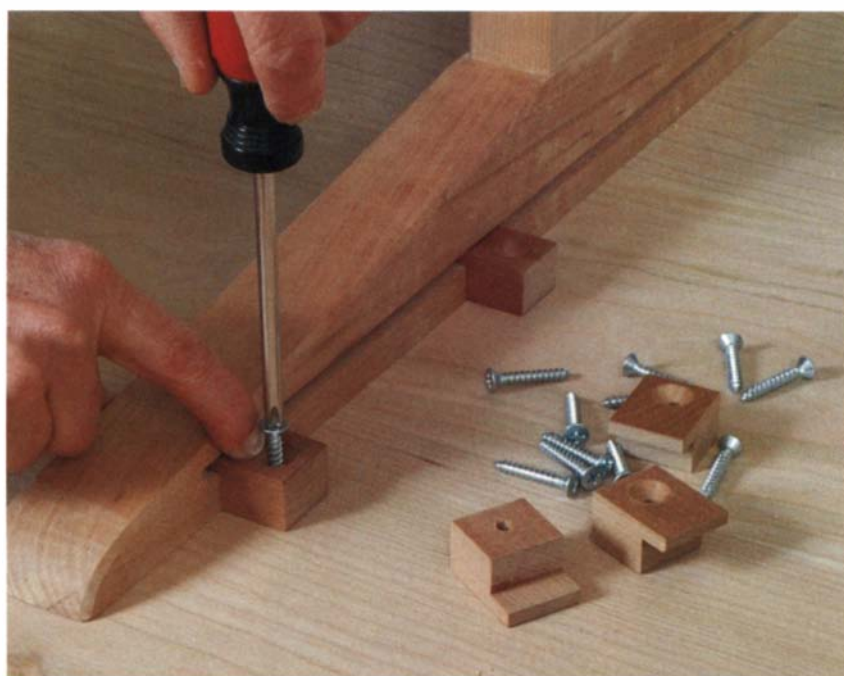
use, with satisfaction, Minwax Antique Oil Finish. Three coats will generally do the trick. The second and third coats are sanded while wet with 320- or 400-grit wet-or-dry sandpaper before wiping off. The finish is smooth and silky. People will

invariably walk up to a table and run their hands over it. The look is plain and informal but handsome.

To allow for expansion, fasten the top to the base using wood buttons (my preference) or metal clips from Rockler (800-279-4441). The slots for these are on the inside edges of each cleat and are easiest to do before assembly with a router or tablesaw. Stop the cuts before each end. Also, to keep the top from slipping sideways, have a short 1/4-in. dowel protruding about 3/8 in. from the top center of each cleat. It fits (unglued) into a corresponding hole in the underside of the top.

That does it. Remember to sign your name under the top. It is time to bring the table into the house, just in time to serve dinner to the "oohs" and "aahs" of an impressed audience. □

**Four buttons in a long slot.** Cherry tabletop buttons get screwed to the underside of the tabletop and fit into a slot router-cut into the inside of the cleats. Make sure to stop the slot 1 in. back from the end of the cleat.



*Charles Durfee lives in Woolwich, Maine, building furniture since 1978.*

# Dust Collection for the One-Man Shop



How to get the most performance from 1-hp to 2-hp dust collectors

BY ANATOLE BURKIN

**D**on't throw away the broom just yet. Even the best dust-collection system won't eliminate the need for occasional sweeping. A good system, however, will keep the broom and your lungs from wearing out prematurely.

There are two main points to consider when choosing a dust collector. First, figure out the air-volume requirements of the machines in your shop (see the chart on p. 84). Next, decide on what kind of hookups you are going to use: flexible hose, PVC pipe or metal duct.

To see what size and type of collector would best suit a one-man shop, I gathered a sampling of machines, from 1-hp single-stage units to 2-hp two-stage collectors, including one cyclone: Delta (1½ hp single stage), Dust Boy (2 hp two stage), Jet (2 hp single stage), Oneida (1½ hp cyclone) and SECO UFO-90 (1 hp single stage). I used the collectors with my tools, which include a 10-in. cabinet saw, a 15-in. planer, an 8-in. jointer and a 16-in. bandsaw.

The horsepower rating is a fairly reliable guide to the performance of a dust collector (see the chart on p. 85). Hookups, however, are everything. Too much flexible hose will rob even a big collector of power. PVC pipes, in short runs, work fine with a sufficiently powered collector, 1½ hp or more. Metal duct, not unexpectedly, performs best. Even an 8-year-old, 1-hp col-

lector can collect chips from machines 25 ft. away when hooked up to a properly designed system. Using a 1-hp collector this way may seem misguided, like putting a racing exhaust system on a subcompact car, but the experiment illustrates how you don't have to spend a fortune to get decent results. Every shop is different, of course, and your results may vary, so use my findings as guidelines, not absolutes.

### A 1-hp single-stage collector can handle any machine in my shop

The biggest sawdust producer in my shop is a 15-in. planer. And even a 1-hp single-stage dust collector can handle that machine, hooked up with about 6 ft. of 4-in.-dia. flexible hose. I borrowed a new UFO-90, same as my old collector, to see if anything had been changed. It's still the

#### 1-HP COLLECTORS



Small, portable collectors are easy to move

around the shop. Make connections to one tool at a time using a short piece of flexible hose.

same machine, rated at 650 cu. ft. per minute (cfm) by the manufacturer, but when hooked up to 6 ft. of flexible hose, it moves about 420 cfm. That's slightly less than the 500 cfm recommended for a 15-in. planer, but 90% of the time the 1-hp collector can handle it because I rarely plane 15-in.-wide stock.

One-hp single-stage collectors cost about \$200. Some woodworkers buy two units and station them strategically in their shop. At 82 decibels (measured at 8 ft.), a 1-hp dust collector isn't much noisier than a vacuum cleaner, and each one takes up about 3 sq. ft. of shop space.

I also used the 1-hp collector with a PVC duct system (4-in.-dia. pipe and fittings) and measured the moving air volume at the tablesaw-jointer connection, which is

## Three styles of dust collectors

The most economical and biggest-selling dust collectors are the two-bag, single-stage models. Single stage means the dust is sucked through the impeller (fan) and dumped into the lower bag. The upper bag collects fine sawdust and lets the exhaust air back into the shop.

Two-stage collectors are the next step up. The motor and impeller sit atop a barrel. Chips enter the barrel and are directed downward, although the swirling air inside may occasionally move smaller chips upward. A filter bag hangs off to one side and collects the finest dust.

Two-stage cyclones are at the top of the evolutionary chain. The motor and impeller sit atop a cone-shaped canister, the cyclone, which is connected to a trash can below. Chips or other large debris enter the cyclone and swirl downward, avoiding the impeller. The longer the cyclonic chamber, the greater its effectiveness at slowing down and separating large particles. Air is filtered either by a pleated internal cartridge or by one or more felt bags hanging off to the side of the machine. Internal-cartridge cyclones use the least amount of floor space. The upper bags or cartridge filters of all collectors must be shaken out occasionally to remove fine dust.

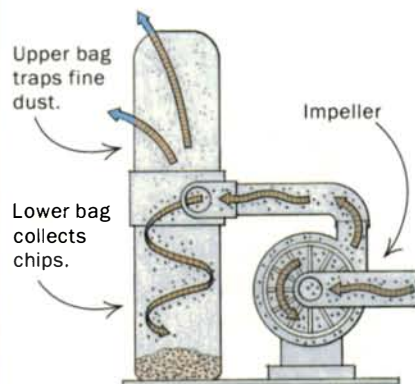
#### DANGERS OF SINGLE-STAGE COLLECTORS

Debris entering a single-stage collector passes through the impeller, many of which are made of steel. Even a small bit of metal, such as a screw, can cause a spark when it hits a steel impeller. Dust-collector explosions are rare, but the potential is there. Debris, metal or otherwise, not only makes a racket when it hits an impeller but also imparts stress on the bearing and will shorten its life. I heard of a woodworker whose collector's sheet-metal housing was punctured by a screw that entered the impeller.

One way to reduce the risk of fire is to choose a single-stage collector with a plastic or aluminum impeller. Although the impeller itself won't cause a spark, metal debris striking the steel housing may have the same effect. Steel impellers are fine, however, if you avoid using the dust collector to sweep up miscellaneous debris off the floor or workbench.

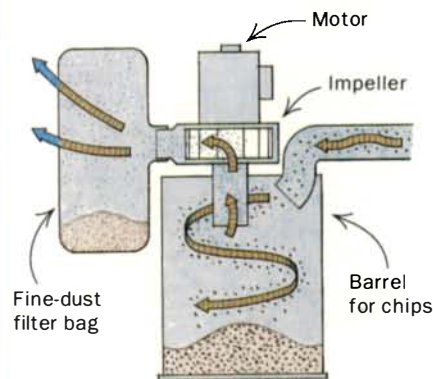
#### SINGLE STAGE

Sawdust must first pass through the impeller (fan) before being separated.



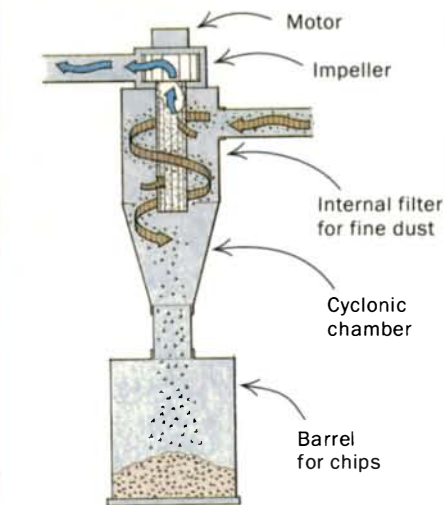
#### BARREL-STYLE TWO STAGE

The larger chips entering a two-stage collector tend to drop out before they have a chance to strike the impeller.



#### TWO-STAGE CYCLONE

The shape of a cyclone is most efficient at slowing down the speed of debris, allowing most of it to settle out before reaching the filter.





## 1 1/2-HP COLLECTORS

Although collectors in this power category may occasionally be used with two tools simultaneously, for best performance, use blast gates and run one tool at a time.

at the end of about 25 ft. of pipe and hose. At that distance, because of increased resistance, the air volume drops to under 300 cfm, less than recommended for woodworking tools. In reality, however, one can live with that. But if I'm face-jointing wide boards, the collector can't always handle the volume, and chips jam the jointer's dust port. Maybe 80% of the time it works okay.

When I hooked up the 1-hp collector to a newly installed metal duct system, with my tools in the same configuration as before, I was really surprised. The air volume was back up to 360 cfm, very acceptable. Then I hooked up my old 1-hp collector, which is outfitted with oversized felt bags (available from Oneida Air Systems) that improve airflow and capture fine dust (see the story below), and I measured almost 400 cfm. That's a significant gain.

### A 1 1/2-hp collector can be hooked up to longer runs of hose or duct

As you might imagine, hooked up to one machine at a time, a 1 1/2-hp collector does

## Go with felt bags

The standard bags issued with most dust collectors are good for capturing particles of 25 to 30 microns or bigger. A micron is 1/1,000,000th of a meter in length; looked at another way, the paper this article is printed on is about 25 microns thick. Fine dust blows right



**Fabric vs. felt.** A fabric bag, left, has less thickness and is more porous. Felt, right, does a much better job of filtering out very fine dust.

not have any trouble removing chips, even with a long (12-ft.) run of hose. Delta rates its 1 1/2-hp collector at 1,200 cfm, a number that is derived in a lab, not under real shop conditions (for more on manufacturer specs, see the story on the facing page). Hooked up to a 6-ft. run of 4-in.-dia. flexible hose, I measured about 500 cfm with the Delta and 470 cfm using an Oneida Air Systems 1 1/2-hp cyclone collector. Cyclones and two-stage collectors have slightly more internal air resistance; hence the lower cfm reading. That's about what you can expect from any 1 1/2-hp collector hooked up to 4-in.-dia. hose.

I also hooked up the 1 1/2-hp collectors to two machines running simultaneously. Performance ranged from good to so-so, depending on how much sawdust was being spit out by my tools. The best way to direct maximum airflow to the tool being used is to attach a blast gate to each hose.

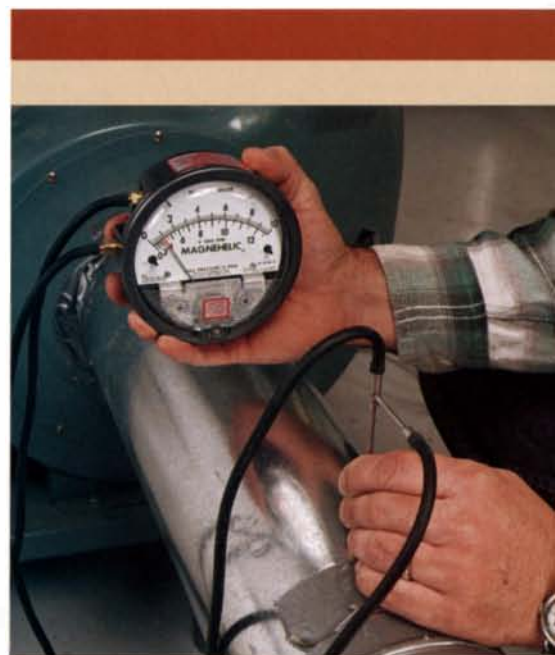
Hooked up to a PVC duct system (a run of about 25 ft. of pipe), both the Delta and Oneida collectors captured most of the sawdust when running one tool.

A 1 1/2-hp Delta collector costs about \$350. A two-stage unit such as the Oneida costs almost twice as much. Penn State Industries also sells a cyclone collector. (For more on the advantages of two-stage collectors vs. single-stage units, see the story on p. 83.)

Both 1 1/2-hp collectors performed exceptionally well when connected to metal duct and used with one tool at a time. With two blast gates open, the air volume dropped and was insufficient to operate two big machines at once.

The larger-volume bags or canisters of 1 1/2-hp collectors hold a lot of material, about 30 gal. worth, which means fewer trips to the compost pile, a big advantage over the 1-hp machines that hold about

through filter fabric, back into the shop. Dust particles under 10 microns in size are the most harmful because they can get past the respiratory tract and enter your lungs. Unless you wear a dust mask while woodworking, toss out the stock bags and replace them with felt bags rated at 5 microns or less.



Measurements were taken with a dial-gauge manometer (a pressure gauge) and pitot tube. The chart at right compares the performance of a few dust collectors when using hose, PVC pipe and metal duct.



## AIR-VOLUME REQUIREMENTS OF MACHINES

TOOL	CFM NEEDED
10-in. tablesaw	350
6-in. or 8-in. jointer	300-450
12-in. planer	350
15-in. planer	500
Drill press	350
14-in. or 16-in. bandsaw	350
Radial-arm saw	350-500
12-in. disc sander	350
12-in. to 24-in. drum sander	300-500
Oscillating spindle sander	350
Floor sweep	350

# DETERMINING YOUR DUST-COLLECTION REQUIREMENTS

## PERFORMANCE OF DUST COLLECTORS UNDER VARYING CONDITIONS

Horsepower	6 ft. from collector, 6-in.-dia. straight metal duct*	6 ft. from collector, 4-in.-dia. flexible hose	6 ft. from collector, two runs of 4-in.-dia. flexible hose	25 ft. from collector, at jointer hookup, 4-in.-dia. PVC pipe	25 ft. from collector, at jointer hookup, 5-in.-dia. metal duct
1 hp single stage	550 cfm	Excellent	Fair	Fair	Excellent
1½ hp single stage	825 cfm	Excellent	Good	Good	Excellent
1½ hp cyclone	700 cfm	Excellent	Good	Good	Excellent
2 hp single stage	980 cfm	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent	Excellent
2 hp two stage	825 cfm	Excellent	Good	Good	Excellent

Fair: under 300 cfm      Good: 325 cfm to 350 cfm      Excellent: more than 350 cfm

\* Bags or filters attached with a light coating of sawdust present.

## MAKING SENSE OF MANUFACTURER SPECS

There's a fair amount of misleading marketing specs on dust collectors. When an ad says a collector is rated at 1,200 cfm, what does it mean? Not much, really. Cfm stands for cubic feet per minute, a measure of the volume of air moving past a point of reference. The cfm figure needs to be put in the context of the amount of resistance, or friction, present (called static pressure, or SP). Air moving through duct or hose encounters resistance, just as a person would slipping down a water slide. The more bends and bumps, the slower the ride or the lower the air velocity and volume. Many manufacturers rate their machines without bags or duct attached.

While trying out a number of dust collectors, I measured their performances under real working conditions, using flexible hose, PVC pipe or metal duct in my 420-sq.-ft. shop (see the chart above). The resistance readings ranged from 3 in. to 5 in. I also measured collectors hooked up to a

straight piece of 6-in.-dia. metal duct, just to get a baseline, highest-possible performance figure.

Collectors ranging in size from 1 hp to 2 hp have impellers (fans) sized from 10 in. dia. to 12 in. dia. All things being equal (motor speed and impeller design), a bigger impeller coupled with a bigger motor will move more air than a smaller pairing. There are some differences among collectors; to learn more, ask a manufacturer for an impeller performance chart.

As soon as any collector is hooked up in the shop, performance declines in relation to the length and type of hookup. That's why smooth-walled metal duct, with wide-radius elbows and wyes, is better than PVC pipe.

**Materials that affect airflow.** The metal elbow (top), which is designed for central dust-collection systems, has a gentle sweep, which lowers resistance to airflow. Plastic PVC pipe has a tighter-radius bend and restricts airflow more. Ribbed flexible pipe also disturbs airflow, up to three times as much as metal.



METAL



PVC



FLEXIBLE

## 2-HP COLLECTORS

### SINGLE STAGE

Many 2-hp collectors can handle two tools at once. Although 4-in.-dia. PVC pipe is not the best duct material, satisfactory results can be obtained when connected to a 2-hp collector.

### BARREL-STYLE TWO STAGE

A 2-hp collector has enough power to handle larger machinery, such as this 18-in. planer (right). This collector by Dust Boy is a two-stage model with a 55-gal. drum.



half of that. A 1½-hp single-stage collector takes up about 7 sq. ft. of shop space. But a vertically stacked two-stage cyclone such as the Oneida takes up only 3½ sq. ft. of shop space, a big plus in a small shop. More horsepower does mean more noise; both registered 85 decibels at 8 ft. The Delta comes wired for 115 volts but can be switched over to 230 volts. The Oneida comes without cable or switch. It can be wired to run on either current.

### A 2-hp unit can sometimes handle two machines at once

Hooked up to two 6-ft. runs of 4-in.-dia. hoses, a 2-hp single-stage collector draws over 350 cfm from each port, plenty for many woodworking machines. The 2-hp two-stage Dust Boy didn't match the power of the 2-hp single-stage Jet machine, although it has other qualities that may be preferable (see the story on p. 83). When I connected the 2-hp units to the PVC duct system, they too were robbed of considerable power, but one machine could be operated at a time with satisfactory results.

When connected to a metal duct system, the Jet collector really moved a lot of air, 570 cfm at the tablesaw-jointer connection (after about 25 ft. of duct). With two blast gates open, the air volume was reduced to less than 300 cfm, still acceptable for some operations. The Dust Boy produced slightly lower readings but still had more than enough power to run one tool at a time in any configuration. If you regularly operate more than one machine simultaneously, it

would be wise to look at 3-hp or bigger dust collectors.

The 2-hp machines are no noisier than the 1½-hp collectors. They cost more, however. The Jet is priced at \$400; the Dust Boy sells for about \$650. Most 2-hp collectors come wired for 230 volts. The Dust Boy can be run at either 115 volts or 230 volts.

### Choosing among the options

On the matter of choosing a dust collector, a two-stage cyclone gets my top vote. A small cyclone collector takes up less room, is easy to empty and runs very clean. For example, on all of the single-stage units, even after running them for only an hour,

fine dust appeared on the machine and in the area around it. That's because it's difficult to get a perfect seal between the bag and housing. The Oneida cyclone, outfitted with an internal filter, rubber gaskets and wide metal ring clamps, seals better.

Two-stage units such as the Dust Boy (Delta also makes a two-stage collector) are also nice and compact. The Dust Boy takes up 6 sq. ft. and less vertical space than most collectors. The Dust Boy (as does the Oneida) comes with a Leeson motor and cast-aluminum housing and impeller (fan), and the sturdy plastic barrel holds a lot of debris, 55 gal. worth. Before it can be emptied, however, the heavy motor and housing must be lifted off.

Removing the lower bag of a single-stage collector is an easy matter of loosening a band clamp. The real fun begins when you try to reattach it. If you've ever had to put your pants on with an arm in a cast, you'll get the idea. The lower bag must be wrapped around the metal waist of the machine and held in place before the clamp can be cinched. Some manufacturers, such as Jet, add an elastic band inside the lower bag to facilitate reattachment somewhat.

Woodworker's Supply tried to solve the lower-bag problem with a clamp-on skirt accessory. The skirt and a standard 30-gal. trash can replace the lower bag. Because the skirt remains attached to the collector's housing, it's easy to cinch the lower belt that attaches the skirt to the trash can. I just wish the skirt were made of felt rather than the more porous woven fabric. This setup



**Better connections.** The Oneida cyclone collector's trash barrel is connected by a large metal ring, which simplifies reattachment (left). Woodworker's Supply sells a clamp-on skirt accessory that is used with a 30-gal. trash can (right). The skirt is easier to reattach than a standard lower bag.



## Designing a central dust-collection system

Oneida Air Systems designed my ductwork, which is very typical for a one-room shop under 500 sq. ft. The ductwork begins with a 6-in.-dia. pipe connected to the collector. At the first wye (split), the duct reduces to 5-in.-dia.

branches. The 5-in.-dia. pipes serve the biggest tools (jointer, tablesaw and planer), even though they all have 4-in.-dia. dust ports, which ensure good air volume to the machines. Also, you can change the dust port to a 5-in.-dia. connection for better performance. A 5-in.-dia. to 4-in.-dia. reducer is used to make the transition.

The 4-in.-dia. branches that split off the 5-in.-dia. line serve smaller tools, such as the bandsaw and router table. Blast gates are installed at each tool. The final connections were made with flexible hose, which allows me to move my tools around.

I used 24-gauge (mostly) snap-lock pipe, spot-welded fittings and aluminum blast gates, which are available from many companies. (Avoid lighter-gauge metal duct designed for heating or cooling systems; it can collapse under vacuum.) A higher-quality system will employ 22-gauge spiral pipe and welded fittings, which are stiffer and more airtight, and yes, they cost more. Quick-Fit duct supplies from Nordfab are also premium priced, but the components go together easily and don't require duct tape or caulk.

Although individual 24-gauge components aren't that expensive (a 5-ft. run of 5-in.-dia. snap-lock pipe costs about \$8), it all adds up. A very basic three-machine

setup may be had for a few hundred dollars. A system for half a dozen tools and a floor sweep may cost \$500 or more.

To help illustrate the photos in this article, an orange/black flex hose was used to make connections from pipe to tools; black flex hose, however, works fine. It's best to use a minimum of hose

because it produces about three times the friction of metal pipe. Friction will reduce the performance of the system. All pipe seams and connections must be sealed with caulk or duct tape. Clear silicone caulk is a good choice because it's virtually invisible and is easy to remove.

### DESIGN HELP IS AVAILABLE

Designing the ductwork for a central dust-collection system can involve a lot of calculations. For those of us who skipped math class, there's help available.

- Air Handling Systems of Woodbridge, Conn., has an on-line duct calculator program ([www.alrhand.com](http://www.alrhand.com)). The company outlines the concepts of duct design in a four-page brochure.

- Oneida Air Systems of Syracuse, N.Y., will design a duct system free of charge for its customers ([www.oneida-air.com](http://www.oneida-air.com)). All that's required is a shop drawing showing the types and locations of woodworking machines.

- Nordfab of Thomasville, N.C., manufacturers of the Quick-Fit line of duct and fittings, offers a free design service. The company has a downloadable program ([www.nordfab.com](http://www.nordfab.com)), but you need a CAD program to run it. The company also offers a peel-and-stick shop layout kit for analog woodworkers.

- If you wish to tackle duct design yourself, all of the necessary information can be found in *Woodshop Dust Control* by Sandor Nagyszalanczy (The Taunton Press, 1996).

### SOURCES OF SUPPLY

- AIR HANDLING SYSTEMS** (800) 367-3828  
Duct supplies and duct design
- AMERICAN FABRIC FILTER CO.** (800) 367-3591  
Custom-made dust bags
- DELTA** (800) 438-2486 Dust collectors
- DUST BOY** (800) 232-3878 Dust collectors
- HIGHLAND HARDWARE** (800) 241-6748  
Dust collectors
- JET** (800) 274-6848 Dust collectors and supplies
- KRAEMER TOOLS** (800) 443-6443  
Dust collectors and supplies (Canada)
- LENEAVE MACHINERY** (800) 442-2302  
Dust collectors
- NORDFAB** (800) 532-0830  
Quick-Fit duct supplies
- ONEIDA AIR SYSTEMS** (315) 476-5151  
Dust collectors, duct supplies and duct design
- PENN STATE INDUSTRIES** (800) 377-7297  
Dust collectors and supplies
- POWERMATIC** (800) 248-0144 Dust collectors
- SUNHILL MACHINERY** (800) 929-4321  
Dust collectors and supplies
- WOODWORKER'S SUPPLY** (800) 645-9292  
Dust collectors and supplies
- WILKE MACHINERY** (800) 235-2100  
Dust collectors and supplies



**No screws or rivets needed.** Quick-Fit duct pipe from Nordfab is assembled using gasketed clamps.

will reduce the air volume (the collector "breathes" through both bags) when using the stock upper bag. With a larger upper bag, I found that the cfm readings were not compromised. But if you happen to vacuum up any offcuts, they will make quite a racket rattling around in a metal trash can.

Although many woodworkers, myself included, have used PVC drainpipe for duct

without mishap, experts warn against using the material. The connectors (elbows and wyes) restrict airflow, and the material builds up a static charge, which may cause a spark and set off an explosion. (Running grounded copper wire inside the pipe reduces the hazard.) Use PVC at your own risk. Metal duct and fittings are obviously better and will also last longer. I've broken

half a dozen plastic blast gates in as many years. If you're on a tight budget, go with flexible hose or build a metal duct system in stages, starting with only a couple of hookups. Your collector will work more efficiently, and so will you. □

Anatole Burkin is a senior editor of *Fine Woodworking*.

# Current Work

It's impossible for all of *Fine Woodworking's* quarter-million readers to write an article for our reader-written magazine. But for a long time we've toyed with the idea of how to showcase the work of the many talented woodworkers, professionals and amateurs alike, who toil away in their shops, often in anonymity. Enter **Current Work**, our new department. Acknowledging the work of others is only one reason to launch

this department; another of its purposes is to provide design inspiration. In the same way that writers learn by reading the work of others, a woodworker can learn by looking at the work of peers. We'd like your comments, and we'd like to see photos of your work. Send entries to **Current Work**, *Fine Woodworking*, 63 S. Main St., Newtown, CT 06470, or get more details at our web site: [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com).

## Nina Browne

A gift to her husband, after two years of long-distance love—she attended North Bennet Street School in Boston, and he lived in Brooklyn—this sassafras linen press (18 $\frac{5}{8}$  in. deep by 40 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. wide by 62 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. high) was based on an original design made at the Byrdcliffe Colony in 1904. In striving to make multipurpose, functional furniture for the urban apartment-dweller, Browne made the press's top drawer into a flap-front desk, which pulls out to a 15-in.-wide writing surface. Photo by Lance Patterson.



## Robert M. Ressel

A middle-school technology education teacher by profession and a furniture maker by hobby, Ressel built this chair over a number of years. The legs and stretcher are maple, the seat is pine, and the arms, spindles and crests are red oak. The 40-in.-long back spindles are turned and taper to  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. at the ends. The carved knuckles are based on a drawing Ressel found in a book titled *The Windsor Style in America* (Running Press, 1997).



## J. Albert Hudson

An amateur woodworker, Hudson builds furniture for his family and friends. This Hepplewhite sideboard, 23 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. deep by 66 in. wide by 40 in. high, is truly a panoply of exotic woods. The carcass and top are sapele mahogany; the doors and drawers are crotch mahogany; the string inlay is holly; the checkered inlay is lemonwood and ebony; and the sunburst inlays at the corners are padauk, scorched holly and ebony.





### James T. Kelly

The maple and mahogany carousel, 21 in. dia. by 14 in. high, took four months to complete. Kelly says he wanted to make an old-style toy with few metal parts; in fact, aside from the wood, only nine screws and six lead weights were used in its construction. When the carousel is turned by hand, the horses move up and down.



### Ted Curtin and Rob Tarule

Starting with an unseasoned oak log, Curtin and Tarule finish a piece of furniture in two weeks, using tools and joinery techniques from the 16th and 17th centuries. The striking decorative effects of the Putnam cupboard in the photo were achieved entirely through the use of applied ornamentation, without any carving. The geometrical patterns on the drawer fronts and the positioning of the split spindles were very carefully calculated to create a sense of mass and solidity.



### Robbi Staples

Staples' client wanted a file cabinet that didn't look like one—something that wouldn't attract the attention of a nosy babysitter or an intruder. Placing a lamp or books on top disguised the fact that the mahogany and walnut cabinet (2 $\frac{3}{8}$  in. deep by 35 $\frac{3}{8}$  in. wide by 30 in. high) has a lift-up top. All panels are book-matched, including the single glued-up drawer front that looks like two drawers (it's divided by a  $\frac{1}{8}$ -in. saw kerf).





## Peter Shepard

The first one of these cherry cabinets was made eight years ago to store stereo components. Shepard designed the slatted sides as a change of pace from the more common frame-and-panel sides. The five squares in each door are glazed with antiqued glass, and the pulls are ebony. This cabinet is a top-seller at the shows Shepard attends, and since the first one, he has made the cabinet in all sizes, ranging from the 31-in.-high version in the photo to one that is 39 in. high, which is used as a server in a dining room.

## Randy Block

Armed with only a photo in a design book and a drawing from a turn-of-the-century Thonet catalog, Block built this mahogany bed for a client. Each curved piece, parts of which have a diameter of less than 2 in., is made of a minimum of 12 laminations, a process that took more than 10 hours per curved piece. The project took six months to complete, but his client was thrilled and gave him a commission to design and build a matching armoire.



## Michael Oliver

Curves and character are what Oliver was after when he designed this dresser. He also wanted to match the look of a sleigh bed he'd made. The dresser (14 in. deep in the middle by 33 in. wide by 38 in. high) is made of cherry, curly cherry, curly maple and purpleheart. The piece is finished with Watco oil, shellac and lacquer.

## Dean Ludwig

When he found some walnut boards from a tree planted in the early part of the 19th century, stored under years of bat manure and dust in the back of a barn, Ludwig knew he had something special. The cabinet was built for his sister-in-law to store her photo collection. The cabinet (15 in. deep by 27 in. wide by 68 in. high) is made from those walnut boards, with the exception of the ash drawer slides. It is finished with oil and wax.



## William N. Moore

It took six years of nights, weekends, holidays and vacations for Moore to complete the bottom case of his walnut and cherry block-front secretary. After retirement, it took him six months to build the top case. Research took him to Providence and Newport, R.I., Winterthur Museum in Delaware and Colonial Williamsburg in Virginia. After 18 drawers, 10 carved shells, three secret compartments and 84 dovetail joints, the piece was finished. His children are already discussing who will inherit the secretary.

### Tips for photographing your furniture

1. Use 35mm color print (negative) film of moderate speed (ISO 200-400).
2. Clean and dust the furniture.
3. No matter how you light the furniture, it will appear more three-dimensional if each plane has a different brightness. Take care, however, to avoid excessively bright highlights or dark shadows.
4. To be sure the photos will be free of distortion, avoid the use of wide-angle lenses, and photograph with the camera positioned even with the center of the furniture both vertically and horizontally.
5. Photograph the furniture from several angles. Include some head-on shots, as well as some shots that show both the front and side of a piece.
6. Keep the background simple. A cluttered or otherwise distracting background may draw the viewer's attention away from the subject.

# www.woodfinishing.org

Find out more about our 9-month Career Path or Summer Session courses in Wood Finishing and Restoration.

**Dakota County Technical College • 800-548-5502**

Study with Mitch Kohanek: Hands-on training in Furniture Restoration, Furniture Service Technician and Production Finishing.

Certification and excellent Job Placement.

Read more about us in *Fine Woodworking*, #137, p. 26

Call Mitch at 651-423-8362

Classes begin in August 2000, applications now being accepted.

A MEMBER OF THE MINNESOTA STATE COLLEGE AND UNIVERSITIES EQUAL OPPORTUNITY EMPLOYER/EDUCATOR

READER SERVICE NO. 66

# woodfinder

www.wdfindr.com

DEALERS: JOIN US NOW!  
CALL TOLL-FREE  
1-877-WDFINDR

- ▶ Lumber and veneer by species
- ▶ Local sawmills and lumberyards
- ▶ Mail-order suppliers
- ▶ Wholesale lumber
- ▶ Custom sawmill services
- ▶ Salvaged and recycled wood
- ▶ Turning blanks
- ▶ Certified and sustainable woods

*The place to find wood on the Internet!*

## VACUUM PRESSING

Instructional Video

100% money back guarantee.  
On special for \$19.95, regularly \$34

Professional Systems w/ a 4' x 8' Bag start at \$525!!



6" High Top Frame Press

**1-800-547-5484**

Quality VAKuum Products, Inc.  
43 Bradford St. — Concord, MA 01742  
Tel: 978-369-2949 — Fax: 978-369-2928  
WWW.QUALITYVAK.COM

READER SERVICE NO. 127

Operate 3-phase woodworking machines from a 1-phase source!

A Phasemaster® converter can run your entire shop on 1-phase at a fraction of the cost.



**Phasemaster® Rotary Converter**  
1-500 HP, 230/460V for all motor loads, heaters and CNC machines

**Engineered and Tested for Reliable Performance**

- ✓ Whisper Quiet Operation
- ✓ Two Year Warranty
- ✓ All Ratings in Stock for Immediate Shipment
- ✓ Money-Back Performance Guarantee



**KAY INDUSTRIES, INC.**  
604 N. Hill St., South Bend, IN 46617  
(219)289-5932 (fax) (800)348-5257

READER SERVICE NO. 81

# Sanding

A \$230 SAVINGS

dust free



Proudly made in the U.S.A.

SEE YOUR DEALER FOR OUR NEW VIDEO  
**NEW FEATURES**

**PERFORMAX**  
PRODUCTS CORPORATION

Call 800-334-4910 for the dealer nearest you or visit our website at [www.PerformaxProducts.com](http://www.PerformaxProducts.com)

Add 32" wide sanding capacity to your shop and we'll throw in a dust collector at a great price.

The **PERFORMAX 16-32® PLUS** drum sander will surface, dimension, and finish sand.

The **JET 650 cfm** dust collector with a 5 micron bag will pick up even the smallest particles.



Offer good while supplies last.

16-32 PLUS shown with optional INFEED & OUTFEED TABLES, METAL STAND and CASTERS.

READER SERVICE NO. 249

# Why use laser technology in the woodworking industry?

Answer: [www.ulsinc.com/wood.html](http://www.ulsinc.com/wood.html)

Call 800-859-7033 for a FREE introductory video.

**UNIVERSAL**  
LASER SYSTEMS INC.

16008 North 81st Street, Scottsdale, AZ 85260  
Tel: 800-859-7033 or 480-483-1214  
Fax: 480-483-5620 • [www.ulsinc.com](http://www.ulsinc.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 21

DELTA TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
31-750	NEW Bench Random Orbit Sander		
28-150	9" Bench Band Saw	195	155
50-860	850 CFM Air Cleaner	291	239
31-695	6" Belt/9" Disc Sander	441	299
23-710	Sharpening Center	228	155
31-460	4" Belt/Disc Sander	168	119
40-560	16" 2" speed Scroll Saw	230	129
40-540	16" var/spd Scroll Saw	243	159
11-990	12" Bench Drill Press	237	184
11-090	32" Radial Bench Drill Press	417	279
43-505	1/2" Bench Router/Shaper	398	299
22-540	12" Bench Top Planer	518	259
22-560	12-1/2" Planer w/ extra knives	572	329
36-865	Versa Feeder Stock Feeder	337	249
36-220	10" Compound Mitre Saw	294	199
37-070	6" var/spd Bench Jointer	362	265
14-650	Hollow Chisel Mortiser with chisels and bits	380	249
17-900	16-1/2" Floor Drill Press	490	329
17-924	Mortise Chisel Kit		Sale 65
34-555	Sliding Table	518	339
36-250	10" Slide Compound Saw	596	455
41-780	Oscillating Spindle Sander	261	194
40-650	Q3 18" Scroll Saw	600	389
36-905	30" Unifence	363	259
36-906	50" Unifence	454	319
36-444	10" Contractors Table Saw	852	589
33-830	10" Radial Arm Saw	851	729
37-285	6" Jointer w/ stand	424	345
37-380	8" Professional Jointer	1500	1095
31-250	NEW 18" Drum Sander	542	789
40-680	NEW 20" variable speed Scroll Saw		Sale 489
50-850	12 HP. 1200 CFM	395	295
50-851	2 HP. 1500 CFM	588	495

**The following tools have a \$50.00 rebate! Price shown is before rebate.**

**Rebates are for a limited time.**

36-475 10" Platinum Edition Contractors Table Saw w/ 30" unifence, cast iron wing, table board & carbide blade Sale 849

22-675 DC380 15" Planer Sale 1175

28-275 14" Band Saw 3/4 HP Sale 595

28-255 14" Platinum Edition Band Saw - 1 HP w/ mobile base, 18" rip fence, & 3/8" blade Sale 849

31-280 Sanding Center w/stand 1012 789

37-190 6" Deluxe Jointer 615 445

37-195 6" Professional Jointer 625 539

MLWAUKEE TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
6527-6	Sawzall with case	343	169
6537-226527	w/quick lok blade change	362	179
6521-21	NEW variable speed orbital Super Sawzall		375 185
0224-1	3/8" Drill 4.5 amp magnum	240	138
0234-6	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-850 rpm	255	134
0235-6	1/2" Drill w/keyless chuck	255	139
0244-1	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-600 rpm	255	142
0222-1	3/8" Drill 3.5 amp 0-1000 rpm	221	128
0228-6	3/8" Drill 3.5 amp 0-1000 rpm	214	124
0375-6	3/8" close quarter Drill	255	148
6176-20	14" Chop Saw	340	179
6546-6	6" Screwdriver 200 & 400 rpm	150	89
6547-6	6546-6 w/bits, 1/4" chuck & cs190		112
6390-2	7-1/4" Circular Saw w/cs	267	139
6397-6	8-1/8" v/spd Hammer Drill Kit	275	145
5371-6	1/2" v/spd Hammer Drill Kit	360	194
6145	4-1/2" Grinder 10,000 rpm	182	105
6494-6	10" Compound Mitre Saw	595	329
6266-21	Top Handle Jig Saw w/ case	319	159

FREUD CARBIDE TIPPED SAW BLADES				
Item	Description	Teeth	List	Sale
LJ82M010	Cut-off 10"	60	93	32
LJ84M011	Comb 10"	50	78	45
LJ85R010	Super Cut-off 10"	80	114	69
LJ85R012	Super Cut-off 12"	96	185	99
LM72M010	Ripping 10"	24	69	39
LU87R010	Thin Kerf 10"	24	72	49
LU88R010	Thin Kerf 10"	60	88	55
LJ98R010	Ultimate 10"	80	128	79
LU91M008	Compnd Mitre 8-1/2" 48	89	40	89
LU91M010	Compnd Mitre 10" 60	88	84	54
F4308	Quiet Blade 10"	40	95	54
SD308	8" Carbide Dado	230	119	
SD506	6" Carbide Super Dado	279	154	
SD508	8" Carbide Super Dado	344	175	
FB100	16 piece Forstner Bit Set	338	194	
94-100	5 pc. Router Bit Door System	320	169	

HITACHI TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
CBF82	8-1/2" Slide Compound Saw	1169	449
C10FS	10" Slide Compound Saw	1627	579
C15FB	15" Mitre Saw	1346	659
C10CD	10" dual bevel Compound Mitre Saw	550	265
NV45AB	Coil Roofing Nailer	935	379
NT50AE	Pinner 3/4" - 2"	512	129
EC12	2 HP, 4 gallon Compressor	561	279

MAKITA TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
5090DW	3-3/8" Drill Kit 9.6 volt	213	139
DA39D	3/8 angle Drill 9.6V	142	95
DA39D	3/8" angle Drill Kit 9.6V	216	139
6095DWES	6 volt Drill Kit w/2 batt	240	125
6095DWLE2	6095DW w/flashlight	263	139
632007-4	6 volt Battery	55	30
632002-4	7.2 volt Battery	45	28
18 VOLT MAKITA TOOLS			
6343DWA6	1/2" Drill Kit	458	255
5620DWA	6-1/2" Circular Saw Kit	458	255
DK1016	1/2" Drill & 6-1/2" Saw combo kit		698 389
DK1021BL	18 volt Combo Kit. Includes drill, 6-1/2" Circ. Saw, Recipro Saw, and flashlight		Sale 579
CORDLESS DRILLS			
WITH 2.0 AMP HIGH CAPACITY BATTERIES			
6213DWA6	12V 3/8" Drill Kit	293	169
6233DWA6	14V 3/8" Drill Kit	358	205
9900B	3"x21" Belt Sander w/bag	322	165
9924DB	3"x24" Belt Sander w/bag	333	169
N1900B	3-1/4" Planer with case	268	142
1912B	4-3/8" Planer	360	205
N9514B	4" Disc Grinder 4.6 amp	106	65
DA3000R3/8"	Angle Drill	328	185
60138R	1/2" Drill Rev. 6 amp	268	149
9401	4" x 24" Belt Sander w/bag	416	219
5007NBK7-1/4"	Circ Saw w/ case	238	125
LS1011	10" Slide Compound Saw	807	429
LS1211	12" Slide Compound Saw	1370	695
3901	Plate Joiner Kit	318	159
3612C	3 HP Plunge Router	503	265
LS1040	10" Compound Mitre Saw	474	249
LS1013	10" Dual Compound Slide Miter Saw	1087	599
BO5010	5" Random Orbit Sander	121	69
LS1220	12" Compound Mitre Saw	678	379
9227C	7/9" Polisher	338	195
2702	8-1/4" Table Saw	538	299
2703	10" Table Saw	568	309

SENCO AIR NAILERS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
SFN30	NEW Finishing Nailer w/cse	459	239
SNS45	Stapler 7/16" crown, 1" - 2"		540 365
SLP20	Pinner w/cs 5/8 - 1-5/8"	422	189
SKS	Stapler 5/8 - 1-1/2"	390	259
SN70	Framing - Clip Hd 2 - 3-1/2"	725	449
SN65	Framing - Full Hd 2 - 3-1/2"	709	369
SN600	NEW Framing 2 - 3-1/2"	699	339
SFN40	Finish Nailer 1-1/4 - 2-1/2"	569	349
BOSTITCH AIR NAILERS			
N80S-1	Stick Nailer		Sale 299
RN45	Coil Roof Nailer 3/4 - 1-3/4"	485	339
NR6FN-2K	Finishing Nailer w/ case	557	269
BT35-2K	Brad Tacker 5/8" - 1-3/8" w/ case, oil, & brads		279 119
MNIFS	Flooring Stapler 15 gauge	902	539
S325X-1K	Finish Stapler 1/2" - 1-3/8" w/ case & oil	269	135
JORGENSEN ADJUSTABLE HANDSCREWS			
Item#	Length	Capacity	List Sale of 6
#0	8"	4-1/2"	20.35 12.95 69.95
#1	10"	6"	23.30 14.50 79.95
#2	12"	8-1/2"	26.75 16.25 92.50
#3	14"	10"	33.85 20.25 114.95
PONY CLAMP FIXTURES			
Model	Description	List	Sale
50	3/4" Black Pipe	15.45	8.50 94.00
52	1/2" Black Pipe	12.65	6.95 79.00
PANASONIC CORDLESS			
EY6431NQK	NEW 1/2" 15.6V drill kit with two 3 amp-hr Ni-Mh batteries, 45 minute charger, & case	372	205
EY6431FKW	NEW 1/2" 15.6V drill kit with two 2 amp-hr Ni-Cad batteries, 30 minute charger, & case	342	189
EY6407NQK	NEW 1/2" 12V drill kit with two 3 amp-hr Ni-Mh batteries, 45 minute charger, & case	339	189
EY6406FKW	NEW 3/8" 12V drill kit with two 2 amp-hr Ni-Cad batteries, 30 minute charger, & case	305	169
EYC133	5-3/8" 15.6V Wood Cutting Saw and Drill Kit		650 379
BIESEMEYER FENCES			
B-50	50" Commer. Saw	443	325
T-SQUARE 52	52" Homeshop	360	275
T-SQUARE 40	40" Homeshop	335	255
T-SQUARE 28	28" Homeshop	325	245
ARY AIR NAILERS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
0241SK	Brad Nailer 3/8" - 1-9/16"	180	79
0626SK	1/4" Crown Stapler 3/8" - 1" 194	89	49
Above nailers come w/case, fasteners, oil & wrenches			
STABLA LEVELS			
25010	10" die cast Torpedo Level	21.95	
24640	24" Level w/ hand holes	54.95	
24670	48" Level w/ hand holes	54	
24632	"Jambor Level" designed for setting door jams. Includes 78" level		Sale 129

**2000 TOOL CATALOG AVAILABLE**  
 Call Toll-Free 1-800-328-0457 In Minn. Call (651)224-4859  
 FAX: (651)224-8263 • www.7cornershdw.com  
**CHECK • MONEY ORDER • VISA • MASTERCARD • DISCOVER**  
**SEVEN CORNERS ACE HDW. INC.**  
 216 West 7th St. • St. Paul, MN 55102 • Est. 1933

\*\*\*\*\*

**We are one of the last mail order companies to provide FREE FREIGHT!**

Order with confidence from **Tools On Sale™**.

There are no hidden charges.

\*\*\*\*\*

**TOOLS ON SALE™**  
 AMERICA'S LOWEST PRICED TOOLS  
 FREE FREIGHT TO THE 48 CONTINENTAL STATES ON EVERY ITEM  
 PRICES SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE

DEWALT TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
DW124K	1/2" right angle Drill	590	329
DW321K	Top Handle Jigsaw Kit	300	164
DW364	7-1/4" Circ. Saw w/brake	294	155
DW378G	7-1/4" Framer's Saw	210	159
DW610	1-1/2 HP 2 handle Router	266	149
DW411K	1/4 sheet Palm Sander w/cs	588	58
DW682K	Biscuit Joiner with case	448	169
DW705	12" Compound Mitre Saw	734	339
DW621	2 HP Plunge Router	400	199
DW677K	3-1/4" Planer with case	268	155
DW431	3 x 21 v/spd Belt Sander	338	188
DW421	5" Palm Ran. Orb Sander	144	75
DW423	Palmgrip Random Orbit Sander - variable speed	170	92
DW272	Drywall Gun, 0-4000, 6.3 amp	160	95
DW276	Drywall Gun, 0-2500, 6.5 amp	160	99

DEWALT CORDLESS DRILLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
DW972K	2-3/8" variable speed w/ two 12V XR batteries	362	184
DW991K	2-3/8" variable speed w/ two 14.4V XR batteries	415	209

Above drill kits come w/ charger & tool case!

DEWALT 18 VOLT CORDLESS TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
DW933K	Jigsaw Kit	468	275
DW938K	Recipro Saw Kit	520	269
DW995K-2	1/2" Drill Kit w/ 2 batt.	542	259
DW996K-2	1/2" Drill/Hammer Drill Kit	544	249
DW937K	5-3/8" Saw Kit	458	249
DW995K-2	DW995K Drill, DW936 Saw and case		Sale 399
DW995K-2	DW995K 18V drill kit, DW938 18V reciprocating saw, & case		399

NEW 24 VOLT DEWALT TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
DW006K	1/2" Drill/Hammer Drill Kit	560	299
DW007K	6-1/2" Circular Saw	560	299
DW008K	Reciprocating Saw	560	299

DEWALT BENCH TOP TOOLS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
DW708	12" Slide Mitre Saw		Sale 649
DW788	20" Scroll Saw		Sale 469
DW733	12" Planer w/ extra blades		Sale 399
DW744	10" Portable Table Saw		Sale 499

DAVID WHITE INSTRUMENTS			
Model	Description	List	Sale
LP6-20A	Sight Level package 20x	329	245
LP6-20XLA	LP6-20A with 9056 tripod and 7620 rod	409	279
L78-300	Level Transit - 26x	739	579
L78-300P	above Level with optical plum		869 649
AL76-900	Automatic Level - Transit - 18x		666 519
AL76-900P	above Level with tripod & rod		799 559
ALP8-22	Automatic level - 22x with tripod and rod		Sale 359
ALP8-26	Automatic Level - 26x		854 325
ALP8-26	Above level with tripod & rod		Sale 389

BOSCH			
Model	Description	List	Sale
1587VS	Top Handle "CLIC" Jig Saw	292	139

# Fine Woodworking Back Issue Sale!

Whether you're just missing a few, or just beginning your collection, you won't want to miss out on this sale. Unfortunately, some issues are close to selling out. And once they're sold out, they're gone for good. So, to avoid disappointment, order today!



113

- Buying lumber
- Spray systems
- Strategies for clamping
- Files, rasps, and rifflers



114

- Preparing a scraper
- Tablesaw tune-up
- Using wood dyes
- Angled tenons



115

- Half-mortise locks
- Waterborne lacquers
- Six-inch jointers
- Bent lamination



116

- Router bits
- Finishing brushes
- String inlay
- Shaker stand



117

- Applying varnish
- Wood drawer slides
- Coopers chair seat
- Choosing plywood



118

- Cherry highboy
- Tropical hardwoods
- Padding lacquer
- Benchtop mortisers



119

- Block planes
- Rubbing out a finish
- Using a belt sander
- Ogee bracket feet



120

- Tablesaw blades
- Making an end table
- Aged paint finish
- Supporting shelves



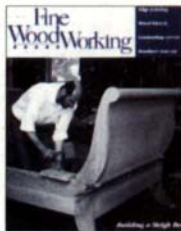
121

- Belt sander review
- Veneered armoire
- Basic layout tools
- Dovetail saw tune-up



123

- Router table
- Contractor's saws
- Mantel clock
- Cock beaded drawers



124

- Edge-jointing
- Wood bleach
- Laminating curves
- Bandsaw tune-up



125

- Waterborne finishes
- Building a stool
- All about sandpaper
- Fitting a drawer

To order, use the attached form or call **1-800-888-8286**, operator **W748**.  
Or visit us online at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)

At only \$4.95, you'll want to hurry!

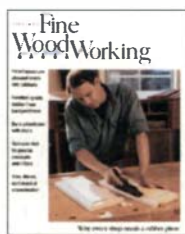
Quantities  
are limited.  
Order today!

Save 28% off the cover price. To ensure best selection order soon!



126

- Coopering a door
- Fuming wood
- Jigsaw survey
- Dadoes and rabbets



128

- Face frames turn plywood boxes into cabinets
- Build a bookcase with doors
- Lumber from your backyard



129

- Safety tips for routing
- A comeback for backsaws
- Build a simple wall shelf
- Shop designed for workflow



130

- Engineering table drawers
- Why switch to air power
- Blotch-free cherry finish
- Mortising strategies



131

- Make a Mission mantelpiece
- How to finish small objects
- Great shop in a two-car garage
- Good boards from bad wood



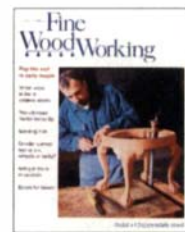
133

- Tablesaw fences
- What's new in water-based finishes
- Shop heating
- Biscuiting tips



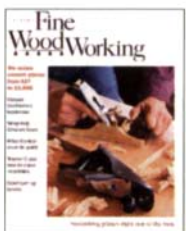
134

- Dovetail jigs put through their paces
- Three ways to cut a bead
- Basement shop
- More power for cordless drills



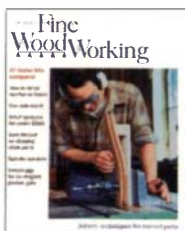
135

- 3 ways to build cabinet doors
- The ultimate router tenon jig
- Sanding tips
- Antique tools at auction



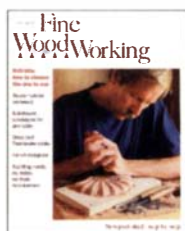
136

- Smooth planes from \$27 to \$3,800
- Classic Craftsman bookcase
- Mike Dunbar on milk paint
- How to carve linenfolds
- Bowl-turning basics



137

- 17 router bits compared
- How to finish nonflat surfaces
- Oak sideboard
- Spindle sanders



138

- Router tables reviewed
- Sideboard strategies for any style
- Drop-leaf Pembroke table
- Finish strippers

For a complete listing of available back issues, visit our Web site at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com) or call us at the number below.

To order, use the attached form or call **1-800-888-8286**, operator **W748**.  
Or visit us online at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)

## Wood moves

In the first paragraph of his book *Understanding Wood* (The Taunton Press, 1980), R. Bruce Hoadley wrote the most important words ever written for woodworkers: “Wood evolved as a functional tissue of plants rather than as a material designed to satisfy the needs of woodworkers.” Everyone of us should regularly go back and read these words, but even if we do not, wood itself will remind us. In other words, we have to work around the nature of wood.

Wood’s most persistent attribute is that it moves in response to changes in the relative humidity of the air that surrounds it. All woodworkers will, from time to time, be humbled by this fact. For that reason, a beginner woodworker just setting up shop should acquire not only a tablesaw, planes and chisels but also a thermometer, a humidity gauge, a moisture meter and a copy of *Understanding Wood*. While it is a good idea to read the entire book, you will want to photocopy and keep in the shop the graph on p. 69 that charts the amount of water in wood at a given relative humidity. Before beginning a project, determine the wood’s current moisture content and then compare it to the extremes it will experience in its intended environment. It will save you a lot of grief.

Although I have been a professional woodworker for 28 years, I got my come-uppance a couple of years ago, the first winter after my chair-making school moved out of a drafty, poorly heated cinder-block industrial building into a new shop that was built, insulated and heated like a house. We use 50 Windsor chair seats a month for our classes and our own production. These are made of 1¾-in.-thick eastern white pine that we store in an unheated outbuilding. Roughly once a month we pull out enough planks to make up the seats needed, buck the planks into 22-in. lengths and glue them up into seat blanks.

In mid-January, after a six-week holiday break, we began our routine in preparation for the first class of the year. By the end of the day, we had gotten only as far as bucking the pine to length. We left the wood piled on the shop floor overnight. Upon arriving the next morning, we were stunned to see gaping splits in the ends of all of the pine. Eight hundred dollars of wood was ruined.

We immediately set out to discover what happened. The humid-

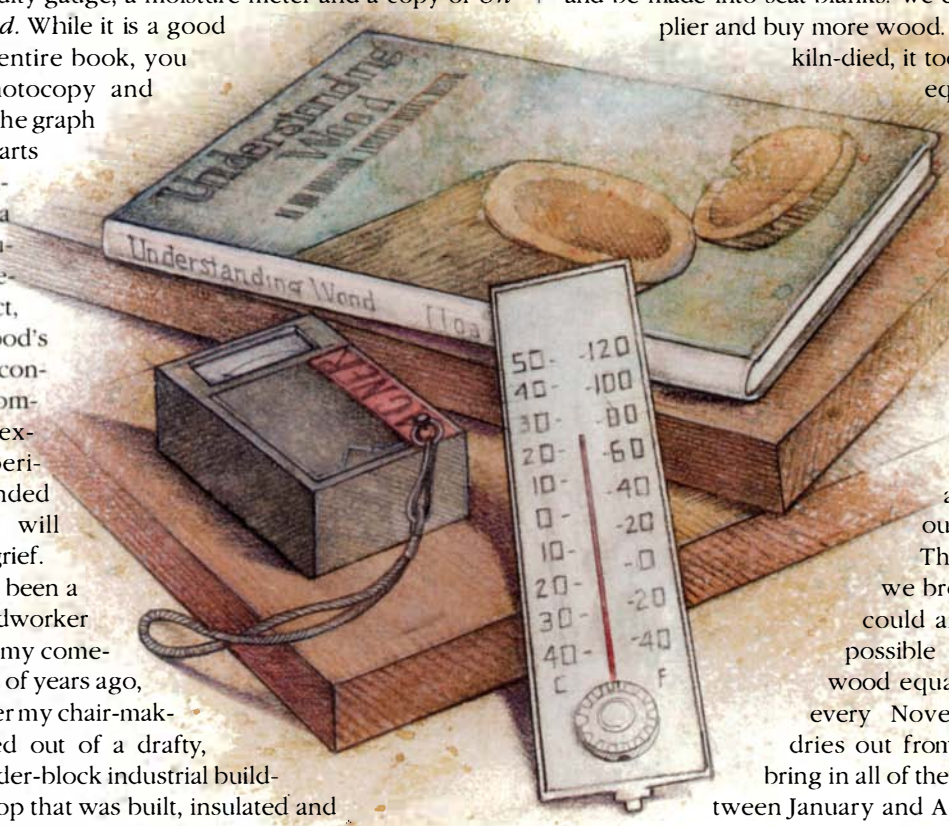
ity gauge read 28%. The new building was far drier than a normal house. The heat had come on in October and had been drying out the building for several months. In a home, people cook, shower and breathe regularly—processes that help raise the relative humidity. Here, there were only a few lungs at work five days a week, eight hours a day. The centrally heated shop was like a desert. When we checked Hoadley’s chart, we found that the shop’s relative humidity would dry wood to under 6%. We checked the wood with a moisture meter. After a rainy fall the wood was at 12%. When brought into this extreme environment, the wood began to dry so fast that it split. We had never had this problem because our old, uninsulated shop was so drafty that it never got this dry.

We were in a bind. The wood in the outbuilding had to come in and be made into seat blanks. We could not even go to our supplier and buy more wood. Although his wood had been kiln-dried, it too was stored in his sheds and equalized at the same 12% as ours. It would experience the same shock.

We brought in enough planks for several classes and piled them on the shop floor. We monitored them with a moisture meter until the planks got into the 8% range. A day or so before the class began, we were able to buck the wood without it splitting.

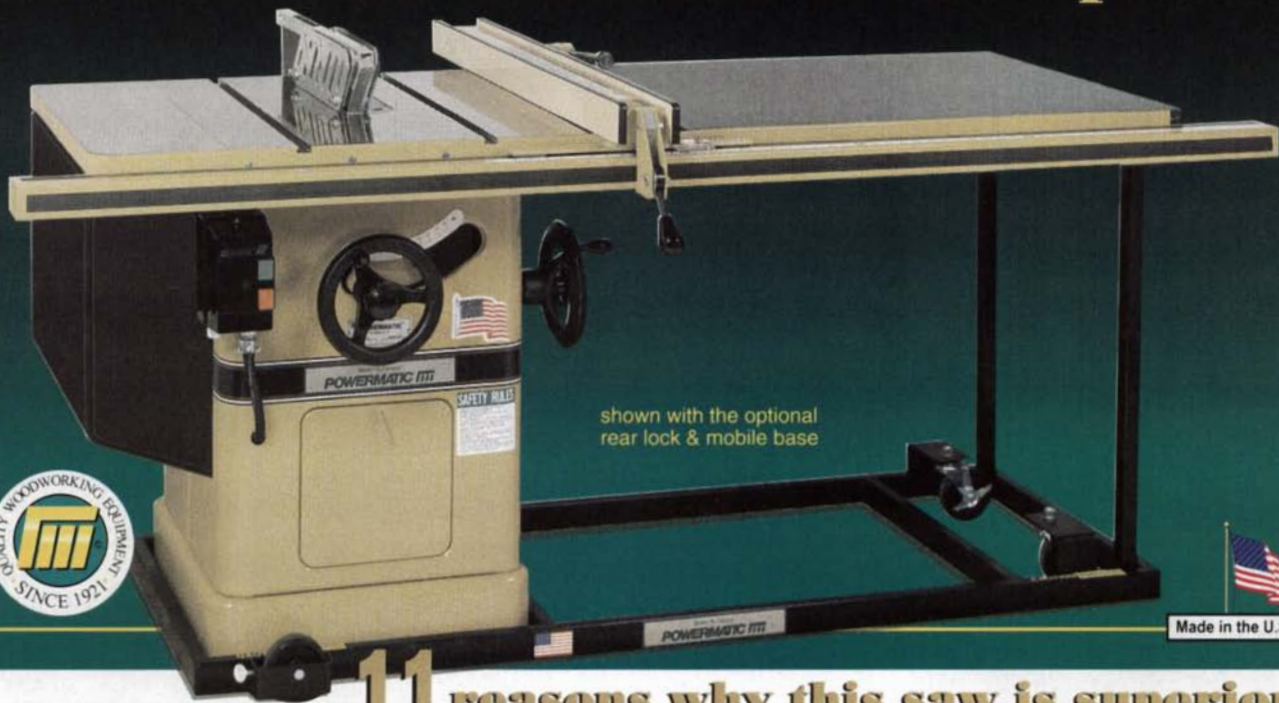
Through the rest of the winter we brought in all of the planks we could and squirreled them in every possible nook and corner to let the wood equalize with the building. Now, every November—before the building dries out from the summer humidity—we bring in all of the pine planks we will need between January and April. We buck them to length and store the 22-in. cuts in the kitchen closet and the upstairs storage room. This allows them to equalize slowly with the air in the building.

Our experience in the new building underscores a common misconception—that kiln-drying has freed woodworkers from worries about moisture content. I recently read such a comment posted on a Internet bulletin board. This posting was as foolhardy as saying because we have technology we can ignore Mother Nature. Kiln-drying may bring wood down to 6%, but it is seldom that dry when you buy it. As soon as the wood is brought out of the kiln, it starts equalizing to the higher relative humidity. Because the wood passes through lots of middle men who generally store it outdoors, there is ample time to complete the process





**When second-best is never an option.**



shown with the optional rear lock & mobile base



Made in the U.S.A.

## 11 reasons why this saw is superior

- 1** The Powermatic Model 66 10" Tilting Arbor Saw remains the **heaviest saw** in its class. A one-piece cast iron trunnion makes this machine virtually vibration free and offers superior cutting accuracy.
- 2** Powermatic pioneered the **left tilt blade** and it has *always* been a feature of the 66 (those other guys are just now catching on!) Tilting away from the fence reduces risk of binding or kickback, and keeps any "chip outs" on the *inside* of beveled cuts.
- 3** The **Accu-Fence®** is *the* premier table saw fence system on the market. It features a positive lock so you set it only once - no more searching for position. The laminated side panels can be adjusted or replaced in mere minutes.
- 4** Our high-efficiency **3VX belt drive** system delivers more motor power to the blade, instead of converting it to frictional heat.
- 5** A 3/4" shaft (turned down to take a standard 5/8" blade) allows the use of **larger arbor bearings**, which provide higher load capacity.
- 6** Other saws have backlash in their tilting and elevating mechanisms. The Model 66 has **exclusive adjustments** in its tilting and elevating mechanisms to *prevent* backlash!
- 7** **Cast iron handwheels** allow smoother adjustments to the trunnion.
- 8** While other manufacturers import their iron, Powermatic uses the **Meehanite™ process** in its own foundry, ensuring quality control of all its castings.
- 9** **Baffle plates** in the cabinet direct sawdust to the 4" diameter dust outlet for more effective dust collection.
- 10** The **access door** means no more reaching around saw components at cleanup time, and allows you to retrieve the arbor nut if accidentally dropped.
- 11** The table is bolted to the stand in three places - not four - offering easier adjustment if needed. And it's **fine ground** to a mirror polish. After all, not only should the 66 perform the best... it ought to *look* the best!

**VALUE-ADDED PACKAGE**

Standard Model 66 10" Table Saw  
 Accu-Fence System with 50" Rails  
 Two Cast Iron Extensions  
**FREE** 28" x 36" Extension Table  
**FREE** Adjustable Steel Support Legs  
**FREE** Dado Insert  
**FREE** Motor Cover

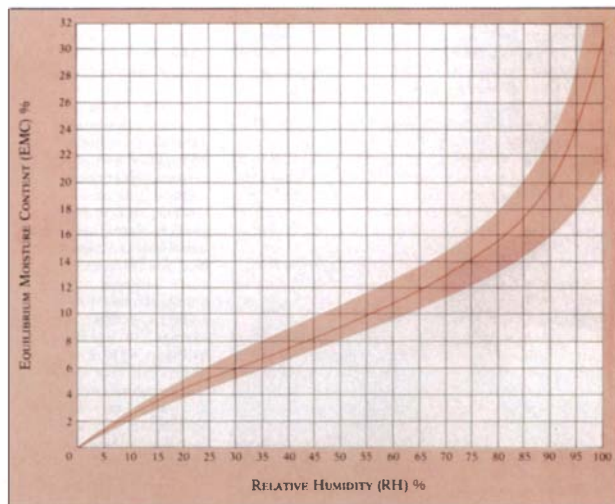
**a \$292 Value!**

# Rules of Thumb (continued)

of equalizing before you buy it.

As I was contemplating this column, I monitored a pile of clear 1-in.-thick pine purchased this summer from a local lumberyard. The wood was stored in a well-protected, three-sided shed—precisely the same conditions as at the yard. At the time of purchase the wood was at 10%. A severe drought followed, with one bone-dry, crystal-clear day after another. By mid-August the wood was down to 6%, as it probably had been when in the kiln. After Hurricane Dennis passed through and brought some badly needed rain, the moisture content increased to 12%. Only a couple of weeks later we had to endure Hurricane Floyd. The moisture shot up to 18%. Two weeks later it was between 10% and 12%. The lesson is to equalize wood in the shop before working it. Monitor it with a moisture meter.

A woodworker whose shop is in the cellar needs to be even more conscious of the problems with moisture content. The air in an average cellar is far more humid than air above ground. A dehumidifier helps some, but keep an eye on your humidity gauge. Keep your moisture meter and Hoadley's chart handy (above).



**Water in wood.** As the relative humidity increases, so does the moisture content of a piece of wood. Therefore, wood stored in your basement will have a higher moisture content than wood in your attic. In this graph from *Understanding Wood*, the horizontal numbers indicate relative humidity, and the vertical numbers indicate moisture content.

Earlier in my life I worked in a cellar. After a couple of problems with warping, I learned to store my wood elsewhere. The short stuff went in the attic. I was not beyond storing longer pieces under the bed

so they could equalize with the house's air before being taken downstairs to be worked. Of course, some guys never learn. Not too long ago, a fellow woodworker sought advice for his most recent idea. He wanted to cut discs off freshly fallen logs of an appropriate diameter with a chainsaw and use these as tops for a set of bar stools. When he left he was very annoyed with me and still unable to understand why I insisted the discs would split.

Note: This year The Taunton Press will publish a revised version of *Understanding Wood*.

## Taking Band Saws to New Levels

You have heard about them, you know that they are called the best, now it is time to own one. Our band saws have won an Editors Choice Award and our customers rave about them. But don't take our word, call today and order your free demonstration video and see for yourself.

Designed by Laguna Tools and imported from Italy, we have the finest and largest selection of European band saws in the country.

- Best specifications in the industry
- Dynamically balanced cast iron flywheels
- Wider blades for straighter and smoother re-sawing
- Euro guides
- Conforms to the toughest dust standards
- Quiet and smooth with more power
- Robot welded steel frames
- More resaw height
- Rack and Pinion
- Easy blade change
- Mobility kit available
- Manufactured in Italy
- Order a custom made band saw to suit your needs.

### LAGUNA TOOLS

*You Build With Wood, We Build With Trust.*

**800-234-1976**

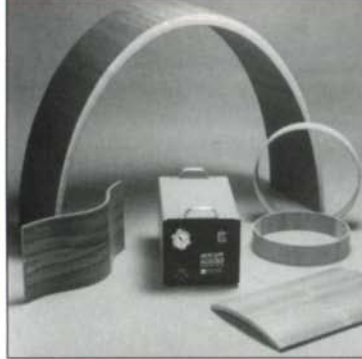
2265 Laguna Canyon Rd. Laguna Beach, CA 92651  
(949) 494-7006 • FX (949) 497-1346

E Mail: [lagunatools@earthlink.net](mailto:lagunatools@earthlink.net)  
Web: [www.lagunatools.com](http://www.lagunatools.com)

**800-234-1976**

100 Central Ave. So. Kearny, New Jersey 07032  
(973) 491-0102 • FX (973) 491-0591

**The BEST and EASIEST Way To Veneer and Laminate**



- Industrial Vacuum Bags
- Vacuum Pumps and Generators
- Hot and Cold Membrane Presses

**FREE Catalog**  
**FREE INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO WITH PURCHASE**

**MERCURY VACUUM PRESSES, INC.**  
 P.O. 2232 • Fort Bragg, CA 95437 USA  
 1-800-995-45  
 www.mcn.org/c/mvp  
 707-964-7557 Fax 707-964-7606

READER SERVICE NO. 130

**See the affordable Lamello Classic C2**

**Swiss Biscuit Joiner**

- New swivel front fence: 0° to 90° with notches at 22.5°, 45° & 67.5°
  - New increased maximum depth
  - New extra-flat anti-slip pads
  - New stop square for vertical work
- Power, precision and balanced design for use on wood, laminates, solid surface and aluminum materials.



**Purchase online at [www.csaw.com](http://www.csaw.com)**

**or call 1-800-252-6355!**

**E-Mail: [lamello@csaw.com](mailto:lamello@csaw.com)**

**COLONIAL SAW**  
 MACHINERY SALES AND SERVICE

READER SERVICE NO. 238



**RAISED PANEL DOORS**

✓ Check Out Our Features:

- ✓ Fast Delivery
- ✓ Great Prices
- ✓ Drawer Fronts
- ✓ Superior Quality
- ✓ 135 Door Designs
- ✓ 10 Wood Species
- ✓ No Order Too Small
- ✓ Dovetail Drawers

Order our brochure, please enclose \$2.00 for shipping.



**Scherr's**  
**Cabinet & Doors, Inc.**

5315 Burdick Expressway East • Minot, ND 58701  
 Phone 701-839-3384 • Fax 701-852-6090  
 email: [doormker@minot.com](mailto:doormker@minot.com)  
[www.scherrs.com](http://www.scherrs.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 51

**Aqua Cote™**  
 WATER-BASED COATINGS

**YOUR FINISH SOLUTION**

- Environmentally Safe
- Non-Combustible
- No Hazardous Waste
- Low VOC
- Non-Toxic
- Consistent Results
- Non-Flammable
- Water Cleanup
- Easy to Use

**CASH COATINGS CO.**

7001 Raywood Road  
 Madison, WI 53713  
 Toll-free 888-729-1591  
 In Wis. 608-222-2445  
 Fax 608-222-8733

**What the World is Coming to...**

READER SERVICE NO. 156



**No Matter How You Cut It  
 Tenryu Gold Medal Is  
 The Winning Combination**

Now, make exceptionally clean and accurate cross, rip and miter cuts in all woods with the TENRYU Gold Medal 10" x 40t blade.

- Splinter-free cuts in all woods—even chip-free cuts in melamine
- Unbelievably quiet—even when cutting thick hardwoods
- Less than .002" run out for smooth and accurate cuts
- Extra hard carbide teeth remain sharp longer than the best competing brand—even when cutting abrasive materials

Ask for the Gold Medal at your favorite dealer or call 800-951-SAWS

**TENRYU** TENRYU AMERICA, INC.  
 4301 Woodland Park Dr., Ste. 104, W. Melbourne, FL 32904  
 Making quality saw blades since 1910 Fax: (407) 951-2250 • [www.tenryu.com](http://www.tenryu.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 134

**Wide Belt Performance  
 ...At About 1/3 The Cost!**



**5-Year  
 Warranty**

**Free  
 30-Day Trial!**

**Made in  
 U.S.A.**

Cabinet shop owners across the U.S. call Woodmaster's 26" and 38" drum sanders "the best kept secret in woodworking." These commercial-duty sanders fill the niche between slow hand methods and expensive wide belt sanders. And there's no sacrifice in quality. But don't take our word for it . . . call today for free information and the names of Woodmaster owners nearest you. This way, you can find out first-hand how a Woodmaster sander might be just the machine you've been looking for.

**1-800-821-6651 ext. DS70**

Woodmaster Tools, Inc. 1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept. DS70  
 Kansas City, Missouri 64120  
[www.WoodmasterTools.com](http://www.WoodmasterTools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 79

# Q & A

## Repairing the motor on a drill press

*When I switch on my drill press, I have to give the chuck a twist with my hand before it will start. After that it runs fine. It is a one-phase, 3/4-hp machine. What's wrong with the motor?*

—George Seifert, Shoreview, Minn.

**Gene Holladay replies:** If the motor requires a quick twist to start, the capacitor start circuit is not functioning. This may be due to the centrifugal switch not making contact, or it may be because of a burned-out capacitor.

If the centrifugal switch is not making contact, dust could be the culprit, or the contacts could be burned or carbonized. There is an ongoing debate on which is the best way to clean the dust out of the motor housing: vacuuming or blowing. I usually try a combination of both, first attempting to dislodge the dust buildup with a high-pressure air blast followed with a good vacuuming.

If this doesn't work, and you have some familiarity with motors, you can disconnect the motor, remove the four longitudinal case screws and carefully remove one or both end plates. Then take a look at the switch contacts (see the

photos below). Impacted dust can be removed, if that is the problem, and the contacts can be carefully sanded or filed if there is evidence of pitting or carbon buildup. I use a small piece of 220-grit or finer sandpaper on a flat stick, making sure to clean away any loose grit when I am finished.

Once cleaned, the motor can be reassembled and tested. If it starts, the problem has been solved. If it still takes a quick twist to start it, the capacitor is suspect. By taking the part number off the existing capacitor, you can get a replacement from a motor repair shop for under \$20. The shop will also do the replacement for a nominal fee. (The last capacitor I installed was on a 1-hp motor at a total cost of about \$12.)

A third remote cause of the starting circuit not closing sometimes occurs in older motors that use sleeve bushings in lieu of bearings. The longitudinal bushings wear and can cause too much play in the armature. Eventually, the centrifugal switch will not close when the motor is stopped. When this happened on one of my old motors, I was able to fix it by cutting a brass shim in the shape of a washer and adding it to the armature shaft next to the sleeve bushing. This was

several years ago, and the motor has worked fine since.

[Gene Holladay is a woodworker and electrical engineer in Audubon, Pa.]

**A glue to endure the dishwasher**  
*I am making stack-laminated turned wooden bowls, and I want to be able to put them in the dishwasher. What kind of glue should I use?*

—Will Sanders, Chattanooga, Tenn.

**William Tandy Young replies:** Dishwashers generate a combination of heat and moisture that is tough on glue. The glue you choose should hold up to repeated washings and should be rigid after it cures, so your gluelines won't creep. In general, these requirements tend to rule out type-II polyvinyl acetate (PVA) glue, urea resin glue and epoxy.

Although type-II PVA glue is moisture resistant, the heat produced inside the dishwasher will likely soften it somewhat. The same thing is true of epoxy, unless it was designed to have a high heat deflection temperature (HDT). If you want to use epoxy, check to make sure that its rated HDT is higher than the drying temperature of the dishwasher.

Urea resin glue is not an ideal choice,

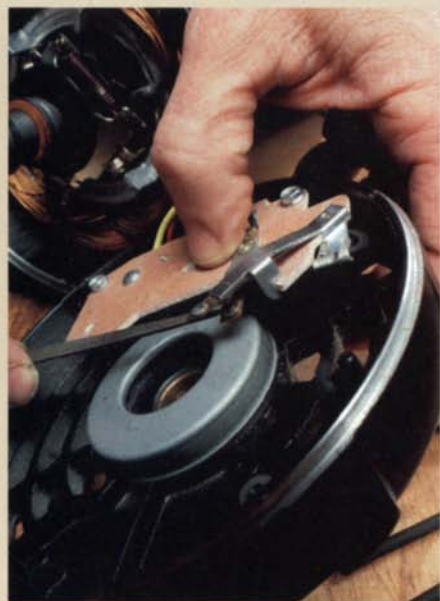
## CLEANING THE CONTACTS OF A STALLED MOTOR



**Open up.** The end plate is removed to access the centrifugal switch.



**Check the contacts.** With the motor open, inspect the contacts on the end plate.



**File them clean.** A small ignition file or sandpaper glued to a small stick is used to clean pitted or carbonized contacts.

**Four  
NEW  
Nailers and  
Staplers from  
Porter-Cable**

# If there is room for improvement, we can't find it.

Every square inch of Porter-Cable's new line of finishing nailers and staplers has been comprehensively redesigned. Each lightweight model includes so many new features, you'll be astonished at how all the innovations fit so securely in the palm of your hand.

## The Textured Rubber Grip

immediately reduces vibration and eliminates any discomfort or inconsistency caused by surface temperature changes while working.

## The Smooth Latch Mechanism

(featured on all brad nailer models) only requires a single touch to open the magazine and a gentle push to close. Simplicity of design lets you do your job more quickly and without added hassle.

## The Soft Touch Rubber-Coated Magazine End Cap

(featured on all brad nailers) enables a smooth, quick reload. This area also features a convenient storage compartment for the non-marring rubber tip.

## The Easy-Load Magazine Unit

is designed for quick access to brads or staples, depending on which of the four new models you choose. This feature allows for a fast reload so you can get back to work.

**The Adjustable Depth Control** is standard on each model, including positive pre-set detents that offer precise depth adjustment by simply turning a thumbwheel under the trigger.

**The Side-Mounted Quick Release Mechanism** ensures expedient removal of infrequent jammed fasteners without compromising your view of the wood surface. We also included a rubber tip on the foot to prevent any marring of the wood surface.

**The 360° Rotating Adjustable Exhaust Port** gives the operator complete command over the direction of the air exhaust. Whether the tool is positioned overhead, below, or to the side, the port can always face the opposite direction. When it comes to woodworking, we know how important the details are.

**The Powerful New Motor** features a bored out cylinder that dramatically increases the performance of the tool. This motor equips every new nailer and stapler with 20% more power than previous models. The extra juice lets operators drive consistently throughout the workday, from the first nail to the thousandth.

**The Ergonomically Sculpted Housing** sports a series of contours that effortlessly align with the shape and movement of your hand. From the first moment of contact through continuous hours of use, the tool will feel like a natural extension of your arm. Each model is also specially balanced for even weight distribution when held upright or at a variety of angles for easy handling.

**The Slender Nose Configuration** deftly grants access to corners that previously may have proved to be a hard fit.

The streamlined design with the flattened, unobtrusive top side also offers the operator a clear line of sight to the work area. This way, you can focus on what matters most.

**To Find Out More**, visit your local Porter-Cable retailer. For a complete list of retailers, or for a free catalog, go on-line to [www.porter-cable.com](http://www.porter-cable.com). We've updated our website to include everything from the latest news at our headquarters in Jackson, Tennessee, to direct links to retailers nationwide. To locate the dealer nearest you, call 1-800-487-8665. (In Canada, call 519-836-2840.)

**PORTER-CABLE**  
PROFESSIONAL POWER TOOLS SINCE 1906



Proud Sponsor of THE NEW YANKEE WORKSHOP on Public Television



**BN125A**  
18 Gauge  
1 1/4" Brad Nailer  
Length: 5/8" - 1 1/4"  
Restrictive Fire



**BN200A**  
18 Gauge  
2" Brad Nailer  
Length: 3/4" - 2"  
Restrictive Fire



**NS100A**  
18 Gauge  
1/4" Crown Stapler  
Length: 1/2" - 1"  
Restrictive Fire



**NS150A**  
18 Gauge  
1/4" Crown Stapler  
Length: 1/2" - 1 1/2"  
Bottom Fire

either—even though it's rigid and water resistant—because it tends to fail with repeated exposure to a combination of moisture and heat, especially in solid wood laminations.

That leaves you with two logical choices. One is resorcinol, which is waterproof, heat resistant and has good rigidity. Resorcinol's downside is its dark maroon color, which creates visible gluelines in lighter woods.

The other good choice is polyurethane glue. While not completely waterproof (don't believe the ads), it's certainly water resistant enough to withstand dishwasher punishment. Polyurethane also has superb heat resistance, ample creep resistance and does not produce a visible glueline.

To help ensure that your bowls hold up well, use a stable, weather-resistant wood species. If possible, turn the bowl walls to a thickness somewhere between  $\frac{5}{16}$  in. and  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. so you'll have ample surface area in the gluelines while avoiding thick masses of solid wood that could overstress gluelines with moisture-related movement. Finish the bowls with a moisture-resistant finish such as Waterlox

to help minimize wood movement. [William Tandy Young is the author of *The Glue Book* (The Taunton Press, 1999).]

### **Are bearing guides worth the price?**

*I'm considering replacing the block guides on my 14-in. bandsaw with bearing guides. Do the advantages of bearing guides outweigh the cost?*

—Michael Danask, Mehlville, Mo.

**Lonnie Bird replies:** In recent years there has been a lot of talk about the value of block guides vs. bearing guides. Each has its advantages. Bearing guides don't require periodic maintenance. Block guides support the blade closer to the work, and the broad surface area of blocks provides better support when cutting contours. I've used both for many years and have found the differences to be insignificant. The most important part of any bandsaw is the blade, not the guides (for more on bandsaw blades, see *FWW* #140, pp. 86-91).

Some claim that bearing guides allow the blade to run cooler and last longer. But the most damaging heat is generated

at the tooth tip. This heat is caused by the friction that occurs during sawing. (Think of how hot your thumbs become when using a scraper.) The heat at the tooth tip will occur regardless of which type of guide you use. But there are a couple of ways to overcome the problem.

Carbide and bimetal blades can withstand much higher temperatures than the ordinary carbon steel blades on most new bandsaws. Although they cost more initially, carbide and bimetal blades are more economical because they retain their sharpness much longer.

Also, by selecting a blade with the proper pitch, you can effectively reduce the heat generated when sawing. For optimum results there should be six to 12 teeth in contact with the stock; so when sawing thick stock you'll need a blade with fewer teeth. As an added advantage you'll get a truer cut because the large gullets at the base of the teeth can more effectively remove the sawdust from the kerf created by the blade.

I suggest you use the guides that came with your bandsaw and keep them well adjusted. Your best bandsaw upgrade is to buy an assortment of blades and change them according to the job at hand. [Lonnie Bird is a woodworker and teacher and the author of *The Bandsaw Book* (The Taunton Press, 1999).]

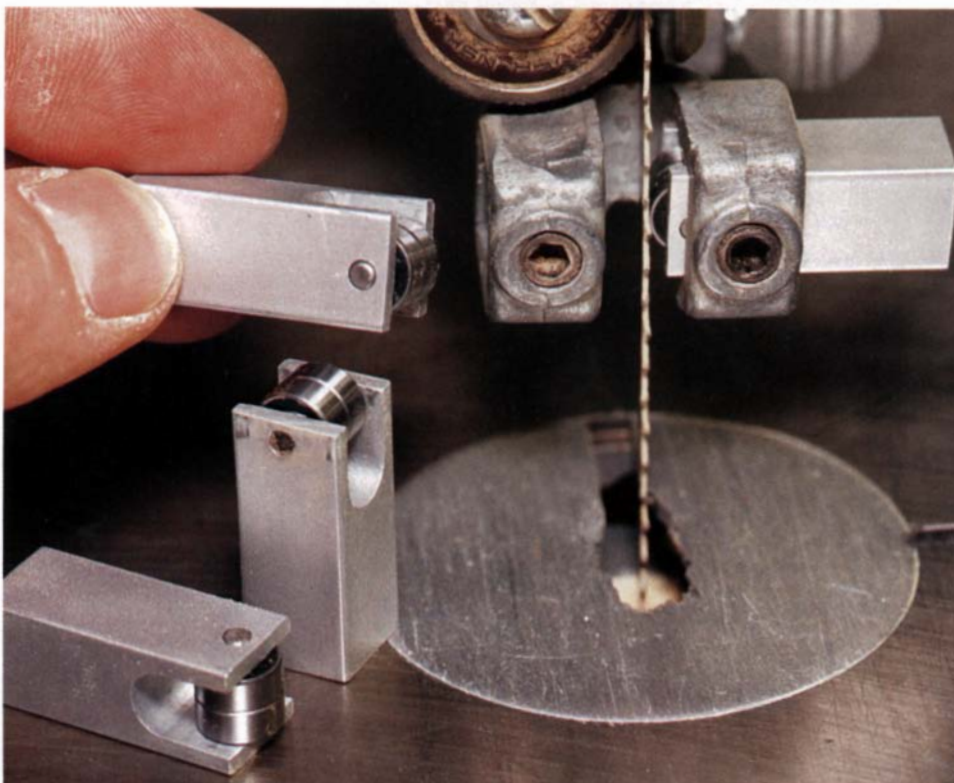
### **Can sapwood be stained to match heartwood?**

*Is there a way to stain the sapwood of walnut to the approximate color of the heartwood? My usual finish is an oil-polyurethane mixture.*

—S.J. Donnelly, North Vancouver, B.C., Canada

**Peter Gedrys replies:** One of the easiest ways to match heart- and sapwood is by using a water-based dye stain. First sand your wood to 150 grit, then wipe it down with a damp rag to raise the grain. This step will also show you what your project would look like with a clean finish. Then finish-sand the piece down to about 180 or 220 grit.

With new wood I always choose water-based dyes for clarity. You have to experiment to get the color you're looking for, but I usually start with colors in the walnut family, a van dyke



**Little maintenance required.** Bearing guides require less maintenance than traditional block guides but provide less surface area to support the blade.

**MAO SHAN is now online. Come visit our website and see all of our Do-It-Yourself Woodworking Machinery!**

- Affordable prices!
  - 18 Years of experience in machinery manufacturing.
  - We are ISO 9001 Certified!
  - Local distributors wanted.
- OEM inquiries are welcome.



<http://www.maoshan.com>



Visit our Website: <http://www.maoshan.com>  
E-mail: [maoshan@ms15.hinet.net](mailto:maoshan@ms15.hinet.net) Fax: 886-4-2792667

READER SERVICE NO. 56

*The Perfect Lacquer.*



800-752-9922

[www.targetcoatings.com](http://www.targetcoatings.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 35

**POWERMATIC**

WE HAVE IT ALL IN WOODWORKING SUPPLIES

**GENERAL**

**WoodWorkers Depot**

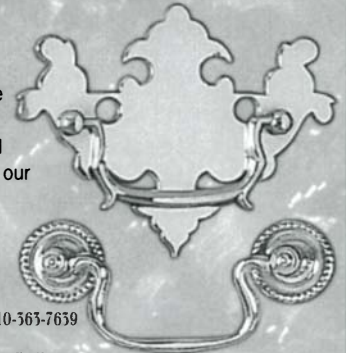
3001 RAMADA WAY, GREEN BAY, WI 54304  
1-800-891-9003 FAX (920) 336-8683  
[www.woodworkersdepot.com](http://www.woodworkersdepot.com)  
PROFESSIONAL QUALITY AT A WAREHOUSE PRICE

**DELTA**  
**CMT JET**  
EQUIPMENT & TOOLS

READER SERVICE NO. 52

## Finest Quality Reproduction Brass and Iron Hardware

Since 1932, BALL AND BALL has been manufacturing the finest quality antique reproduction furniture hardware, builders hardware, lighting fixtures, and fireplace accessories available. Call for our 108-page catalog, available for \$7.00 (catalog cost refunded on first order).



Ball and Ball  
463 W. Lincoln Highway  
Exton, PA 19341  
Phone: 610-363-7330 • Fax: 610-363-7639  
Orders: 1-800-257-3711

Visit our website - [www.ballandball-us.com](http://www.ballandball-us.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 186

## WHY Build a Guitar?



Fingerboard and rosette detail: Rob Cirilis guitars

### To satisfy:

- Strong urge to bend wood
- Desire to engage in fine joinery
- Need to inlay
- Urge to work in thousandths
- Quest to work with the finest and most beautiful woods

### More reasons:

- Minimal tools and shop space required
- Broaden portfolio
- Finished product is portable
- Finished product can make music
- Impress your friends

### Teachers note:

- Excite students
- Many disciplines brought together

### For information:

Luthiers Mercantile International  
P.O. Box 774 • Healdsburg, CA 95448  
Tel. 800-477-4437 / 707-433-1823

<http://lmii.com> Fax 707-433-8802

READER SERVICE NO. 123

## INTRODUCING... **KATANA**

### The Cutting Edge Of Routing Technology

**Safety, performance, and durability.** NEW Katana™ router bits are manufactured using the highest quality materials on precision multi-axis CNC grinders. They feature: premium micro-grain carbide cutters, high hook and shear angles for clean cutting, anti-kickback rounded shoulders, an anti-stick coating, a diamond honed 600 grit mirror finish, SAE 4140 solid steel bodies, plus our Safety Gauge Shank™ for easy set up. Katana™ bits are backed with a **lifetime guarantee.**

3 PC. ROUND OVER BEADING BIT SET  
1/4" Shank #12305  
**\$65**  
WOOD BOX INCLUDED

**FREE SHIPPING**

**FREE CATALOG!**  
**1-800-533-9298**

**KATANA™** An MLCS Company  
2381 Philmont Ave., Huntingdon Valley, PA 19006

READER SERVICE NO. 206

### SHAKER CHAIR KITS

Discover the beautiful proportions and classic simplicity of Shaker furniture. Our catalog features reproduction dining chairs and tables, rockers, bar stools, candle stands, small tables, clocks, oval boxes, baskets, peg board and Shaker chair tape. Furniture available as precisely fashioned kits for easy finishing or custom finished.

**FREE Catalog**  
**SHAKER WORKSHOPS**  
Box 8001-FW0, Ashburnam, MA 01430  
1-800-840-9121

READER SERVICE NO. 226

brown or burnt umber. I like to make a basic mix of 1 oz. powder to 1 qt. very warm, distilled water. This is a reasonably concentrated solution that can be further diluted to the strength that matches the walnut.

Apply the dye with a brush or rag, or spray it on. While the wood is still very damp, go over the sapwood a second or third time, if necessary. This second color is easily controlled by using a cotton rag made into a pad, similar to a French polishing rubber. Charge the pad thoroughly, but not dripping wet, and pad over the sapwood. If you are not planning on staining, seal the wood with the desired finish and sand.

You can then use a gel stain or a glaze over the offending area. Let this dry thoroughly and proceed with your finish. If you are brushing on an oil finish, a very thin 1/2-lb. to 1-lb. cut shellac coat can be applied as a barrier or isolation coat over the glaze. This coat will eliminate the possibility of "pulling" the glaze. Above all, take the time to experiment and practice. This time is very well spent, and it takes the guesswork out of the equation.

[Peter Gedrys runs Architectural Finishes in Old Saybrook, Conn.]

## Shaping a concave curve



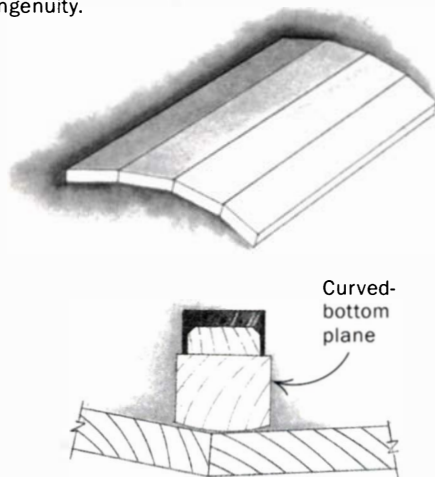
*I am in the process of building a toy chest with a coopered lid. What is the best way to shape the inside of the coopered lid? Do they*

*make planes to match these concave shapes?* —Les Katz, Brooklyn, N.Y.

**Mario Rodriguez replies:** Once you've glued up the coopered lid for your toy chest, the completed curved top should arch smoothly, without any flat spots. The convex top side of the lid can be shaped with conventional flat-bottomed planes and spokeshaves. However, the concave underside must be shaped with scrapers or sanding blocks cut to match the shape or with a curved-bottom plane that accommodates the curve of the lid. Obviously you're aware of the difficulties in obtaining tools to perform this critical task, and your chance of finding a plane formed to the exact radius of your coopered lid is almost nil. So, if you don't

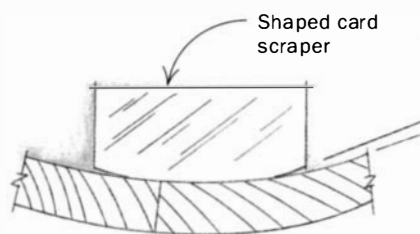
## FAIRING A CONCAVE SURFACE

While the convex upper side of a coopered lid is easily shaped with planes and spokeshaves, fairing the concave side takes a little more ingenuity.



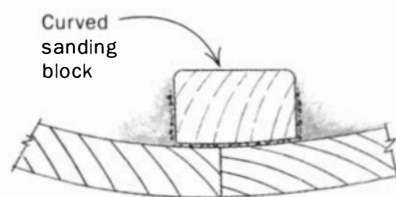
### PLANE A ROUND

If you're making a plane to match the curve of a concave surface, the radius of the plane should be slightly less than that of the curve itself.



### SCRAPE OUT THE TRACKS

A flat card scraper can be shaped to the curve, making it easy to clean up tearout and tracks left from the plane blade. Be sure to relieve the sharp corners of the scraper so that they won't dig into the work.



### SAND IT SMOOTH

A sanding block can easily be cut to match the lid's curve.

want to spend a lot of time with scrapers, think about making a plane.

The Japan Woodworker (800-537-7820) sells a high-quality blade with a chipbreaker already shaped to a curve. Then you'll have to obtain plans or directions for building a simple plane. I

can recommend an article on plane-making by Timothy Ellsworth (*FWW* #1, pp. 22-27) or a more recent article by David Welter (*FWW* #126, pp. 67-73).

I don't know the radius of your lid, but I assume that any segment of the lid will be shaped to a fairly shallow curve. Any plane you make should be shaped to an even tighter radius, allowing you to plane to the curve easily and avoid leaving plane tracks (when the sharp edges of the plane's blade dig into the work surface, leaving unsightly "tracks").

Whatever method you choose for shaping, use a curved template to gauge your progress. If you use a plane, a shaped card scraper will clean up any rough spots. Follow this with sanding blocks shaped to the lid's curve.

[Mario Rodriguez is a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*.]

## What causes burl?

*Burl seems more common in some species than in others. What causes some trees to develop burls?*

—Mitch Haines, Montpelier, Vt.

**Jon Arno replies:** Unfortunately, we do not yet know exactly what causes burl. The same is true for most other special figures in wood, such as bird's eye and fiddleback, which result from the formation of abnormal wood tissue. In fact, there may be multiple causes, and some of the seemingly more plausible theories include genetic malfunction, physical injury, environmental stress or the presence of some pathogen.

These abnormal figures do occur more often in some species than in others, and they tend to occur more often in tree populations that are under some sort of stress. For example, bird's eye and fiddleback, while still rare, seem to occur more often in maple than in other species. Also, the prevalence of these figures is greatest in stands of maple that are growing toward the northern extreme of the species range, at higher elevations or in dense stands where competition for nutrients and sunlight is more intense.

The theory that disease may be a direct cause is somewhat weakened by the fact that microscopic examination of samples of abnormal wood tissue has so far failed to reveal the consistent presence of a





Brad pointed for you....



but this is what you really needed.

*The most complete selection  
of woodworking tools & supplies.*



*Pfeil Swiss Made®  
Carving Tools -  
Simply the best  
carving tools  
in the world.*



*Tormek Sharpening  
System - The best  
way to put the finest  
edge on all your  
cutting tools.*



*Ulmia Workbenches  
- The finest in  
European design  
and craftsmanship.*



*Woodcraft  
Router Bits-  
Quality at an  
affordable price.*

Brad point, pointing Brad... It's understandable how some sales people might be confused. Finding someone who can supply you with these precision woodworking bits *and* show you how to best use them, needn't be as difficult as it seems. For over 70 years, Woodcraft has been serving woodworkers' needs with the attention and knowledge that comes only from experience. Whether it's a butt chisel, bench dog or a brad point you need, we've got it and we'll show you how to use it.



**WOODCRAFT®**  
*Helping You Make Wood Work®*

- Stores Nationwide
- FREE Catalog
- [www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)

**For the store nearest you or for a free catalog call: 1-800-542-9115**

Proud sponsor of "The American Woodshop" hosted by Scott Phillips on Public Television.

Dept. #00WW03CP

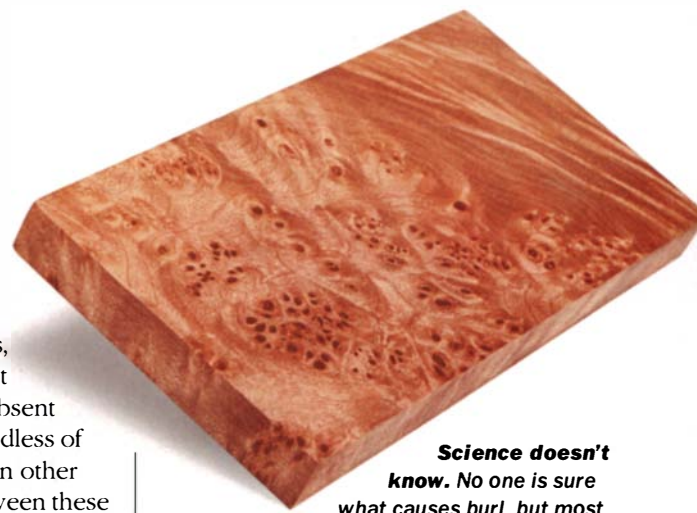
suspect pathogen. Viruses are very hard to detect, but still it seems more plausible that, if pathogens play a role in the process, they do so by inflicting stress rather than by causing a specific disease.

Genetics must play some role; otherwise, burl and other abnormal figures would occur more uniformly among species. While it is largely conjecture on my part, I suspect that stress of some sort either limits the availability of some nutrient or hinders the tree's ability to metabolize nutrients and produce certain key plant hormones in balanced amounts. Beyond this point, a more complete explanation of the process begins to get a little technical.

Plants control tissue growth by counterbalancing the growth hormone, auxin, with the regulating hormone, kinetin. Some as-yet-not-well-understood chemical signal causes these hormones to congregate on the cambium, which is the thin layer of living cells between the sapwood and the bark where growth occurs. The cells of the cambium react to

these hormones by producing woody tissue and bark. Auxin stimulates the cells to multiply, while kinetin seems to tell the cells how fast and in what configuration. If kinetin is present in insufficient quantities, the cells appear to grow without purpose, but if auxin is totally absent nothing seems to happen, regardless of how much kinetin is available. In other words, the precise balance between these hormones is absolutely critical for normal cell growth. Depending upon where on the cambium layer they become out of balance and how much the balance is distorted, strange things start to happen. Burl appears to represent an explosion of seemingly unregulated growth originating at a single point on the cambium, while some of the other abnormal figures appear to be the result of more or less poorly regulated growth on a broader, less localized basis.

This explanation is certainly open to debate, but it is the only one that seems to



**Science doesn't know. No one is sure what causes burl, but most furniture makers are just happy that it happens.**

tie together what we know about the chemistry of plant growth and what is observable in the field.

[Jon Arno is a wood consultant and wood technologist in Troy, Mich.]

**Do you have a question you'd like us to consider for the column? Send it to Q&A, Fine Woodworking, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506 or e-mail it to [fwqa@taunton.com](mailto:fwqa@taunton.com).**

**Econ-Abrasives**  
WE MANUFACTURE ABRASIVE BELTS ANY SIZE, ANY GRIT!

<p><b>ABRASIVE SHEETS:</b> (8x 11)</p> <p><b>CABINET PAPER</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>50/2pk</b></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><b>100/2pk</b></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>40D</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$18.90</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$35.60</td> <td>C</td> </tr> <tr> <td>50D</td> <td style="text-align: right;">17.80</td> <td style="text-align: right;">32.25</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>60D</td> <td style="text-align: right;">16.70</td> <td style="text-align: right;">30.00</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>80D</td> <td style="text-align: right;">15.60</td> <td style="text-align: right;">27.80</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>100 thru 150C</td> <td style="text-align: right;">14.50</td> <td style="text-align: right;">25.60</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p><b>FINISHING PAPER</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"></td> <td style="text-align: right;">80A \$11.15</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$18.90C</td> </tr> <tr> <td>100 thru 280A</td> <td style="text-align: right;">10.00</td> <td style="text-align: right;">16.70</td> </tr> </table> <p><b>NO LOAD PAPER</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"></td> <td style="text-align: right;">180 thru 400A</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$12.25</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$21.25C</td> </tr> </table> <p><small>*C* = 100 SHEETS</small></p>		<b>50/2pk</b>	<b>100/2pk</b>		40D	\$18.90	\$35.60	C	50D	17.80	32.25		60D	16.70	30.00		80D	15.60	27.80		100 thru 150C	14.50	25.60			80A \$11.15	\$18.90C	100 thru 280A	10.00	16.70		180 thru 400A	\$12.25	\$21.25C	<p><b>ABRASIVE BELTS</b> PLEASE SPECIFY GRITS</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;"></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1X30</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$.81 ea.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3X24</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$.93 ea.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1X42</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.81</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3X27</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.96</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1X44</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.81</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4X21 3/4</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.06</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">2 1/2X16</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.85</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4X24</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.10</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">3X18</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.86</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4X36</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.35</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">3X21</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.90</td> <td style="text-align: right;">6X48</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3.50</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">3X23 3/4</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.93</td> <td style="text-align: right;">6X89</td> <td style="text-align: right;">6.24</td> </tr> </table> <p><small>Other sizes priced upon request</small></p> <p><b>JUMBO BELT CLEANING STICK</b> ONLY \$8.00</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center; margin: 5px 0;"> <b>2X2X12</b> </div> <p><b>HEAVY DUTY VELCRO® VACUUM DISCS</b> FOR BOSCH AND PORTER CABLE SANDERS</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Disc</b></td> <td style="width: 10%;"><b>Grit</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Price</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Disc</b></td> <td style="width: 10%;"><b>Grit</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Price</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>60</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$ .48 ea.</td> <td>6"</td> <td>60</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$ .65 ea.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>80</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.46</td> <td>6"</td> <td>80</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.63</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>100</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>100</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>thru</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>thru</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>320</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.45</td> <td>6"</td> <td>320</td> <td style="text-align: right;">.82</td> </tr> </table> <p><b>WE STOCK BOTH 5 &amp; 8" HOLE PATTERNS</b></p> <p><b>PSA DISC ROLLS (White)</b> silicon carbide for D A sanders</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Size</b></td> <td style="width: 10%;"><b>Grit</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Price/Roll</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Discs Per Roll</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>80</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$16.90</td> <td>125</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>120</td> <td style="text-align: right;">16.35</td> <td>125</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>180</td> <td style="text-align: right;">32.70</td> <td>250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>220</td> <td style="text-align: right;">32.70</td> <td>250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5"</td> <td>320</td> <td style="text-align: right;">32.70</td> <td>250</td> </tr> </table> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Size</b></td> <td style="width: 10%;"><b>Grit</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Price/roll</b></td> <td style="width: 25%;"><b>Discs Per Roll</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6"</td> <td>80</td> <td style="text-align: right;">\$24.15</td> <td>125</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6"</td> <td>120</td> <td style="text-align: right;">22.30</td> <td>125</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6"</td> <td>180</td> <td style="text-align: right;">44.55</td> <td>250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6"</td> <td>220</td> <td style="text-align: right;">44.55</td> <td>250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6"</td> <td>320</td> <td style="text-align: right;">44.55</td> <td>250</td> </tr> </table>		1X30	\$.81 ea.	3X24	\$.93 ea.		1X42	.81	3X27	.96		1X44	.81	4X21 3/4	1.06		2 1/2X16	.85	4X24	1.10		3X18	.86	4X36	1.35		3X21	.90	6X48	3.50		3X23 3/4	.93	6X89	6.24	<b>Disc</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price</b>	<b>Disc</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price</b>	5"	60	\$ .48 ea.	6"	60	\$ .65 ea.	5"	80	.46	6"	80	.63		100			100			thru			thru		5"	320	.45	6"	320	.82	<b>Size</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price/Roll</b>	<b>Discs Per Roll</b>	5"	80	\$16.90	125	5"	120	16.35	125	5"	180	32.70	250	5"	220	32.70	250	5"	320	32.70	250	<b>Size</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price/roll</b>	<b>Discs Per Roll</b>	6"	80	\$24.15	125	6"	120	22.30	125	6"	180	44.55	250	6"	220	44.55	250	6"	320	44.55	250
	<b>50/2pk</b>	<b>100/2pk</b>																																																																																																																																																								
40D	\$18.90	\$35.60	C																																																																																																																																																							
50D	17.80	32.25																																																																																																																																																								
60D	16.70	30.00																																																																																																																																																								
80D	15.60	27.80																																																																																																																																																								
100 thru 150C	14.50	25.60																																																																																																																																																								
	80A \$11.15	\$18.90C																																																																																																																																																								
100 thru 280A	10.00	16.70																																																																																																																																																								
	180 thru 400A	\$12.25	\$21.25C																																																																																																																																																							
	1X30	\$.81 ea.	3X24	\$.93 ea.																																																																																																																																																						
	1X42	.81	3X27	.96																																																																																																																																																						
	1X44	.81	4X21 3/4	1.06																																																																																																																																																						
	2 1/2X16	.85	4X24	1.10																																																																																																																																																						
	3X18	.86	4X36	1.35																																																																																																																																																						
	3X21	.90	6X48	3.50																																																																																																																																																						
	3X23 3/4	.93	6X89	6.24																																																																																																																																																						
<b>Disc</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price</b>	<b>Disc</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price</b>																																																																																																																																																					
5"	60	\$ .48 ea.	6"	60	\$ .65 ea.																																																																																																																																																					
5"	80	.46	6"	80	.63																																																																																																																																																					
	100			100																																																																																																																																																						
	thru			thru																																																																																																																																																						
5"	320	.45	6"	320	.82																																																																																																																																																					
<b>Size</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price/Roll</b>	<b>Discs Per Roll</b>																																																																																																																																																							
5"	80	\$16.90	125																																																																																																																																																							
5"	120	16.35	125																																																																																																																																																							
5"	180	32.70	250																																																																																																																																																							
5"	220	32.70	250																																																																																																																																																							
5"	320	32.70	250																																																																																																																																																							
<b>Size</b>	<b>Grit</b>	<b>Price/roll</b>	<b>Discs Per Roll</b>																																																																																																																																																							
6"	80	\$24.15	125																																																																																																																																																							
6"	120	22.30	125																																																																																																																																																							
6"	180	44.55	250																																																																																																																																																							
6"	220	44.55	250																																																																																																																																																							
6"	320	44.55	250																																																																																																																																																							

**STEEL BAR CLAMPS**  
Quick release feature, available in four different lengths, these clamps are fast adjusting with cast iron jaws.

<b>Size</b>	<b>Price</b>	
2-1/2 x 6	\$6.50 ea.	
2-1/2 x 12	7.00	
2-1/2 x 24	7.75	
2-1/2 x 36	9.50	

**HEAVY DUTY SPRING CLAMPS**  
Clamps come with PVC tips and grips.

<b>Size</b>	<b>Price</b>	
4"	\$1.75 ea.	
6"	2.25	
8"	3.50	

**OTHER PRODUCTS**

- \*ROLLS\*FLAP WHEELS\*PUMP SLEEVES\*ROUTER BITS\*WOOD GLUE\*WOOD BITS\*SANDING BLOCKS\*DRAWER SLIDES
- \*HINGES\*TV SWIVELS

\*Check or CDD  
\*SATISFACTION GUARANTEED  
\*Texas add sales tax  
\*Continental US Shipping Charges add \$5.50.

**Econ-Abrasives**  
P. O. Box 1628  
Frisco, TX 75034  
(972)-377-9779

**CALL FOR FREE CATALOG!**

**Toll-Free (800)367-4101**

READER SERVICE NO. 154

**Groff & Groff Lumber**  
formerly Groff & Hearne Lumber, Inc.  
**Exceptionally Fine Furniture & Instrument Grade Woods**

PREMIUM WALNUT, CHERRY, CURLY CHERRY, BIRDSEYE AND TIGER MAPLE  
Sawmill Direct • Slabs to 40" Wide  
75+ Unusual Native & Imported Species  
Matching Flitches • Burls & Turning Blocks  
Order 75 Domestic and Imported Species 4/4-16/4

No Order Too Large or Too Small

858 Scotland Road, Quarryville, PA 17566  
**1-800-342-0001**  
(717) 284-0001 • Fax (717) 284-2400

*National & International Shipping*

READER SERVICE NO. 96

**Anderson Ranch Arts Center**  
**Summer Workshops 2000**

<p><b>Faculty</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Jo Stone</li> <li>Jenna Goldberg</li> <li>Clifton Monteith</li> <li>Michael Fortune</li> <li>Wendy Maruyama</li> <li>Brent Skidmore</li> <li>Kurt Neilson</li> <li>Craig Stevens</li> <li>Gail Fredell</li> <li>Stephen Proctor</li> <li>Sam Maloof</li> <li>Paul Ruhlman</li> </ul>	<p><b>Topics</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduction to Furniture</li> <li>Intermediate Furniture</li> <li>Advanced Furniture Design</li> <li>Furniture Intensive</li> <li>Bent Greenwood Furniture</li> <li>Woodworking for Kids</li> </ul>
---	--

we also offer: ceramics, painting, sculpture, photography, digital imaging and field expeditions

**Anderson Ranch Arts Center**  
P.O. Box 5598 • Snowmass Village • Colorado 81615  
Phone 970/923.3181 • Fax 970/923.3871  
[www.andersonranch.org](http://www.andersonranch.org)

READER SERVICE NO. 68

# Wood Online

[www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)

8,000 of the finest woodworking tools, supplies and wood are just a mouse click away.

**WOODCRAFT**  
Helping You Make Wood Work

1-800-535-4482  
Dept. 00WW03NS

READER SERVICE NO. 113



We Manufacture  
& Service  
**SHAPER KNIVES**  
**MOULDER KNIVES**

We now distribute  
**FREEBORN**  
Cutters

Williams & Hussey  
Profile Knives  
FOLEY BELSAW • MOULDER HEADS  
RBI & WOODMASTER KNIVES  
LOCK EDGE COLLARS  
ROSETTE CUTTERS  
CUSTOM ROUTERS &  
CUSTOM CUTTERS



Quick Turnaround Time  
Top Quality Products  
at Competitive Prices

**W. Moore Profiles LTD.**

1 Commercial Drive,  
P.O. Box 752, Florida, NY 10921  
www.wmooreprofile.com

**1-800-228-8151**

Serving the Industry for over 10 Years - Fax (914) 651-1097

READER SERVICE NO. 46

FREE WORKSHOPS • PRIZES • HUNDREDS OF PRODUCTS • SEMINARS BY MASTERCRAFTSMEN

Savings on  
DeWalt,  
Bosch, Jet,  
Performax,  
Delta,  
Porter-Cable  
and more!



★THE  
WOODWORKING  
SHOWS★  
tools • supplies • education

THE NATION'S  
PREMIER  
WOODWORKING  
TOUR

VISIT THE SHOW NEAR YOU!

- Atlanta
- Baltimore
- Buffalo
- Charlotte
- Chicago
- Cincinnati
- Columbus
- Dallas/Ft. Worth
- Denver
- Detroit
- Greensboro
- Houston
- Massachusetts
- New Orleans
- No. California
- North Jersey
- No. Virginia
- Portland
- San Antonio
- Seattle
- So. California
- Tampa
- Twin Cities
- plus others!

CALL FOR FREE BROCHURE MONDAY - FRIDAY 8:30 AM - 5 PM PACIFIC TIME  
1-800-826-8257 E-MAIL: info@thewoodshows.com WEB SITE: www.thewoodshows.com

READER SERVICE NO. 166

**RIPSAW**

## The Portable Sawmill.

The "affordable portable"  
one man band sawmill.  
Weighs only 45 lbs. Cuts  
20" diameter logs into  
lumber. Minimum 1/8" to  
maximum 9" thickness.  
Maximum width, 14".  
Start-up video available.



**Better Built  
CORPORATION**

789 Woburn Street, Dept. FW  
Wilmington, MA 01887  
Website: www.ripsaw.com  
e-mail: info@ripsaw.com

(978) 657-5636  
fax (978) 658-0444

Call or write for free brochure

READER SERVICE NO. 125

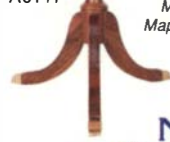
Made in  
Tennessee

## Table Bases

STOCKED

In a Variety  
of Woods

A0117



Walnut, Cherry,  
Mahogany,  
Maple and Oak

A0113



No  
Minimum



A0112

FREE  
Catalog

A0123



A0106



Adams Wood Products™ L.T.D., L.P.  
974 Forest Drive, Morristown, TN 37814 Dept. Q 30  
Factory/Office 5436 Jeffrey Lane  
Phone 423-587-2942 • Fax 423-586-2188  
www.adamswoodproducts.com

READER SERVICE NO. 1

# Think Jig.



## The World's Best Router Jig System

Thinking Jig? Think Leigh.  
Whether you're a hobbyist or a

professional, the Leigh Jig will  
help you create your best work.  
Versatility with precision make  
the Leigh Dovetail Jig better than  
the rest. Rout through and  
half-blind dovetails, with variable  
spacing of pins and tails, on one  
jig. Create decorative Isoloc joints,  
finger joints, and multiple

mortise & tenons easily with  
Leigh attachments. And our  
easy-to-follow user guide will  
help make it happen fast! Call  
toll free now to learn more.

**LEIGH**

Joining Tradition With Today

Call For Your Free Leigh Catalog Today! **1-800-663-8932**

Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357, Port Coquitlam, BC, Canada V3C 4K6 Tel. 604 464-2700 Fax 604 464-7404 Web www.leighjigs.com

READER SERVICE NO. 211

# Our New Video Series...

FROM THE PUBLISHERS OF

Fine  
WoodWorking



NEW  
20-MINUTE  
VIDEOS!

- **Single-topic, 20-minute videos.**

These videos get you right to the heart of woodworking technique in a way that only video can. Because the subjects are sharply focused, you're getting exactly what you want to learn.

- **Expert craftsmen share their know-how.**

Some things you've just got to see, in action, to understand. Each of these videos is like a private lesson in the shop of a world-class craftsman.

- **Preview each video online.**

Do you want to try before you buy? Watch a brief clip of each video on the web at [www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com). And return often to see which new videos have come out.

- **PAY JUST \$11.95 EACH!**

Without a big investment you can collect a whole video library of woodworking wisdom. At \$11.95 each, you can own them all!



# Keeps Growing...

## **NEW! French Polish\*** with Jeff Jewitt

"French Polish" sounds daunting, but Jeff Jewitt's video shows how easy it is to get the hang of this famous finishing technique. You'll learn how to choose shellac flakes, mix your own finish, prepare the wood surface, and pad-on the micro-thin layers of shellac that build a wood coating of unmatched depth and character.

## **NEW! Spray Basics** with Michael Dresdner

Sprayed on finishes go on quickly and dry quickly too, so there's no time for dust to mar a wet surface, and you get out of the finishing room fast. Michael Dresdner explains the principles of spraying and guides you through the maze of modern spraying tools—especially turbine and conversion HVLP systems. Dresdner sprays a chair, tabletop, bookcase, and guitar, demonstrating technique and solving problems.

## **NEW! Box with a Fitted Lid** with Richard Raffan

Richard Raffan puts on a display of virtuoso wood turning and delivers a beautiful box with a suction-fit lid. The real mastery you'll see here is in the perfect mating of the lid and base. But Raffan also applies almost every technique that's useful in end-grain turning: truing with skewers, profiling with gouges, hollowing with scrapers, using calipers, making a jam-fit chuck, and fixing a split on the lathe.

## ALSO AVAILABLE:

- **Hand-Made Dovetails**  
with Toge Frid
- **A Basic Bowl on the Lathe**  
with Richard Raffan
- **Beading with Scratch-Stock, Moulding Plane and Router** with Garrett Hack
- **Brushing Varnish, Shellac, and Lacquer\***  
with Jeff Jewitt
- **12 Ways to Make a Mortise & Tenon**  
with Gary Rogowski
- **Making Plywood Drawers**  
with Gary Rogowski
- **Turning Furniture Spindles\*\***  
with Ernie Conover
- **Carving Incised Letterforms**  
with Nora Hall

\* Excerpted from *Hand-Applied Finishes: Applying Topcoats* with Jeff Jewitt

\*\* Excerpted from *Turning for Furniture* with Ernie Conover

## AND MORE EVERY FEW WEEKS!

EACH VIDEO IS APPROXIMATELY  
20 MINUTES, FULL COLOR, \$11.95

To order, use the form below or call **1-800-888-8286**, operator W959.  
For more information visit our Web site at **www.finewoodworking.com**

Clip here and return with payment. ▼

**Yes, I want to see the experts in action!**

Please send me the following *Woodshop Videos*:

QUANTITY :

- \_\_\_ *French Polish* PROD # 014018
- \_\_\_ *Spray Basics* PROD # 014010
- \_\_\_ *Box with a Fitted Lid* PROD # 014017
- \_\_\_ *Hand-Made Dovetails* PROD # 014004
- \_\_\_ *A Basic Bowl on the Lathe*  
PROD # 014002
- \_\_\_ *Beading with Scratch-Stock,  
Moulding Plane and Router*  
PROD # 014008
- \_\_\_ *Brushing Varnish, Shellac, and  
Lacquer* PROD # 014007

QUANTITY :

- \_\_\_ *12 Ways to Make a Mortise &  
Tenon* PROD # 014003
- \_\_\_ *Making Plywood Drawers*  
PROD # 014006
- \_\_\_ *Turning Furniture Spindles*  
PROD # 014009
- \_\_\_ *Carving Incised Letterforms*  
PROD # 014011

Each video is \$11.95. Please add \$1.50 postage and handling to total order.

SUBTOTAL \$ \_\_\_\_\_

CT residents add 6% sales tax \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Canadian residents add 7% GST \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Add \$1.50 postage and handling \$ \_\_\_\_\_

TOTAL \$ \_\_\_\_\_

103248

NAME \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_

APT # \_\_\_\_\_

CITY \_\_\_\_\_

STATE \_\_\_\_\_

ZIP \_\_\_\_\_

MY CHECK IS ENCLOSED

MC  VISA  AMEX  DISCOVER

CARD NO. \_\_\_\_\_

EXP. DATE \_\_\_\_\_

SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_



Send to: Taunton Direct, Inc., 63 South Main Street,  
P.O. Box 5507, Newtown, CT 06470-5507.

### The Taunton Guarantee:

If you're not completely satisfied with your purchase, return it for a full refund. No questions. No delay.

# Master Class

## A short course in gilding



BY STUART M.  
ALTSCHULER

Gold has been prized through the ages not only for its luster and color but also for its working properties, one of the most remarkable of which is its ability to be worked as gold leaf. Gold leaf is gold pounded tissue-thin—so thin that if you rub a sheet between your fingers it turns to powder and disappears. Yet, once adhered to a substrate, gold leaf is remarkably strong and durable.

It was in the Renaissance that gold leaf gained widespread use. In houses of the wealthy, in rooms dimly lit by candles and oil lamps, large gilt-framed mirrors gleamed on the walls, their burnished surfaces serving to magnify the light. This brilliant finish was soon adopted by European carvers and furniture makers, and eventually it crossed the Atlantic and gave its name to America's Gilded Age.

There is a mystique about gold leafing and a misconception that it is a difficult art. The truth is that while traditional gold leafing like that used on the mirror frame below, known as water gilding, is a finicky, labor-intensive process requiring a dozen or more undercoats of sealer, each one



### SURFACE PREPARATION IS PARAMOUNT

In laying gold leaf, the surface preparation is critical, because every flaw in the substrate will telegraph through the leaf.

#### SANDING

**Sand fine and clean carefully.** After sanding to fine grits, remove dust with a tack cloth. Then use alcohol to clean the surface of any residue from the tack cloth.



#### SEALING



**Don't aerate the brush.** It's important to get as smooth a coat of sealer as possible. To avoid getting air bubbles in the finish, remove excess paint by shaking the brush downward instead of wiping it off against the can's lip.



**Avoid pooling and puddling.** After painting on the sealer, go back with a nearly dry brush to clean up any paint that pools in the corners.

#### SIZING



**Add a spot of color.** Sizing is nearly colorless. Adding a drop of Japan color to the sizing makes it easier to see as you brush it on.



**Start in the middle.** To get the thinnest and most even coat of sizing, begin brushing at the middle of a section, then brush out toward both ends.

# The Right Tools for the Job, Get the Job Done Right!



**PORTER-CABLE**

## 19.2 Volt 6" Saw Boss™ Kit

Maximum performance, longer run time, and exceptional power --without the extension cord hassles. Powered by a pair of 19.2 volt, 2 AMP/Hr network high capacity battery packs, the new cordless SAWBOSS easily cuts through 2X lumber at a 45° angle in a single pass.

**9845 \$279.99**



**THE POWER OF THE PROS**  
**DELTA**

## 10", Contractor Saw

Built-in quality features for precision performance. 1-1/2 HP, 115/230 volt single phase motor.

**36-444 \$599.99**



## Heavy Duty 7-1/4" High Torque Framing Saw

Framing just got easier. This saw features a 15.0 amp, 2,000 watt output, 4,600 RPM motor. It weighs only 13 pounds, meaning you'll get more work done with less fatigue.

**DW378G \$149.99**



# TOOL CRIB OF THE NORTH

**FREE CATALOG!**

<p><b>799.00</b></p>	<p><b>399.00</b></p>	<p><b>99.00</b></p>
<p><b>199.00</b></p>	<p><b>199.00</b></p>	<p><b>1599.00</b></p>
<p><b>EXPRESS ORDER LINE</b> Not to be used in place with: <b>800-582-6704</b> 24 HRS 7 DAYS</p>	<p><b>TECHNICAL SUPPORT</b> Product questions before ordering: <b>800-582-3096</b> 800-582-3096 M-F 800-582-3096 SAT</p>	<p><b>CUSTOMER SERVICE</b> Customer about previous orders: <b>800-994-9132</b> 800-582-3096 M-F</p>
<p><b>Earth's Biggest Selection of Tools &amp; Equipment</b> <a href="http://www.toolcrib.amazon.com">www.toolcrib.amazon.com</a></p>		



**BOSCH**

## 24 Volt, 3-Tool Combo Kit

6-1/2" Circular Saw, 1/2" Drill/Driver and Flashlight make up this combo kit. Includes 2 platinum batteries, 1-hour SMART charger, side-handle and case.

**3960CFK \$469.99**

**Makita**  
IT'S ALL THE POWER YOU NEED



## 10" Slide Saw

13 amp motor with innovative angular head design is a key feature of this compound saw. Dual-position depth adjusting knob, 45° bevel right and left. Includes carbide blade, vertical vise and dust bag.

**LS1013 \$519.99**



**Emclo**  
Air Compressor

## 1-1/2 HP Air-Mate™ Compressor

Features include:  
lower amp motor - less than 15 amps, convenient control panel, protected regulator mounting, easy access quick coupler and a larger tank drain.

**M79-HC4V \$339.99**

Call for your Guaranteed  
Lowest Price

**800-358-3096**

Call for your FREE 124 page catalog

**800-582-6704**

Order online from our new website featuring over 15,000 products

**toolcrib.amazon.com**

**EARTH'S BIGGEST SELECTION JUST GOT BIGGER.**  
books electronics video dvd toys auctions home improvement

Tool Crib of the North is an [amazon.com](http://amazon.com) company

FWW 72-020

READER SERVICE NO. 242



# Master Class (continued)

carefully sanded, there is a much simpler approach to applying gold leaf: oil gilding. If you want burnished gold leaf of the highest reflectivity, you must use the water-gilding method (so named because the sizing is water-based). The buildup of coats creates an ideally smooth, slightly resilient surface on which to burnish the gold leaf. But if you can accept less-than-perfect reflectivity, oil gilding is the way to go.

There are four basic steps in the process of oil gilding: sanding, sealing, sizing and laying the gold.

As you prepare a surface for gilding, it is important to note that gold is the least forgiving of all finishes. It will highlight any flaw in the surface to which it is applied. So sand, sand and sand some more. Gilders refer to 400-grit sandpaper as medium. When you think that your surface is good enough, keep sanding—the results will be quite visible.

Leaf can be applied directly to metal or glass, but a porous material like wood must be sealed before gold is applied. There are several ways to seal wood to accept gold. A traditional method is with a coat of shellac. Fresh shellac is a must; a 1-lb. cut is sufficient. Shellac is typically used with a tinted undercoat to ensure that bare wood is not visible when the gold leaf is abraded. For such a treatment, using a coat of Japan color under the shellac works nicely.

Commercial sealer is a simpler alternative to shellac. Most such sealers are available in either yellow ochre or red. The yellow ochre is a particularly good choice for the beginner, because it will hide any small gaps, or holidays, in the gold.

After the sealer comes the adhesive. Traditional oil-based sizing is available in either slow (12-hour) or quick (three-hour) set. Slow-set sizing takes 12 hours to come to tack, but then has 12 hours of open time; quick set takes three hours to come to tack and then has a three-hour working window. Other sizings are available for specialized applications.

Whichever sizing you use, apply the least amount possible. The object is to get a very thin, even coat free of brush strokes. As the sizing comes to tack, it imperceptibly flows out over the surface. The more freely it flows, the less visible your brush strokes will be. I prefer 12-hour sizing, be-

## LAYING THE LEAF

If the surface has been well prepared, laying the leaf goes with surprising speed. Leaf needn't be applied in any particular order; develop your own technique and rhythm.



**Snip to size.** When working with patent leaf, with its paper backing, use scissors to cut workable pieces.



**Place the leaf.** Holding the sheet by the paper backing, keep it taut until it contacts the workpiece.



**Press into place.** Then press it into full contact with the workpiece.



**Overlap is expected.** Each sheet of leaf you lay should slightly overlap the previous one.



**Get into the corners.** Use your finger to get the leaf to conform to inside corners.



**Brush away the seams.** Using a circular motion, brush off excess leaf with a gold mop. As you do, the seams between sheets of leaf will all but disappear.



**Save the skewings.** If you cover your work table with kraft paper, you can crease it and easily pour the excess gold, or skewings, into a jar.



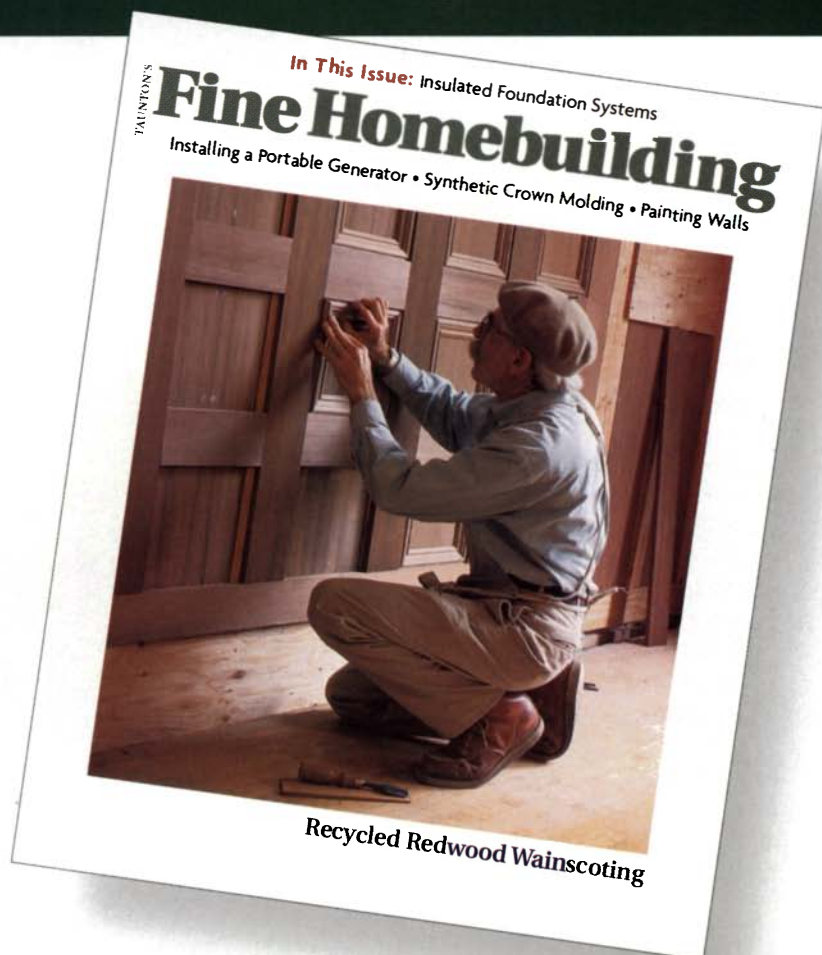
From the publishers of *Fine Woodworking*

# Craftsmanship on a bigger scale: *Fine Homebuilding*

From kitchen cabinets, fireplace mantels, and built-ins to wainscoting, crown molding, and trim, *Fine Homebuilding* features lots of residential woodworking projects. In addition, the magazine covers all aspects of home design and construction. Whether you want to do the work yourself or simply be assured that it's done right, *Fine Homebuilding* is the magazine for anyone who cares about quality.

- Learn from America's best builders
- Discover time- and money-saving tips
- Expand your building skills
- Work more efficiently
- Select the best tools and materials

Plus, included in your subscription are two exciting annual issues: *Houses* and *Kitchens & Baths*. One year of rock-solid building information is only \$36.00 (8 issues).



To order a *Fine Homebuilding* subscription today, call **1-800-888-8286** operator W868, or order on the web at **[www.finehomebuilding.com](http://www.finehomebuilding.com)**

# Master Class (continued)

cause it flows better and allows you more time to lay the leaf. The sizing is ready for gold when a touch of the finger finds it sticky but leaves no print.

Apply the leaf using the largest pieces you are comfortable working with. Some people lay whole sheets of gold, others find it easier to maneuver small sections. When you have one piece down, lay a second one so that it overlaps the first by  $\frac{1}{8}$  in. or so. Cover the entire surface with leaf, then go back and fill any small gaps.

Once you've covered the surface and filled any gaps, brush away the excess gold, or skewings, with a gold mop. Hold the brush firmly and use a gentle circular motion. The leaf adheres only to the sizing, not to other leaf, so as you continue to brush over the seams, they will fade, and it will be difficult to tell where each sheet of leaf began and ended.

Some people like to give gold leaf the appearance of an antique. You can create a patina to achieve this effect using caseins—water-soluble, quick-drying flat paints that can be intermixed without muddying. Mix several colors to create a dusty or dirty blend and then apply it with a rag. Rub off some of the mixture, leaving more color, or age, in corners and crevices where dust would naturally fall.

I rarely use a topcoat over gold leaf because it will dull the appearance of the gold. And for surfaces gilded with leaf 22 karat and higher, a topcoat is unnecessary, because they will not tarnish or corrode.

## WORKING WITH LOOSE LEAF

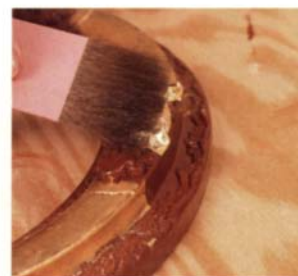
Leaf without a paper backing is trickier to work with but offers a wide range of colors and types of leaf not available with backing.



**Too tender for scissors.** Cut loose leaf with gentle pressure from a gilder's knife. To avoid contaminating the gilder's tip (brush), learn to hold it rather than laying it on the bench.



**Quick tip.** After cutting the leaf, lay the gilder's tip against the leaf and draw it away. The leaf should gently adhere to the tip.



**Leaf delivery.** Touch the tip to the workpiece, and the gold will cling to the sized surface.



**Coaxing with cotton.** Use a cotton swab to get the gold to conform to the main contours of a carving.



**Mop after swabbing.** A gold mop can be used after the cotton swab to press leaf into deep recesses.

## How and where to buy gold leaf

Gold leaf is sold to craftsmen by the book or by the pack. Each book contains 25 sheets of gold, and you can cover about 2 sq. ft. with a book's worth. A pack contains 20 books.

There are four main types of gold leaf used for gilding. Surface leaf is the traditional leaf used for gilding. Patent leaf, also called transfer leaf, is the same as surface leaf but comes adhered to a thin paper backing, which makes it easier to handle. Glass leaf is similar to surface leaf, but it has fewer imperfections, so it is ideal for signs on glass. Double leaf is like surface leaf but thicker (although not twice as thick); it is useful

for gilding objects with sharp edges that might cause thinner leaf to break. All four types come in various shades of gold.

The karat weight of gold—an indicator of the gold's purity, not its weight—is expressed in 24ths. Leaf marked 24K (karat) is pure gold. Leaf marked 23K is 23/24ths gold and 1/24th alloy.

Leaf thickness is measured by weighing 1,000 sheets and is expressed in grams. As an example, gold leaf designated 23K, 11g, would be thinner and cost less than 23K, 14g leaf.

Gold leaf costs about \$1 a sheet. You can buy gold leaf and gilding supplies from large art stores or from the following companies: Easy Leaf (6001 Santa Monica Blvd., Los Angeles, CA 90038; 800-569-LEAF); Sepp Leaf Products (381 Park Ave. S., Suite 301, New York, NY 10016; 212-683-2840); and Baggot Leaf Co. (430 Broome St., New York, NY 10013; 212-431-4653).



Extruded Aluminum Stop System

Steel Flip Stops

Shown with Hitachi #C10FS

Quick Release Wing Supports

Extends out to 84"

Heavy Duty Support Wings

**MODEL #2875**

3" Industrial Grade Casters with Locking Device

Adjustable Platform Levels Saw to Wings

Folds up for Easy Storage

**ROUSSEAU COMPANY**

**THE COMPACT DESIGN**

FREE CATALOG 800-635-3416 • [www.rousseauco.com](http://www.rousseauco.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 36

# ApolloCoat™

## Waterbased finishes have never been so easy

- Brush or Spray
- Non-Toxic
- Water Cleanup
- Lacquers
- Polyurethane
- Color Coats
- Stains

TOLL FREE 877-485-7663

[www.apollocoat.com](http://www.apollocoat.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 258

**finewoodworking.com**

## Our Index Is Now Online!

- Every issue, every article and tip since issue #1
- Easily searchable, continually updated
- Links to all tables of contents for every issue
- Cross referenced to *Fine Woodworking* books

Log on and start searching today!

*Fine Woodworking*

## CALL FOR ENTRIES

# Attention Custom Furniture Makers

Do you build furniture professionally? The Taunton Press is planning to publish a directory of 150 independent furniture makers whose work shows good design and solid craftsmanship.

To participate you must have been a professional furniture maker for at least two years and you must supply 4-8 publishable photos. All submissions will be judged by a panel of professional woodworkers. There is no charge to enter or to be included in the directory, if accepted.

If you are interested in participating, please contact us for an entry package at:

Independent Furniture Makers  
Books Department  
The Taunton Press  
63 South Main Street, P.O. Box 5506  
Newtown, CT 06470

Or at:  
[furnmake@taunton.com](mailto:furnmake@taunton.com)  
You may also call (800) 926-8776, ext. 610.

**The deadline for submissions is June 15, 2000.**

## To PIN . . . or NOT to PIN?

WE HAVE THE ANSWER!

TWO-WAY MOISTURE METER  
... PIN-TYPE OR PINLESS  
INSTANT PUSHBUTTON SELECTION  
WIDE RANGE 0% - 99% DIGITAL  
WOOD SPECIES COMPENSATION  
NEW DUAL-MODE MODEL CMT-908  
... ASK FOR FREE CATALOG OF ALL OUR MOISTURE METERS

**END WOOD WARPING NIGHTMARES**  
PIN-TYPE & PINLESS MOISTURE METERS FROM \$69

[www.odyssey.on.ca/~electrophysics](http://www.odyssey.on.ca/~electrophysics)

**Electrophysics** 1-800-244-9908

Box 1143, Station B  
London, Ontario  
Canada N6A 5K2

## MAKE YOUR SHAPER AND MOULDER KNIVES

with the new **VIEL PROFILE COPYING GRINDING MACHINE**

**VHS VIDEO \$9.95** (credited against machine purchase)

- Grinds knives directly to the tooth
- Makes distortion-free profiles

**\$699.00** Only

CALL 1-800-915-2601

**VIEL TOOLS INC.**

P.O. BOX 660, MADAWASKA, ME. 04756-0660

READER SERVICE NO. 255

**WIN A GRIZZLY TABLE SAW  
IN OUR CRAFTSMAN CONTEST**

The plans for this queen sized bed are CAD generated with pages of instructions. Nightstand included as a bonus.



#236

AMERICAN FURNITURE DESIGN  
P.O. BOX 300100 ESCONCADO, CA 92030  
BED PLAN \$21.95 +\$3.50 S&H  
CATALOG \$3.00  
760 743-6923  
www.americanfurnituredesign.com



Architectural Panels  
Sketch Faces  
Veneer

800-875-7084  
Hailey, Idaho

**got power?**  
www.slimspowertools.com

WEEKLY SPECIALS / FREE FREIGHT / LINKS

**3M™ Power Visor**  
\$159.00 Includes Battery Charger  
(\$5 Freight Charge)  
**Airware America**  
Box 975, Elbow Lake, MN 56531-0975  
3M Authorized Distributor  
http://www.mid-web.com/airware  
Free 1-800-328-1792  
Info



Ideal for wood dust

**IRION LUMBER COMPANY**  
P.O. Box 954 Wellsboro, PA 16901-0954  
570 724 1895 www.irionlumber.com

**PLAIN & FIGURED CHERRY  
TIGER MAPLE • WALNUT**

Widths from 5" to 18"+, matched sets for panels and drawer fronts, table tops, etc. Fitches, turning and post stock. Maple selected for good figure, cherry and walnut for color and minimal sap. Lumber hand selected, cut from our logs or to our specifications.

**MAHOGANY.** Fine furniture grade, selected for density, color and good grain/figure. Widths to 40"+, 10/4 planks resawn for bookmatched panels. Heavy figured planks for blockfronts and bombe chests.  
50' shipping min. - common carrier/UPS. Visa/MC  
Large inventory 4/4 - 16/4 - plank floors.

**WIDE AND MATCHED LUMBER**

**EXOTIC HARDWOODS of HAWAII**  
KOA • MANGO • NORFOLK PINE  
Over 40 Unique Species Lumber • Turning Blocks  
TOLL FREE 1-877-KOA-PLUS



**WINKLER**  
WOOD PRODUCTS  
www.interpac.net/~winkler E-mail: winkler@interpac.net  
PH 808-961-6411  
261-A Kekuaona St. Hilo, Hawaii 96720

**KREMER**  
PIGMENTS

**ALCOHOL-BASED DYES**

Repair Set of 3 primaries plus black lets you mix all colors.  
Item # 9408, 4 x 25 grams \$29.95

Call 1-800-995-5501 to order

Kremer Pigments Inc.  
228 Elizabeth Street · New York NY 10012 · (212) 219 2394

**THE TOOL CHEST** CRAFTSMAN LIBRARY CATALOG

... for both the professional and amateur.

1000's OF BOOKS COVERING

- Woodworking - All Aspects • Home Remodeling & Maintenance
- Tools & Their Uses • Contracting • Projects For Home & Recreation

Please send \$2 for catalog, refundable with first order.


THE TOOL CHEST • 45 Emerson Plaza East • Emerson, NJ 07630  
201-261-8665 1-800-617-TOOLS FAX: 201-261-3865  
FREE SHIPPING • ALL BOOK ORDERS OVER \$25

**PUZZLED?**  
Call 800-546-9663

**C u d s e y e**  
**T i g e r**  
**F l a m e**  
**B i r d s e y e**  
**Y**

Sandy Pond  
Hardwoods, Inc.  
www.figuredhardwoods.com

**S. LaRose, Inc.**  
Worldwide Distributors for Analogists



World's largest supplier of clock parts and tools.  
Order your FREE catalog, #W2, today!  
P.O. Box 21208 • Greensboro, N.C. 27420

For assistance: Send E-mail to: SLAROSE@worldnet.att.net  
Phone (336) 621-1936

**MAKE A WINDSOR CHAIR**  
with Michael Dunbar




Week-long Workshops Held Year-round

44 Timber Swamp Road  
Hampton, NH 03842  
603-929-9801  
thewindsorinstitute.com

**Study Carving in Vermont**  
with Thomas Golding

Week-long Intensives in New and Traditional Woodcarving. Year round.



HCR 33, Box 7, Saxtons River, VT 05154  
Ph/fax 800-710-1872 www.sovet.net/~carving



**BAUHAUS APPRENTICESHIP INSTITUTE**  
A non-profit institution concerned with education in American Art and Craft

Apprenticeship: Art-Furniture Construction/Design, one year-ful-time, hands-on, professional, no tuition / no salary.  
756 Hannah St., Forest Park, IL 60130, (708) 488-8398

**CUSTOM BRANDING IRONS**  
HIGH QUALITY, DEEP ENGRAVED BRONZE DIES  
LONG LASTING - INDUSTRIAL DUTY HEATERS  
**NOT THE CHEAPEST - QUALITY COSTS MORE**  
**FREE BROCHURE AND SAMPLE BRANDS**

ENGRAVING ARTS 800-422-4509 fax: 707-984-8045  
P.O. Box 787 www.brandingirons.net  
Laytonville, CA 95454 e-mail: clem@brandingirons.net

**The Fine & Creative Woodworking Program at  
ROCKINGHAM COMMUNITY COLLEGE**

is an internationally recognized associate degree & certificate program. Instruction in hand-tools, furniture, construction, shop start-up, operation & much more.

PO Box 38, Wentworth, NC 27375-0038  
Phone: (336) 342-4261, ext. 178.  
www.rcc.cc.nc.us/woodwork/homepage.html  
AAEEOC

**For a SAFER  
Working Environment**




Powered and Supplied Air Systems

(800) 637-6606  
3M Authorized Distributor

www.envirosafetyproducts.com

**WWS TAIWAN MACHINERY WEB** WORLDWIDE SERVICES

**WWW.WWSTAIWAN.COM**

Searchable database of Taiwanese Manufacturers, trade show information and a trade opportunities bulletin board.

**CUT NAILS . . . for  
Restoration and Historic  
Reconstruction from the  
oldest nailmaker in the U.S.**



Send for our free catalog featuring a wide variety of antique hardware, accessories and a complete line of our restoration nails including rose head, fine finish and wrought head. Order our cut nail sample set of 20 Historic patterns. \$9.25 ppd.

**TREMONT NAIL CO.**  
800-842-0560 cutnails@aol.com

**DRY YOUR OWN LUMBER**

Ebac's user friendly dry kilns 200BF - 40,000BF  
Mix species in same load. Great 3 year warranty!  
Over 7,000 systems worldwide!  
Ebac Lumber Dryers  
Call Today! 800-433-9011  
Manufactured by craftsmen in Williamsburg, VA.

**DOOR PLANER**  
18" long one piece aluminum cast housing, 13 Lbs. 3" wide 12amp optional micrometric fence



**\$350**

**3" CURVE PLANER**



**\$325**

3" wide, 18" concave, 16" convex

**Edge Lipping Planer**  
\$440 flush planing edge strips 2-1/4" wide, carbide blades for hardwood, laminate and solid surfaces. Teflon non-scratch surface, continuous adjustable cut depth, 1/8" removal rate strong & sturdy 17 pounds, 1050 w 11,100 rpm



WWW.VIRUTEX.COM • 800-868-9663 • FAX:212-989-1777

**TURNINGS UNLIMITED**

Custom & Production  
Wood Turning  
CNC Routing



(937) 845-0211 Fax: (937) 845-0230 270 Brubaker Dr., New Carlisle, OH 45344

[www.supremedesignproducts.com](http://www.supremedesignproducts.com) invites you to build your Dream Router Table, with features never available before at any price.



Supreme Design Products Ltd.  
P.O. Box 24044, Dept. F  
Guelph, ON  
Canada N1E 6V8

**TROPICAL EXOTIC HARDWOODS OF LATIN AMERICA**

ORDERS: 888-434-3031  
QUESTIONS: 760-434-3030

LUMBER • BOWL STOCK  
SLABS • SQUARES • LOGS

• SAWMILL DIRECT ••

Our website updates almost daily.  
www.anexotichardwood.com




**self adhesive GREEN FELT**  
Discounted Refinishing Supplies

Over 2000 products for refinishing and woodworking  
Self adhesive felt comes 3 ft. wide FREE CATALOG sold by the lineal ft. Order Today!

item #255-305  
**\$4.95** per lineal ft. plus s & h  
minimum order \$15.00



**E.C. REFINISHER'S WAREHOUSE®**  
13 Amy Elsey Dr. Charleston SC 29407

CALL 1-800-636-8555

If You're Shopping for a **TORMEK®**

Call Us First!

- All Accessories in Stock
- 5 Year Extended Warranty
- Technical Assistance



**FARRIS MACHINERY**  
1106 VALLEY RIDGE DRIVE  
GRAIN VALLEY, MO 64029 **800-872-5489**

Quality German Workbenches  
**1-800-32Bench**



**Diefenbach Benches**  
P.O. Box 370043  
Denver, CO 80237

www.workbenches.com

CUSTOM ROUTER BITS, CUTTERS & KNIVES  
2 week or less delivery

**LIBERTY LINE**  
WHEN IT COMES TO ROUTER BITS WE KNOW WHAT WE'RE TALKING ABOUT.

**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
"Industry Leader In Custom Router Bits"  
FAX us your custom drawings toll free at 1-888-RCT-TOOL (728-8665) or mail drawings or wood samples

**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
595 New York Ave., PO Box 497, Lyndhurst, NJ 07017  
Send \$3 for complete 100 page Stock Tool Catalog or see us at [www.ridgecarbide.com](http://www.ridgecarbide.com)  
**800-443-0992**

**ON-LINE WOOD AUCTION**

Save on the materials you need!  
Sell direct the products you don't!  
Fast, safe, neutral, secure.

• Exotics to sawdust  
• Large quantities to one-offs  
• Tools and equipment  
• Industry news & free newsletter!



[www.e-Wood.com/H4B](http://www.e-Wood.com/H4B)  
Or call toll free 877 487 6504

**EASY-ON-THE-FEET Shop Flooring**

As seen in *Fine Woodworking* #137 "Tools & Materials"  
UNIQUE FLOORING for YOUR SHOP combines Durability with Comfort Underfoot. Reduces fatigue, noise, vibration. Easy to install.

**Lin Mar Distributors 800-954-6627**

**Router Bits on the Web**



[www.routerbits.com](http://www.routerbits.com)

**An Education in Craftsmanship**

For careers in:

- CARPENTRY
- PRESERVATION CARPENTRY
- CABINET & FURNITURE MAKING
- PIANO TECHNOLOGY
- VIOLIN MAKING & RESTORATION

Financial aid for qualified students. Accredited member ACCSCT. Short workshops are also offered.

**NORTH BENNET STREET SCHOOL**  
39 North Bennet Street • Boston, MA 02113  
(617) 227-0155 • [www.nbss.org](http://www.nbss.org)

**WORKSHOP TOILETS**  
SUN-MAR

**COMPOSTING TOILETS**  
Many models available.

- NO Septic
- NO Odor
- NO Water



FREE: 24 Page Color Catalog  
**1-800-461-2461**  
SUN-MAR CORP. 600 Main Street, Tonawanda, New York 14150


**WEST PENN HARDWOODS, INC.**  
SATISFACTION GUARANTEED \*\* NO MINIMUM ORDERS  
QUARTER-SAWN WHITE OAK  
HIGH FIGURE CURLY MAPLE

MANY EXOTIC SPECIES INCLUDING:  
BLOODWOOD, BUBINGA, JATOBA, SPANISH CEDAR,  
PADAUK, PURPLEHEART, ZEBRAWOOD  
TOLL FREE (888)636-WOOD(9663)

**DOVETAILED DRAWERS**  
Reasonably priced method to distinguish your cabinets.


- Custom-sized width and depth
- 1/2" solid maple, assembled and sanded
- 2-coat catalyzed finish available
- Quick service, shipped UPS

**EAGLE WOODWORKING**  
1130 East Street, Tewksbury, MA 01876-1459  
FAX (978) 640-1501 (800) 628-4849



**TWO CHERRIES**

Huge selection of hand forged woodcarving and bench chisels



Robert Larson Co.  
San Francisco  
800-356-2195  
[www.rlarson.com](http://www.rlarson.com)

Since 1858

**CURIO/CHINA CABINET**

Full Size Plan shows complete construction details. Glass shelves and mirrored back show off your collection. Can be wired for interior lighting.

41-1/4" x 15-5/8" deep x 75" high  
Plan #323 \$25.50 ppd  
1-800-657-7692 or write:  
Furniture Designs, Inc.  
Dept. KC-30  
1827 Elmdale Av. Glenview, IL 60025  
<http://www.furnituredesigns.com>



**NORTHERN HARDWOODS**  
Cabinet Hardwoods and Plywoods

**Custom Millwork • Flooring  
Stair Parts • Custom Doors**

*We Ship Any Amount - Anywhere*  
Lyndonville, Vermont  
1-800-626-3275

Also: Opening new outlet in Williston, VT - Oct. 1999

**YANKEE HARDWOOD SPECIALTIES**

Select hardwoods  
Price quotes; monthly specials  
Providing woodworkers w/top quality  
hardwood for their prized creations.  
Gift Certificates available.  
[www.yankeehardwood.com](http://www.yankeehardwood.com)  
OR phone us at 800-646-6929  
Clearance Items Available. MC/V

**GILMER WOOD CO.**  
Quality Domestic & Exotic Lumber

- Logs, blanks, squares
- Over 50 species in stock
- Thin woods, Assortments, Books
- Musical Instrument woods

Phone 503-274-1271  
2211 NW St. Helens Rd, Portland OR 97210  
Fax 503-274-9839 e-mail:gilmerwood@aol.com

**Hardwoods & Veneers**  
Best Selection • Best Quality • Best Value  
visit [www.constantines.com](http://www.constantines.com)  
or call toll free 1-800-223-8087

**CONSTANTINE'S** FREE Wood ID Wall Chart with first order  
Dept. 37003, 2050 Eastchester Rd, Bronx, NY 10461

**FREE Woodcarving**  
✓ Workshop Info &  
✓ Tool Catalog

Call Toll Free (M-F, 9-4:30pm)  
**888-901-8099**  
Whillock Woodcarving & STUBAI Direct  
122 NE 1st Ave • Faribault, MN 55021  
• wholesale available •  
• [www.whillock.com](http://www.whillock.com) •

**Oregon Black Walnut** MasterCard

**GOBY** Wide lumber - 4/4 through 16/4  
WALNUT PRODUCTS Turning - Carving Stock  
5016 Palestine Rd. Gunstocks  
Albany, OR 97321 Instrument Grade Lumber  
VIEWING BY APPOINTMENT ONLY No Minimum Order  
(541) 926-1079 Web Site : [www.gobywalnut.com](http://www.gobywalnut.com)

**TECH-WOOD, INC.**  
Domestic & Imported Hardwoods

Holly, Blackwood, Apple, Koa  
+ 60 other species, 4/4-16/4  
Burls, Slabs, Thin Lumber  
**717-933-8989**

**CUSTOM WAINSCOT PANELS**

Ready to Install ~ Save Time ~ Save Labor  
Thirty-five styles to choose from  
See us at [www.customwoodpaneling.com](http://www.customwoodpaneling.com)  
**CREATIVE ACCENTS (406) 862-0342**

**The PECK TOOL** since 1929  
company We are proud to feature carving tools by Heinrich Bracht, maker of fine quality woodworking tools for over 100 years!

"Fine German & Japanese woodworking tools for the discerning woodworker"

Please call for a Free Catalog! 1.303.440.5480  
PO Box 4744 • Boulder, CO 80306-4744 • [www.PeckTool.com](http://www.PeckTool.com)

Interior/Exterior Builders - Household Hardware Handforged Cast Brass/Bronze Custom Creative Handforging Fireplace Tools/Accessories Repairs/Restoration/Reproduction Furniture Hardware Recast Locks MC VISA/ FAX 828-665-8303 Catalogs \$5.00 Kayne & Son Forged Hardware, Dept. FW 100 Daniel Ridge Road, Candler, NC 28715, 828-667-8868

**AFRICAN EXOTIC HARDWOODS**

- BEST PRICES - DIRECT FROM SOURCE
- CLEAR GRADES
- LARGE OR SMALL ORDERS WELCOME
- SHIPPED PROMPTLY NATIONWIDE
- ASK ABOUT SAMPLE KITS

CONTACT MAX OR FABS TODAY (828) 658-8455 TEL.  
**CORMARK INTERNATIONAL (828) 645-8364 FAX.**  
181 REEMS CREEK ROAD, WEAVER, NC 28787

If you can build a boat with it, why not a chair?

**MAS EPOXIES**  
1-888-627-3769  
[www.masepoxies.com](http://www.masepoxies.com)

**NOW, two ways to get great Woodworking Plans Online**

- Download from the Web
  - Immediate delivery
  - Print on your computer
  - 100+ plans to choose from
- In the Mail at Home
  - Large shop drawings
  - Color instruction booklet
  - Plans for home & shop

Plans NOW [www.PlansNOW.com](http://www.PlansNOW.com)

Great outdoor projects like our Garden Arbor  
**Woodsmith Store.**  
[www.WoodsmithStore.com](http://www.WoodsmithStore.com)

**PSI Tempest Cyclone™**  
The most efficient dust collection system available

- Low Noise • Small Footprint
- 2-1/2 hp motor, 220V, 1350 CFM Blower Unit
- Optional Stand

Only .... \$599 FOB PHILA

FREE FULL LINE CATALOG!  
**Penn State Industries**  
1-800-377-7297  
SHOP ONLINE: [www.pennstateind.com](http://www.pennstateind.com)

**AMERICA'S FINEST CLOCK KITS**

- Clock kits
- Hard to make parts
- Plans
- Movements, dials
- Hardware, glass
- Assembled clocks

564 Weber St. N.  
Waterloo, ONT, Canada N2L-5C6  
(P) 519-884-2511 (F) 519-884-2512  
email: [info@colonialtimes.com](mailto:info@colonialtimes.com) [www.colonialtimes.com](http://www.colonialtimes.com)  
Send for your FREE 32 page catalog!

**Throw us a curve,**  
Craftwood's Ready!!!  
True Flexible Veneers available in Phenolic backed, 5, 10, 20 mil. paperbacked, and Real Wood Wallcovering. Over 60 species including hard to find exotics. Setting the standards for quality for over 25 years.  
Call today for a distributor near you!  
Dealer inquiries welcome.

1801 Progress Way  
Clarksville, IN 47129-9205  
812-288-9201  
Fax: 812-288-5225  
VENEER PRODUCTS from SRWOOD [www.craftwood-srwood.com](http://www.craftwood-srwood.com)

**The FURNITURE INSTITUTE of MASSACHUSETTS**  
Philip C. Lowe, Director  
A 2-year Hands-on Program

Learn the craft of building traditional furniture as featured in the *Fine Woodworking* video  
*Measuring Furniture for Reproduction.*

116 Water Street  
Beverly, MA 01915  
[www.Lshore.net/~furnitur/](http://www.Lshore.net/~furnitur/)  
(978) 922-0615 Summer Workshops available.

**MARC ADAMS SUMMER 2000 School of Woodworking**  
Courses run May thru October.  
Send for Our Complete Class Brochure Or Visit Our Website:  
[www.marcadams.com](http://www.marcadams.com)  
**M.A.S.W.** 1-317-535-4013  
Scholarships Available  
See our ad on page 15

**Classic Cabinet Hardware**  
Quality, Value & Same Day Shipping  
Premier Source for Cabinet Makers & Restorers

76 Page Catalog \$4.00  
1-800-241-9741  
[www.paxtonhardware.com](http://www.paxtonhardware.com)

**PAXTON HARDWARE, LTD**  
PO Box 256, Dept FW11, Upper Falls, MD 21156

**World Timber Corp., Inc.**  
 P.O. Box 219, Hubert, NC 28539  
 e-mail: worldtimber@tcp1.com

**Foreign & Domestic  
 WORLDWIDE  
 HARDWOOD SPECIALISTS**

Warehouse  
 578 Hubert Blvd. Phone: 910-326-6252  
 Hubert, NC 28539 FAX: 910-326-6827

www.right-tool.com

**freud**

**WOW!** 1/4" Router Bits  
 26-Piece Set  
**\$279.95** Mar/Apr Only

**Good Hope Hardwoods, Inc.**  
 Fine Lumber - Personal Service

**Tiger Maple**  
 4/4 - 16/4 RWL & Matched Sets  
 Figured Cherry  
 Highly Figured Claro Walnut  
 Quarter Sawn White Oak  
 Plain Cherry and Walnut

**Plank Flooring**  
 (610) 274-8842  
 1627 New London Road  
 Landenberg, PA 19350

**The Woodworkers Dream**  
 Repair, Rebuild, Restore, Patch and Bond Wood.

**QUIKWOOD® Epoxy Stick**  
 888-4-fixwood • 888-434-9966 ext 2209  
 e-mail psi@polymerics.com • www.polymerics.com

**Free Brochure** **When Fillers or Glue Won't Do!**

**APPRENTICE  
 WITH MASTER CRAFT ARTIST**

Woodturning, Furniture Design and Marketing  
**California Contemporary Craft Assoc**  
 PO Box 2060, Sausalito, CA 94966  
 Phone/Fax 415-458-3535 www.finecraft.org

**We make the world plane**

*We also make it fancy*

Primus Improved Smooth Plane \$176 Ppd.  
 For InfoLog on all E.C.E.'s tools, benches,  
 etc., send \$2 (refundable): DWD, Box 542,  
 Crystal Lake, IL 60039-0542. (800)724-7758

**WorkSavers.com**

**YOUR ON-LINE SOURCE FOR HARD-TO-FIND  
 TOOLS & ACCESSORIES, HOME REPAIR AND  
 PAINTING PRODUCTS - QUALITY MADE IN USA**

**We make the hard work - EASY!**

**LAKEONE®**

High Quality Buffing Wax, Stains, Cleaners  
 and Traditional Restoration Products  
 from the Leading Manufacturer in France  
 -since 1902-

Call (800) 326 6894  
 www.lakeoneusa.com

**Spring Screenings  
 Apply Now for  
 ACC Holiday Shows**

The American Craft Council's December 2000  
 show season provides craft makers with excellent  
 opportunities to reach upscale retail customers  
 during the holiday shopping season in two of  
 America's hottest markets—Sarasota, Florida and  
 Charlotte, North Carolina. Thanks to our rigorous  
 jurying process, you can be sure that your work  
 will be showcased alongside other extremely high  
 quality contemporary American craft.

**Call 800/836-3470**  
 for an application package

**The Thomas Chippendale  
 School of Furniture**

Scotland's leading independent furniture school. Instruction in all  
 aspects of fine furniture design and making as well as furniture  
 history and restoration. Attend our 30 week intensive career course  
 in the heart of the Scottish countryside.

We are proud to announce the opening of our new sister school in  
 South Carolina, USA offering short courses with our visiting British  
 instructors.

**Veneering • Carving • Gilding • Wood Bending • Turning**

For more information call or E-mail us:  
 SCOTLAND: 011 44 1620 810 680  
 SOUTH CAROLINA: (888) 374-8453 or (803) 892-4153  
 Visit our website at: www.chippendale.co.uk/

**Woodworker's Dream!**

Ingenious lightweight sawhorse, as reviewed in  
*Fine Woodworking* #133, pg.46. Supports 1500 lbs.  
 per pair, open and close with one hand, tucks neatly  
 away in just 2.5" width! Best sawhorse you'll ever use,  
 UNCONDITIONAL 30-day money-back GUARANTEE.  
 Patent pending, \$69.95 a pair plus shipping.

**Quick-Fold® Sawhorse Company**  
 28 River Street, PO BOX 552 • Windsor, VT 05089 • 802-674-2554

**CONOVER  
 WORKSHOPS**

**EDUCATING AMERICA'S WOODWORKERS**  
 18125 Madison Rd. • P.O. Box 679 • Parkman, OH 44080  
 www.conoverworkshops.com  
 ph. 440-548-3491 fax 440-548-2721

**SAVE THOUSANDS —  
 best value on the market!**

**Factory Direct!**

- Easy Do-it-yourself Construction
- Maintenance Free
- 100% Useable Space
- Free Blueprints
- 25 Year Warranty

**SAVE UP TO \$5,000 ON STEEL BUILDING KITS**

25x34 • 30x46 • 40x56 • 50x116  
 Additional sizes available

CALL FOR FREE INFORMATION!  
**1-800-463-6062**  
 BROCHURE AND FACTORY PRICE LIST

**U.S. Buildings**  
 www.us-buildings.com

**BLUE MOON  
 EXOTIC WOOD, LLC.**

**Cuban Mahogany**

Blue Moon Exotic Wood offers sustainably harvested tropical timber. The finest Cuban Mahogany (*Swietenia Mahogani*) is available in premium widths, lengths and thicknesses. Contact Blue Moon Exotic Wood, LLC at 877-894-9663, or orders@bluemoonexoticwood.com. Visit our Web page: www.bluemoonexoticwood.com

**Precision Mini-Lathes  
 Pen Kits & Pre-Drilled Turning Blanks  
 Turner's Magic™ Polishes**

**WoodWrite Ltd**  
 888-WOODWRITE (966-3974)  
 www.WoodWriteLtd.com

**SELF-ADHESIVE  
 70% WOOL FELT**

TAPES • STRIPS • TABS • DOTS

**1-800-796-2333** APPROX. 1/16" & 1/8" THICK  
 BROWN, GREEN, BLACK  
 WHITE, AND SILVER GRAY

**UBAWN** 9611 SOUTH COTTAGE GROVE AVE.  
 PRODUCTS DIV. CHICAGO, IL 60628  
 773-735-2344 • FAX 773-735-2390

**WIDE SELECTION OF HARDWOODS**

**Quartersawn White Oak**  
 Cherry, maple, curly, bird's-eye,  
 walnut, oak, poplar, 3/4 to 12/4.  
**Fancy Veneers & Plywood**  
**800-758-0950**  
 P.O. Box 582, Buffalo, NY 14207  
 www.blueoxhardwoods.com

**HARDWOODS**  
 Over 100 Quality Hardwoods from Around the World  
**LUMBER • VENEER • TURNING STOCK**

- Timbers from Protected Forests •
- Quantity Discounts •
- Prompt Shipping Arranged Worldwide •
- Custom Milling—Lumber Cut to Size •
- All Inquiries Welcome •
- Call or Write for a Free Catalog •
- Satisfaction Guaranteed •

Visit us on the World Wide Web  
**www.woodworkerssource.com**  
 for Specials, Current Prices & Complete Wood Descriptions  
 e-mail: wood@woodworkerssource.com

**1-800-423-2450**  
**WOODWORKERS Source**  
 5402 S. 40th St. • Phoenix, AZ 85040

**On Line Store Open - www.macbeath.com**  
 featuring lumber packs, veneer, handrail fittings,  
 ash bat blanks, furniture squares, maple countertops  
 and more...



930 Ashby Ave., Berkeley, CA 94710  
 800-479-9907  
 (510) 843-4390 FAX 510-843-9378

## OAKWOOD VENEER Co.

- Specializing in exotic and burl wood veneer
- Flexible paper-backed wood veneer
- 75 species in stock • Sheet sizes up to 4 x 12'

**CALL FOR FREE SAMPLE!!**  
 (800) 426-6018 • (248) 542-9979  
 3642 W. 11 MILE, BERKLEY, MI 48072



**accurate and tear out free**  
 system/shelf pin holes in all materials  
 with your plunge router **professional appearance**  
 32mm European system or traditional 1" centers



phone/fax **609-587-7187**  
 9 John Lenhardt Road  
 Hamilton Square, NJ 08690  
 www.megproducts.com

## BRING THE OUTDOORS, INDOORS



MANUFACTURERS OF QUALITY  
 CABINET DOORS AND DRAWER FRONTS  
 SINCE 1980 • CUSTOMIZED TO FIT YOUR  
 CUSTOMER'S LIFESTYLE  
 PHONE: 1-800-273-8600  
 FAX: 1-800-565-5019

**MASS BAY WOOD PRODUCTS, INC.**  
 145 Fisher Street P.O. Box 497 • Franklin, MA 02038

**The best  
 sawmill  
 value...ever.**

**\$3795**



FREE INFORMATION - USA & CANADA  
**1-800-661-7746**



## CUSTOM BOATS • PLANS AND KITS

LIGHTWEIGHT, WOOD-STRIP • CANOES & KAYAKS

www.LaughingLoon.com

413-773-5375



COLOR CATALOG \$5 US, \$8 INTL.  
 833F COLRAIN RD., GREENFIELD, MA 01301

## CAMBium BOOKS

Authentic information for  
 woodworkers and furniture makers

**FREE 48 PAGE BOOK CATALOG**  
 PO Box 909 Dept T Bethel, CT 06801

PH 800.238.7724 FAX 203.778.2785

## Branding Irons

**STOCK - \$59.95 CUSTOM - as low as \$78**

Signatures, logos, names. Any size or design.  
 Optional temperature controller, drill press mount.  
 Our personal service will save you money.  
 Same-day quotations. Quick turnaround from order to delivery.  
 1-800-964-8251 **BrandNew** www.brandnew.net  
*Wouldn't your work look better with your name on it?*

## EXOTIC & DOMESTIC HARDWOODS

LUMBER • PLYWOOD • VENEERS • TURNING BLOCKS • BURLS  
 We specialize in small to medium size orders!  
 Over 80 species of hardwood in stock.  
 CALL FOR PRICE LIST:  
 800-354-9002  
 FAX 516-378-0345  
 www.woodply.com  
 100 Bennington Ave., Dept. F W  
 Freeport, NY 11520

## OLD GROWTH

**Quartersawn White & Red Oak  
 Wide Quartersawn & Curly Sycamore**

Precision sawn figured lumber and bookmatched flitches



610-775-0400

RD#3, Box 3268  
 Mohnton, PA  
 19540-9339  
 MSA / MasterCard

## The Cutting Edge Turner's & Carver's Supply

Lyle Jamieson Stabilizer  
 Handle & Boring Bar  
 For Deep Hollowing



\$159.99

Lathes By JET, OneWay & Sherline

Tools by Henry Taylor, Sorby, Lie Nielsen, Jamieson,  
 FlexCut, Glaser, Stewart, Kelton, OneWay & More!  
 Power Carving & Wood Burning Tools



7123 South West Fwy  
 Houston TX 77074

713/ 981-9228

www.cuttingedgetools.com

## FURNITURE & CABINET MAKING

Furniture & Cabinetmaking breaks the mould of  
 woodworking magazines, featuring great projects  
 from real makers and techniques from the  
 experts to help you make even better furniture.  
 Be first to get inside information on all the  
 latest furniture-makers' equipment, and the  
 classic tools we all love - every month.

For details of how  
 to subscribe contact:

GMC PUBLICATIONS,  
 166 High Street,  
 Lewes, East Sussex  
 BN7 1XU England.

Toll Free:  
 1 800 225 9262  
 Fax:  
 0044 1273 478 606



## The Fine GoldLeaf People

- Genuine, Composition and Variegated
- In Sheets and Rolls
- Brushes, Supplies and Tools
- Technical Literature and Videos

Work with the best in the business!!

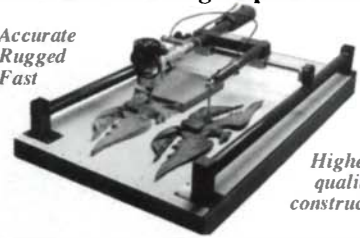
800-283-5323

P.O. Box 38, Tallman, NY 10982-0038  
 Shipping - Receiving  
 25 Church Road, Monsey, NY  
 914-368-1100 • Fax 914-368-1535  
 In Canada Tel/fax: 416-787-7331



## Gemini Carving Duplicator

- Accurate
- Rugged
- Fast



Highest  
 quality  
 construction

Visit our website or call for more information  
**www.wood-carver.com**  
 Allred & Associates, Inc  
 5566 Jordan Road - Elbridge NY 13060  
 carvers@dreamscape.com 315-689-1626

## Free Hand Tool Catalog

Fine European and Domestic Edge Tools

Two Cheries Stubai	<b>Diefenbacher Tools</b> 12132 Old Big Bend • St. Louis, MO 63122 Fax: 314-966-4629	Chisels Carving Tools Turning Tools
-----------------------	--	---

800-326-5316 • www.diefenbacher.com

## First Choice of Restoration Authorities

Exclusive Licensee for *Old Village*® Butternut Paint Colours  
 CALL OR WRITE FOR COLOUR CARDS AND DESCRIPTIVE LITERATURE



Fifth generation paintmakers...since 1816 e-mail: info@oldvillage.com  
 P.O. Box 1030, Fort Washington, PA 19034 • (610) 238-6001 • FAX (610) 238-9002

## HARDWOOD ADVANTAGE PACKS!

25bf 30-60"L, 4-10"W, S2S to 13/16" clear 1 face  
 Cherry \$98, Red Oak or Maple \$84, Poplar \$63

➤ **CALL 800-724-0132**

We pay most UPS shipping. Catalog \$1 (free with order)  
**SHORT PACKS TOO • www.bristolvalley.com**

**BRISTOL VALLEY HARDWOODS**

4054 Rt 64 at Rt 20A, Canandaigua, NY 14424

## WEST SYSTEM®

BOATBUILDERS SWEAR BY IT,  
 and so will you.

Strong, waterproof WEST SYSTEM® Brand epoxy is  
 more than a 2-part adhesive. It's a complete system of  
 resin, hardeners, fillers and additives from which you  
 can easily create the perfect bonding, coating and  
 sealing agents for your wood or composite project.

For a free copy of the 30-page WEST SYSTEM®  
 User Manual & Product Guide, write:

Gougeon Brothers, Inc.  
 Dept. 44, P.O. Box 908  
 Bay City, MI 48707  
 517-684-7286

## Build a Clock!

Clock kits, from grandfather to  
 shelf clocks, including plans,  
 movements, and dials. Send \$2.00  
 for a full-color catalog, and receive a  
 \$5.00 credit voucher toward your  
 first purchase.

## MURRAY CLOCK CRAFT


512 McNicoll Ave., Willowdale, Ont. M2H 2E1  
 Tel: (416) 499-4531, Fax: (416) 499-3686  
 E-mail: clock@interlog.com

www.murrayclock.com





**peters valley**  
craft education center  
973-948-5200 www.pvcrafts.org  
summer 2000  
woodworking workshops  
call for a catalogue or visit our website



OLD & REGULAR GROWTH QUARTERSAWN  
• WHITE OAK • RED OAK • CHERRY • SYCAMORE  
CURLY & FIGURED CHERRY/MAPLE  
1-800-972-4625




**FACTORY DIRECT PRICES**  
check us out now!

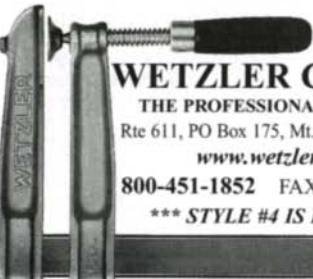


1-800-387-9789  
www.exaktortools.com

**CATALOG for WOODTURNERS!**  
Call Toll Free...  
(800)-683-8876  
Fax... (828) 859-5551  
E-Mail... packard@alltel.net  
Packard Woodworks - PO Box 718 - Tryon - NC 28782



MADE IN USA  
**WETZLER CLAMPS**  
THE PROFESSIONALS' CHOICE  
Rte 611, PO Box 175, Mt. Bethel, PA 18343  
www.wetzler.com  
800-451-1852 FAX: 570-897-5891  
\*\*\* STYLE #4 IS BACK! \*\*\*



**When Only The  
Finest Veneer  
Will Do...**  
Custom woodworkers,  
furniture designers  
and architects  
rely on us.  
716-655-0206



13000 Route 78 • East Aurora, NY 14052  
Fax: 716-655-3446 • www.certainlywood.com

**Frank Mittermeier**  
www.dastraUSA.com


- Dastra woodscrew brand carving tools
- Exclusive US importer
- Largest Selection
- Professionals tell us our tools hold an edge longer than any other brand.



**FREE Color Catalog Available!**  
1-800-360-3843 • Fax: 718-518-7233  
P.O. Box 2, Throgs Neck Station  
3577 E. Tremont Ave., Bx., NY 10465


**The Museum of Woodworking Tools**

The internet-based Museum sells fine reproductions of classic tools, replacement parts for Stanley planes, videos and hundreds of books on tools. Checkout our new exhibits, *Woodworking in Vietnam and American Levels*.



www.toolsforworkingwood.com

**QUILTED MAPLE**  
Domestic Figured Wood  
Maple Burl, Birdseye, Curly & Spalted Maple, Western Walnut & Myrtlewood.  
(541) 327-1000  
http://www.nwtimber.com  
Northwest Timber • Lewis Judy, Mgr.



**A Woodworker's Dream**

Experience a one week workshop where you learn to build Shaker-inspired furniture with one of our finest craftsmen. One-on-one instruction in a superb shop located in a restored Shaker village. See *Fine Woodworking*, May '93 for profile. Call for details.

**DANA ROBES**  
**WOOD CRAFTSMEN**  
Lower Shaker Village, PO Box 707-HF 1  
Enfield, NH 03748 800-722-5036

**GUITAR MAKING**  
Master Class with Charles Fox  
Invest six days, gain the knowledge of 30 years. Use your woodworking skills to create fine guitars.  
2000 Courses: Feb. 21-26, May 22-27, Aug. 21-26, Nov. 13-18  
707/431-7836



**DESK TOP LEATHERS**



**ANDREW MUIRHEAD**  
FINE SCOTTISH LEATHER  
WAREHOUSED & DISTRIBUTED BY  
DCT HOLDINGS CORP.  
Call for free color card 1-800-469-2793

FROM THE HEART OF  
**BIRDSEYE MAPLE COUNTRY**  
PRIME QUALITY LUMBER AND FLOORING

**RARE EARTH HARDWOODS** 1-800-968-0074  
IMPORTERS / MANUFACTURERS fax: 1-800-968-0094

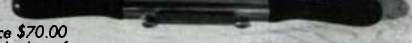
Direct importers of hardwood flooring and lumber worldwide.  
Over 80 species in stock

*Protect your Finish with BLOXYGEN*



Special gases Block Oxygen during storage.  
IronWood Designs, P.O. Box 13836, San Luis Obispo, CA 93406  
(805) 942-9219 phone & fax • See www.bloxygen.com

**Kelly Tool Works No. 1 Spokeshave**  
A handcrafted remake of the Miller Falls 1884 patent No. 1 spokeshave.



Price \$70.00  
Spokeshave features rosewood handles and an adjustable mouth. We also make a variety of Norris type planes. Call or write for particulars.  
P.O. Box 1813, Kernville, CA 93238 (760) 376-4804

**Penland School of Crafts**

One-, two-, & eight-week classes in woodworking and nine other craft media. For complete course information, visit our web site or call for a catalog.

P.O. Box 37 • Penland, NC 28765  
http://penland.org 828-765-2359

**DUST BOY, INC.**  
Portable • 1 & 2 HP Dust Collectors

- Cast Aluminum Blowers
- High Efficiency
- Extremely Quiet
- American Made
- 5 Year Warranty


Visit us at our web site  
http://www.dustboy.com  
**DUST BOY, INC.**  
205 So. Walnut St.  
P.O. Box 278  
Arcanum, OH 45304  
(937) 692-8838  
Fax (937) 692-8266  
800-232-3878



**Mid-Maine Hardwoods**  
**BIRDSEYE and CURLY MAPLE**  
8/4, 10/4, 12/4, 16/4 Curly Maple  
Available as Squares or Lumber.  
www.birdseyemaple.com  
P.O. Box 26, Mattawamkeag, ME 04459  
Phone (207) 736-2396 Fax (207) 736-2398

**FINE CABINETMAKING**  
Cabinetmaking degree program emphasizing versatile artistry in design and employing traditional techniques in construction of fine custom furniture.  
Individualized instruction focused on problem resolution and development of creativity.  
SACS accredited. Affordable tuition.  
Rodger Haines, Instructor  
(334) 745-6437  
Fax: (334) 742-9418

Southern Union State CC  
1701 Lafayette Pkwy  
Opelika, AL 36801





Ever wanted to go shopping down-under? Many unique products - take advantage of your US\$ exchange rate!

[www.thewoodworks.com.au](http://www.thewoodworks.com.au)

## THE ST. JAMES BAY TOOL Co.

Norris Style Planes  
Finished or Castings

Antique Tools  
Bought & Sold



800-574-2589

122 E. Main St. Mesa, AZ 85201  
480-835-1477



### THE BEALL COLLET CHUCK

For accurate wood turning. Available collets hold pieces from 1/4" to 3/4" securely without marking. No wrenches required. For 1" - 8 spindles.

For information call or write: Dept. FW  
**THE BEALL TOOL COMPANY**  
541 Swans Road, N. E. • Newark, OH 43055  
Toll Free (800)331-4718 Fax (740)345-5880  
See our Web Site: [www.bealltool.com](http://www.bealltool.com)

# CLASSIFIED

**INTENSIVE YEAR APPRENTICESHIP.** Traditional high-end furniture design, finishing, carving, inlays. East Texas. No tuition. (903) 769-1017.

**UNIVERSITY OF RIO GRANDE** 2-year Associate Degree of Fine Woodworking emphasizing traditional techniques to build fine quality custom furniture. For more information call Lonnie Bird at 1-740-245-7311 or toll-free in Ohio 1-800-282-7201, University of Rio Grande, Rio Grande, OH 45674. See our ad on page 16.

**APPRENTICESHIP** Winner of *Fine Woodworking Magazine's* Apprenticeship Program Award in Professional Artisan Furniture making/designing in rare solid woods. Tuition. Jeffrey Greene. (215) 348-5232. (PA). [nolegsneeded.com/greeneandgreene.html](http://nolegsneeded.com/greeneandgreene.html).

**MAKE A CHAIR FROM A TREE** and other Greenwood working courses. Small classes year round. John Alexander: (410) 685-4375. (MD) [greenwoodworking.com](http://greenwoodworking.com)

**LEARN TO BUILD GUITARS!** One to eight-day intensive workshops in all types of guitars including classical, steel string, electric, archtop and more. Located in the beautiful wine country of Northern California. The American School of Lutherie (800) 477-4437, e-mail: [asl@mii.com](mailto:asl@mii.com). website: [www.lmii.com](http://www.lmii.com).

**HANDS-ON WORKSHOPS** in beautiful Maine. Basic and Advanced. Twelve-week intensive. Center for Furniture Craftmanship (207) 594-5611, [www.woodschooll.com](http://www.woodschooll.com)

**BLUE RIDGE MOUNTAINS, VA.** One-year apprenticeship available to motivated individual. Saturated learning environment. Accommodations available, tuition. For more information call: Michael Maxwell, (540) 587-9543.

## Machinery New/Used

**USED PORTABLE SAW MILLS!** Buy/Sell. Call Sawmill Exchange 800-459-2148, 205-661-9821. (AL) <http://www.sawmillexchange.com>

**FOR MACHINE COMPARISONS** check out [www.woodworkingtools.com](http://www.woodworkingtools.com)

## Musical Supplies

**PLANS KITS & SUPPLIES** FOR musical instruments; harps, dulcimers, psalteries, banjos and more. Music-maker's Kits, Dept. FW, PO Box 2117, Stillwater, MN 55082. (651) 439-9120. [www.musikit.com](http://www.musikit.com)

**WANT TO BUILD A GUITAR?** Start with the LMI hand-book-catalog. 260 pages of articles, photos, color plates, tools, hardware, 30 species of wood, and information not found in other "how-to" books. Shipped in sturdy plastic binder. \$19.50 + \$3.50 s/h in continental U.S. Free 85-page price list/newsletter. Luthiers Mercantile International, Inc. (LMI), POB 774, Healdsburg, CA 95448 USA 800-477-4437. Fax: 707-433-8802. Overseas 707-433-1823. Order online: [www.lmii.com](http://www.lmii.com). Sponsor of American School of Lutherie and Healdsburg Guitar Festival.

**BUILD YOUR OWN** guitar, violin, or dulcimer! Free 108-page catalog featuring kits and all the tools, finishing supplies and instructions you need to build your next instrument. Stewart MacDonald's Guitar Shop Supply, Box 900F, Athens, OH 45701. 800-848-2273. [www.stewmac.com](http://www.stewmac.com)

## Plans & Kits

**HEIRLOOM BLANKET CHEST KITS.** Classic designs, finest materials, traditional joinery. Free brochure. Tradewoods Furniture Co. 800-903-2970.

**FULL-SIZE PLANS** for building fine furniture. Catalog \$3. Furniture Designs, Inc., CK-30, 1827 Elmdale Avenue, Glenview, IL 60025. 1-800-657-7692. [www.furnituredesigns.com](http://www.furnituredesigns.com)

## Power Tools

**LAMELLO BISCUIT JOINERS** and Accessories/Parts/Repairs. Best prices-most knowledgeable. Call Hank 1-800-789-2323. Select Machinery, Inc. (NY).

# CLASSIFIED

**Deadline for the July/August issue is April 25th.** The Classified rate is \$8 per word, 15 word minimum. **WEB Classifieds** available ([www.finewoodworking.com](http://www.finewoodworking.com)) and must reflect print ads. Orders must be accompanied by payment, ads are non-commissionable. Send to: **Fine Woodworking Classified Ad Dept., PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.** FAX 203-426-3434 (800) 926-8776, ext. 310.

## Accessories/Miscellaneous

**GLASS SOURCE FOR WOODWORKERS.** Glass and mirror custom cut, beveled, edged, etched, or grooved to your specifications. Shipped direct from our shop to yours. Call for free brochure, inquiries, or to place an order. Glass Source 1-800-588-7435.

**WOODEN SCREWS FOR VISES.** Classic designs or custom made. High quality. Free brochure. Crystal Creek Mill. (315) 446-1229. (NY)

## Business Opportunities

Advertise on THE WOODWORKING WEB SITES<sup>SM</sup> [www.woodworkingmachinery.com](http://www.woodworkingmachinery.com)

**BROOKLYN WOODWORKERS CO-OP** seeks new members. Professionals sharing fully-equipped shop; private space. Greenpoint, Brooklyn, NY. Joe (718) 349-3610.

\$100.00 PER HOUR, woodworking from your garage, full or part-time. No selling! Free brochure: Home Tech 800-456-4987.

NYC Antique furniture restoration workshop with extensive collection for sale, 17 years profitable. Asking \$250K, min. \$100K. Owner retiring due to health. Respond to: [dlinkebn@erols.com](mailto:dlinkebn@erols.com), telephone (212) 337-3272, [www.d-linker-ebeniste.com](http://www.d-linker-ebeniste.com)

## Blades & Bits

**BAND SAW BLADES.** Swedish silicon steel: 1/16-in. through 1 1/4-in. Timber Wolf bands. FREE catalog. Suffolk Machine: 800-234-7297. (NY) [timberwolf1.com](http://timberwolf1.com)

## Finishes

**FINE SHELLAC FLAKES.** Discount prices! Over a dozen varieties. Free catalog: Olguin Woodworking, 11724 Norino Dr., Whittier, CA 90601. Visit us on the web, at: [www.concentric.net/~oodeen](http://www.concentric.net/~oodeen).

**SPRAY-ON SUED.** Line boxes in seconds. Free brochure. DonJer Products, 13142 Murphy Road, Winnebago, IL 61088. 800-336-6537. [www.donjer.com](http://www.donjer.com). (sample enclosed).

## Glues & Adhesives

**HIDE GLUE**, all grades including wood sizing and glass chipping. Bjorn Industries, Inc., 551 King Edward Rd., Charlotte, NC 28211. (704) 364-1186.

## Hand Tools

**ANTIQUÉ & USED TOOLS.** Hundreds of quality handtools. Many Stanley. On the Internet at [www.anique-used-tools.com](http://www.anique-used-tools.com). Visa/MC. Bob Kaune, Dept. FW300, 511 W. 11th, Port Angeles, WA 98362. (360) 452-2292, Mail Order only.

**TASHIRO'S SHARP JAPANESE TOOLS.** Established 1885. Free ZETA<sup>SM</sup> saw catalog. PO Box 3409, Seattle, WA 98114. (206) 328-7641. Fax (206) 328-1256. [www.tashirohardware.com](http://www.tashirohardware.com)

**VINTAGE PLANES & PARTS**, buying and selling. Pete Niederberger, Box 887, Larkspur, CA 94977. (415) 924-8403 evenings. E-mail: [pniederber@aol.com](mailto:pniederber@aol.com)

## Hardware

**VIEW 1000'S OF PRODUCTS ON-LINE.** Professional Hardware & Supply. For information: 1-800-248-1919. [www.profhdwr.com](http://www.profhdwr.com)

## Help Wanted

**FINISHER FOR TOP-QUALITY CUSTOM SHOP** producing the finest in contemporary and traditional cabinets. Must be experienced with staining, glazing, color matching and full range of finishing techniques. Philadelphia, PA suburbs. (610) 270-0825.

**WANTED** Person with good woodworking skills and good attitude for a well-established high-end custom furniture shop in the Palm Beach area. Must be experienced in cabinet/furniture building. Excellent opportunity for the right person. Large shop with new equipment. Paid vacation/benefits. All applicants must submit resume to be considered. FAX (561) 588-2922.

**FURNITUREMAKER** apprentice work/study program. Performance pay & fringes. Integrity, 5 year commitment, tool/machine experience required. ADRIANCE, MA. (508) 993-4800. [www.adriance.com](http://www.adriance.com)

## Instruction

**LIW WOODCARVING ACADEMY:** Instruction in traditional and wildlife woodcarving. Also seeking instructors in same. 74 W. Hoffman Ave., Lindenhurst, NY 11757. Tel (516) 225-1666. Walter T. Connolly.

**NEW ENGLAND SCHOOL** of Architectural Woodworking. 37-week training program in architectural woodworking. Job assistance. (413) 527-6103. (MA) [www.nesaw.com](http://www.nesaw.com)

**Veneer**

**DOMESTIC AND IMPORTED EXOTICS.** For musical instruments, pool cues, knife handles and custom furniture. Price list. Exotic Woods, 1-800-443-9264. [www.exoticwoods.com](http://www.exoticwoods.com)

**Videos**

**TRICKS OF THE TRADE VIDEO MAGAZINE.** Call toll free 1-877-WOODGUY for free sample tape, \$4.95 S/H credited on first order, or visit [www.woodguy.com](http://www.woodguy.com)

**Wood**

**CLOSE OUT SALE!!!** After 20 years in wood, Western Canada's finest and most extensive hardwood inventory offered for sale. Over 100 species, over 400 packs, bundled and ready for shipment, priced in devalued Canadian dollars. PH (306) 237-9585. See our extensive website. [www.tummy.com/renaldos/welcome.html](http://www.tummy.com/renaldos/welcome.html)

**ATTENTION VA/MD AREA WOODWORKERS.** K/D quartersawn sycamore, red & white oak. Cherry, walnut, elm, apple, and other domestic hardwoods. Herbine Hardwoods, Leesburg, VA. (703) 771-3067.

**QUILTED MAPLE, WESTERN WALNUT.** Myrtlewood, birdseye, curly and burl maple. Northwest Timber. (541) 327-1000. (OR) [www.nwtimber.com](http://www.nwtimber.com)

**EISENBRAND EXOTIC HARDWOODS.** - Widest selection anywhere. Domestic/imported. Reasonable prices. Quality guaranteed. FREE brochure. Info - (310) 542-3576. Orders - 800-258-2587. (CA) [www.eisenbran.com](http://www.eisenbran.com)

**QUALITY NORTHERN APPALACHIAN** hardwood. Custom milling. Free delivery. Bundled, surfaced. Satisfaction guarantee. Niagara Lumber, 800-274-0397 (NY) [www.niagaralumber.com](http://www.niagaralumber.com)

**CHESTNUT LUMBER.** All thicknesses. Wormy or clear. 10 thousand feet available. Sassafras lumber. Antique oak, poplar, pine. (304) 497-2700. [www.vintageleg.com](http://www.vintageleg.com)

**LONGLEAF (HEART) PINE LUMBER.** Resawn from salvaged timbers. Lumber, flooring and stair-tread material. Lee Yelton: (706) 541-1039. (GA)

**HOMESTEAD HARDWOODS, Ohio:** 330-889-3770, 1-800-241-3770. **ALVA HARDWOODS, Florida:** (941) 728-2484, 1-888-894-6229. 40+ domestic/exotic species, comprehensive sizes.

**REDWOOD BURL, RARE EXOTIC** burlwood. Direct from logger. Table and clock slabs, turning blocks, box-wood! Burl Country: (707) 725-3982. Fax (707) 725-3306. (CA)

**TEXAS MESQUITE SAWMILL.** Quality custom lumber. Full grading range. Digicam preview available. 915-357-4774. [www.texaswoodworks.com](http://www.texaswoodworks.com).

**CALIFORNIA'S FINEST QUALITY EXOTIC** figured burlwoods. 30,000 pieces redwood, maple, buckeye, manzanita, madrone, myrtlewood, walnut, other burls. Any size/use/guaranteed/direct. Established 27 years. VISA/MC. BURL TREE, Bruce Remington. 800-785-BURL.

**SAWMILL DIRECT Cocobolo SALE!** 12-in. long lumber. \$10/bd. ft. 250-bd/ft. FEQ RWL. \$7.50/bd ft. Select ebony Billets, 3lbs. Quality at a fair price. Self-addressed stamped envelope. Tropical Exotic Hardwoods, PO Box 1806, Carlsbad, CA 92018. Toll FREE orders only 888-434-3031. Questions, (760) 434-3030. [www.anexotichardwood.com](http://www.anexotichardwood.com) Mitch Talcove.

**HARDWOODS CUT TO ORDER.** 120 species in stock from 1/4-in. to 4-in., burls, wood ID kits. Veneers, woodworker's supplies. Colonial Hardwoods, Springfield, VA. (800) 466-5451.

**NEW GUINEA ROSEWOOD (NARRA)!!** Must sell 4000 bd. ft. of this rare and beautiful tropical exotic hardwood in varied widths, lengths and thicknesses. Grade FAS. \$6.50/ft. Minimum 500 ft. Will ship. Contact Jim @ (843) 832-4262 or <jstack082446@netzero.net>

**WIDE AND MATCHED HARDWOODS.** See our ad in the Woodworkers' Mart, Page 116. Irion Lumber 570-724-1895. [www.irionlumber.com](http://www.irionlumber.com).

**FIGURED CLARO WALNUT** slabs, planks, blocks, dimensions suitable for small to very large projects. California Walnut Designs. (530) 268-0203. [www.woodnut.com](http://www.woodnut.com)

**MAPLE AND REDWOOD BURL.** Highly figured, bird's-eye and lace. Specializing in quality materials for carving and boxes. (503) 394-3077. (OR) [www.burlwoodonline.com](http://www.burlwoodonline.com)

**TUCKAWAY TIMBER CO.** Highest quality kiln-dried lumber. Clear white pine up to 24" wide, 20 species of hardwood, figured woods, carving, burls. 603-795-45434. [www.tuckawaytimber.com](http://www.tuckawaytimber.com)

**BIRD'S-EYE AND CURLY MAPLE,** 4/4 to 12/4 lumber, flitches, turning squares and blocks. Black walnut, cherry/quartersawn, and curly oak lumber. Dunlap Woodcrafts, Vienna, VA (703) 631-5147.

**CLARO AND ELM FIGURED, CROTCHES, SLABS.** Dimensional Lumber K/D black locust, California Koa, Camphor, Myrtle, White Oak, Monterey Cypress. (408) 847-8433. Gilroy, CA. [www.bakerhardwoods.com](http://www.bakerhardwoods.com)

**CHESTNUT LUMBER,** Wormy or clear, furniture grade. Antique woods and antique wide board flooring. Oak, pine, hemlock. T&G, custom millwork. CHESTNUT WOODWORKING (860) 672-4300, fax 860-672-2441. (CT) [www.chestnutwoodworking.com](http://www.chestnutwoodworking.com).



**Covering the heads  
of fine woodworkers  
everywhere.**

Order yours today  
and choose from two  
handsome styles.

**To order  
call 1-800-888-8286  
operator W758, or visit  
[finewoodworking.com](http://finewoodworking.com)**

**Style #011048**  
Contemporary, low profile. Soft brushed cotton twill. Forest green with stitched logo and self-adjusting elastic back. \$9.95 plus \$1.50 shipping and handling.

**Style #011047**  
Classic, tall profile. Natural cotton twill cap with forest green bill. Green stitched logo and snap back. \$9.95 plus \$1.50 shipping and handling.

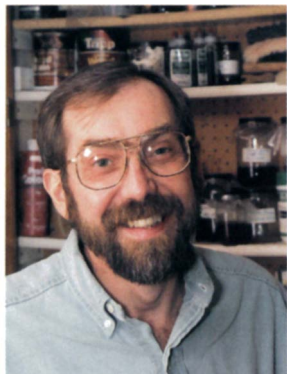
CT residents please add 6% sales tax; Canadian residents add 7% GST.

# INDEX TO ADVERTISERS

Use reader service card - inside back cover.

Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, <i>page #</i>
55	A & I Supply, <i>p. 11</i>	191	Eagle Tools/EuroShop, <i>p. 24</i>	58	Lin Mar Distributing, <i>p. 117</i>	51	Scherr's Cabinet & Doors, <i>p. 99</i>
1	Adams Wood Products, <i>p. 107</i>	132	Eagle Woodworking, <i>p. 117</i>	123	Luthiers Mercantile Intl., <i>p. 103</i>	226	Shaker Workshops, <i>p. 103</i>
107	Airware America, <i>p. 116</i>	195	Ebac Lumber Dryers, <i>p. 116</i>			259	Shark Corporation, <i>p. 37</i>
48	Allred & Associates, <i>p. 120</i>	140	Eco Gate, <i>p. 24</i>	15	MacBeath Hardwood Co., <i>p. 120</i>	204	Shopbot Tool, <i>p. 7</i>
	Amazon.Com, <i>p. 25</i>	154	Econ-Abrasives, <i>p. 106</i>	251	Magna, <i>p. 23</i>		Slim's Power Tools, <i>p. 116</i>
164	American Craft Council, <i>p. 119</i>		Electrophysics, <i>p. 115</i>	215	Makita U.S.A., <i>p. 13</i>	150	Southern Union St. Comm. Coll., <i>p. 121</i>
91	American Furniture Designs, <i>p. 116</i>	72	Emperor Clock, <i>p. 21</i>	231	Manny's Woodworker's Place, <i>p. 14</i>	2	St. James Bay Tool, <i>p. 122</i>
236	American Tool Companies, <i>p. 9</i>		Engraving Arts, <i>p. 116</i>	56	Mao Shan Machinery, <i>p. 103</i>	235	Sunhill Machinery, <i>p. 42</i>
68	Anderson Ranch Arts Center, <i>p. 106</i>		Enviro-Safety Products, <i>p. 116</i>	40, 151	Marc Adams School of Woodworking, <i>p. 15, 118</i>	71	Sun-Mar Corporation, <i>p. 117</i>
258, 190	Apollo Sprayers, <i>p. 115, 34</i>	153	E-Wood, <i>p. 117</i>	73	MAS Epoxies, <i>p. 118</i>	177	Supreme Design Products, <i>p. 117</i>
173	Arrowmont School of Crafts, <i>p. 29</i>	161	Exaktor Precision WW Tools, <i>p. 121</i>			248	System One, <i>p. 32</i>
	Art Essentials of New York, <i>p. 120</i>			118	Mass Bay Wood Products, <i>p. 120</i>		
50	Ashman Technical Ltd., <i>p. 37</i>	181	Farris Machinery, <i>p. 117</i>	157	Master Fasteners, <i>p. 33</i>	20	Talarico Hardwoods, <i>p. 120</i>
	August Home Publishing Co., <i>p. 118</i>	220, 219	Felder and Hammer brands, <i>p. 12, 3</i>	117	McFeely's Square Drive, <i>p. 40</i>	35	Target Enterprises, <i>p. 103</i>
119	Auton Company, <i>p. 30</i>	171	Festo Tooltechnic, <i>p. 21</i>	29	MEG Products, <i>p. 120</i>		Taunton Press, <i>p. 94, 95, 113</i>
		70	Fisch Precision Tools, Inc., <i>p. 24</i>	12	Mercury Vacuum Presses, <i>p. 99</i>		Taunton Press, <i>p. 108, 109</i>
186	Ball & Ball, <i>p. 103</i>	252	Flexaust, <i>p. 40</i>	244	Mesa Vista Design, <i>p. 16</i>		Taunton Press, <i>p. 115, 122</i>
146	Bauhaus Apprenticeship Inst., <i>p. 116</i>	214	Frank Mittermeier, Inc., <i>p. 121</i>	116	Michael Dunbar, <i>p. 116</i>	209	Tech Mark Inc., <i>p. 33</i>
188	Beall Tool Co., <i>p. 122</i>	112	Fuji Industrial Spray Equip., <i>p. 10</i>	25	Microplane, <i>p. 37</i>	149	Tech-Wood Inc., <i>p. 118</i>
172	Becton Ltd. Collection, <i>p. 34</i>	229	Furniture Designs, <i>p. 117</i>	100	Mid Maine Hardwoods, <i>p. 121</i>	134	Tenryu America, Inc., <i>p. 99</i>
169	Bench Dog, <i>p. 39</i>			9	Misugi Designs, <i>p. 29</i>		Thomas Golding School, <i>p. 116</i>
41, 196	Berea Hardwoods, <i>p. 41, 21</i>	80	G & W Tool Company, <i>p. 41</i>	205, 206	MLCS Ltd., <i>p. 17, 103</i>	105	Timberking, <i>p. 16</i>
125	Better Built Corp., <i>p. 107</i>	227	Garrett Wade Company, <i>p. 19</i>	47	Murray Clock Craft Ltd., <i>p. 120</i>		Tool Chest, <i>p. 116</i>
217	Biesemeyer Mfg., <i>p. 7</i>	145	Gilmer Wood Company, <i>p. 118</i>		Museum of Woodworking Tools, <i>p. 121</i>	242	Tool Crib of the North, <i>p. 111</i>
6	Bloxygen by Iron Wood Designs, <i>p. 121</i>	114	Goby's Walnut Wood Products, <i>p. 118</i>	61	North Bennet Street School, <i>p. 117</i>		Toolmart, <i>p. 40</i>
120	Blue Moon Exotic Wood, <i>p. 119</i>	60	Good Hope Hardwoods, <i>p. 119</i>	75	Northend Hardwoods, <i>p. 118</i>	241	Tools On Sale, <i>p. 93</i>
43	Blue Ox Hardwoods, <i>p. 119</i>	5	Gorilla Glue, <i>p. 41</i>	14	Northwest School of Wooden Boatbuilding, <i>p. 29</i>	197	Tremont Nail Company, <i>p. 116</i>
	BrandNew, <i>p. 120</i>	155	Gougeon Brothers, <i>p. 120</i>		Northwest Timber, <i>p. 121</i>	199	Tropical Exotic Hardwoods, <i>p. 117</i>
133	Bristol Valley Hardwoods, <i>p. 120</i>	96	Groff & Groff Lumber, <i>p. 106</i>	10	Norwood Sawmills, <i>p. 120</i>	222	Tsunami Tools, <i>p. 34</i>
		87	Guild of Master Craftsmen, <i>p. 120</i>	175	Nyle Standard Dryers, <i>p. 29</i>		Turnings Unlimited, <i>p. 117</i>
122	Calif. Contemporary CraftGuild, <i>p. 119</i>	88	guild.com, <i>p. 14</i>			21	Universal Laser Systems, <i>p. 92</i>
187	Cambium Press, <i>p. 120</i>	57	Hampton House, <i>p. 27</i>	64	Oakwood Veneer, <i>p. 120</i>		University of Rio Grande, <i>p. 16</i>
156	Cash Coatings Co., <i>p. 99</i>	232	Haystack Mt. School of Crafts, <i>p. 41</i>	82	Old Village Paint, <i>p. 120</i>	45	US Steel Buildings, <i>p. 119</i>
	Center for Furn. Craftsmanship, <i>p. 15</i>	202	Hearne Hardwoods, Inc., <i>p. 33</i>	82	Oncida Air Systems, <i>p. 12</i>		
94	Certainly Wood, <i>p. 121</i>	243	Hida Tool & Hardware, <i>p. 10</i>	85	Original Saw Company, <i>p. 17</i>	239	Vac-U-Clamp, <i>p. 29</i>
93	Chippendale School of Furniture, <i>p. 119</i>	143	Highland Hardware, <i>p. 27</i>	247	Packard WoodWorks, <i>p. 121</i>	17	Vacuum Pressing System, <i>p. 33</i>
89	Classic Designs by Matthew Burak, <i>p. 32</i>	135	Horton Brasses, Inc., <i>p. 10</i>	83	Paxton Hardware Company, <i>p. 118</i>	213	Van Dyke's Restorers, <i>p. 34</i>
167, 189	Clayton Machine Corp., <i>p. 41, 17</i>	177	HTC Products, Inc., <i>p. 11</i>	179	Peck Tool, <i>p. 118</i>	255	Viel Tools Inc., <i>p. 115</i>
238	Colonial Saw Company, <i>p. 99</i>	7	Hut Products For Wood, <i>p. 16</i>	126	Penland School, <i>p. 121</i>	98	Virutex.com Inc., <i>p. 117</i>
176	Colonial Times Clock Company, <i>p. 118</i>	207	Incra Rules, <i>p. 3</i>	82	Penn State Industries, <i>p. 118</i>		
257	Columbia Forest Products, <i>p. 3</i>	198	International Tool Corp., <i>p. 29</i>	249	Performax Products, <i>p. 92</i>	46	W. Moore Profiles, <i>p. 107</i>
92	Compliant Spray Systems, <i>p. 32</i>	11	Irion Lumber Co., <i>p. 116</i>	237	Peters Valley Craftsmen Inc., <i>p. 121</i>	180	West Penn Hardwoods, <i>p. 117</i>
142	Condon, <i>p. 29</i>	185	Iturra Design, <i>p. 27</i>	148	Philip C. Lowe, <i>p. 118</i>	121	Wetzler Clamp Company, <i>p. 121</i>
65	Conover Lathes, <i>p. 33</i>	37	J.B. Dawn, <i>p. 119</i>	33	Pisgah Hardwoods, <i>p. 121</i>	95	WGB Glass, <i>p. 27</i>
129	Conover Workshops, <i>p. 119</i>	31	Jamestown Distributors, <i>p. 11</i>	203	Pootatuck Corporation, <i>p. 15</i>	201	Whillock Woodcarving, <i>p. 118</i>
246	Constantine, <i>p. 118</i>	28	Japan Woodworker, <i>p. 15</i>	256	Porter-Cable, <i>p. 101</i>	3	Wilke Machinery Co., <i>p. 16</i>
	Contemporary Guitar Making, <i>p. 121</i>	131	Jet Equipment, <i>p. 2</i>	160, 159	Powermatic, <i>p. 24, 97</i>	62	Williams & Hussey, <i>p. 42</i>
212	Cormark International, <i>p. 118</i>	102	Jointech, <i>p. 39</i>	178	ProtimeterNorth America, <i>p. 21</i>	111	Winkler Wood Products, <i>p. 116</i>
183	Craft Supplies, <i>p. 34</i>	81	Kay Industries, Inc., <i>p. 92</i>			108	Wood River Veneer, <i>p. 116</i>
200	CraftWood Veneer Products, <i>p. 118</i>		Kayne & Son, <i>p. 118</i>	127	Quality VAKuum Products, <i>p. 92</i>	240	Wood Works Book & Tool, <i>p. 122</i>
4	Creative Accents, <i>p. 118</i>	124	Keller & Company, <i>p. 17</i>	22	Quick Fold Saw Horse Company, <i>p. 119</i>	224	Wood Write Ltd., <i>p. 119</i>
34	Cutting Edge, Inc., <i>p. 120</i>	250	Kimrick, <i>p. 10</i>			30, 113	Woodcraft Supply, <i>p. 39, 106</i>
		49	Kreg Tool Company, <i>p. 40</i>	63	Rare Earth Hardwoods, <i>p. 121</i>	42	Woodcraft Supply, <i>p. 105</i>
66	Dakota County Technical College, <i>p. 92</i>	44	Kremer Pigments, <i>p. 116</i>	84	Red Hill Corporation, <i>p. 39</i>		Woodfinder by Woodrose, <i>p. 92</i>
170	Dana Robes, <i>p. 121</i>	74	L.R.H. Enterprises, Inc., <i>p. 39</i>	117	Ridge Carbide ToolCo, <i>p. 117</i>	184	Woodline Arizona, <i>p. 33</i>
	David Warren Direct, <i>p. 119</i>	38, 53	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 15, 98</i>	16	right-tool.com, <i>p. 119</i>	106, 79	Woodmaster Power Tools, <i>p. 14, 99</i>
101	DCT Holdings Corp., <i>p. 121</i>	165	Laguna Tools, <i>p. 35</i>	136	Robert Larson, <i>p. 117</i>		Wood-Mizer, <i>p. 37</i>
192	Delta International, <i>p. 127</i>	225	Laughing Loon Custom Canoes, <i>p. 120</i>	147	Rockingham Community College, <i>p. 116</i>	8	Wood-Ply Lumber Corp., <i>p. 120</i>
234, 194	DeWalt, <i>p. 31, 17</i>	182	Launstein Hardwoods, <i>p. 27</i>	71	Ron Dieffenbacher, <i>p. 120</i>	230	WoodRat, <i>p. 10</i>
110	Diefenbach Benches, <i>p. 117</i>	163	Lee Valley/Veritas, <i>p. 27</i>	208	Ronk Electrical Industries, Inc., <i>p. 39</i>	32	Woodsmith Store, <i>p. 27</i>
90	Dust Boy, Inc., <i>p. 121</i>	211	Leigh Industries, <i>p. 107</i>	36	Rousseau, <i>p. 115</i>	52	Woodworker's Depot, <i>p. 103</i>
			LeNeave Supply Company, <i>p. 30</i>		Router Bits on the Web, <i>p. 117</i>	104	Woodworkers Discount Books, <i>p. 7</i>
13	E. C. Refinisher's Warehouse, <i>p. 117</i>	19	Lie-Nielsen Toolworks, <i>p. 16</i>			69	Woodworker's Dream, <i>p. 119</i>
233	Eagle America, <i>p. 21</i>	59	Lignomat Moisture Meters, <i>p. 34</i>	216	S. LaRose, Inc., <i>p. 116</i>	54	Woodworker's Source, <i>p. 119</i>
				23	Sandy Pond Hardwoods, <i>p. 116</i>	166	WoodworkingShows, <i>p. 107</i>
					Sawhelper, <i>p. 37</i>	103	World Timber Corp., <i>p. 119</i>
						162	WorkSavers.com, <i>p. 119</i>
						115	Worldwide Services, Co., <i>p. 116</i>
							Yankee Hardwood Specialties, <i>p. 118</i>

## Three simple finishes



Let's face it. Applying a high-gloss, filled-and-toned finish to a piece of furniture can be a pain. Luckily, not every project requires such a fancy finish. With some jobs, an easy-to-apply, wipe-on/wipe-off finish is the perfect choice, and wipe-on finishing couldn't be simpler.

My wipe-on finishing arsenal consists of three variations: a wipe-on oil finish, a straight wax finish and a shellac-and-wax combination finish.

The wood species and the final look

I want determine which of these finishes I'll use. All three produce a silky smooth surface that begs to be touched. On the downside, none of these finishes does much to protect the surface from the nicks, dings and spills of everyday use. Fortunately, wipe-on finishes are easy to repair when disaster strikes: Wiping on another coat is usually all you need to do.

### Good surface preparation is the key

Wipe-on finishes are applied in relatively thin coats, so they don't have enough body to cover up stray sanding scratches or other defects on the wood surface, as a brushed-on, heavy-bodied varnish would. Consequently, paying close attention to your sanding sequence is an important part of the wipe-on finishing process.

For most wood species, I sand the wood up to 180 grit with aluminum-oxide discs on a random-orbit sander, then hand-sand with 180-grit garnet sandpaper. Hand-sanding eliminates the machine-made swirl marks and generally improves the quality of the surface. I prefer garnet sandpaper for hand-sanding bare wood because the garnet mineral leaves a softer, less-noticeable scratch than other common types of sandpaper. This sanding sequence is not written in stone; you can vary the grit selections and types of sandpaper on your projects. (For more about sanding and surface preparation, see my Finish Line column in *FWW* #132.)

### Oil mixed with varnish

Wipe-on finishes are nothing new to woodworking. I own a finishing manual published in the early 1800s that touts the virtues of linseed oil. However, the application schedule for straight linseed oil was quite grueling: a coat of the oil once a day for a week, once a week for a month, once a month for a year and once a year forever. Fortunately, modern oil fin-

ishes (often called Danish oil) are not nearly as demanding. Danish oils are a controlled blend of either linseed or tung oil, varnish resins, solvents and chemical driers. These oil blends offer a number of advantages: They're easy to apply, quick to dry, and they protect the surface as only varnish can.

Application doesn't get any easier than this. Lay on a liberal coat with a brush or a rag and add more, as needed, after a few minutes when dry spots appear on the surface. After 30 minutes or so, wipe away any excess oil and allow the wood to dry overnight. Buff the dry surface with a fine abrasive pad and then apply at least four more coats. Wet-sanding the second and third coats with 400- or 600-grit wet-or-dry sandpaper will produce a surface as smooth as a baby's skin. Wet-sanding levels the surface and also creates a slurry of the Danish oil and sanding dust that fills the pores of the wood. Wet-sanding is not a good idea if the project contains con-



**Dried oil is like dried blood:** It's hard to remove after it dries. That's why you should continue to wipe off the excess oil that often bleeds back onto the surface of wood that has large open pores.

trasting woods, such as holly string inlay in walnut. The dark slurry from the walnut will discolor the holly.

About the only problem you might encounter is oil bleeding back up onto the surface (see the photo above). This predicament is common with large-pored woods such as oak, ash and walnut. After the first and second coats of Danish oil, the grain lines will often ooze this excess oil for hours. If you allow it to dry on the surface, unsightly shiny patches will be the result. You can avoid this problem by applying the oil early in the day and checking the workpiece every 30 minutes or so for oozing. The oozing should stop after four or five hours.

I use a home-brew Danish oil in my shop, and I rarely have bleeding problems. My formulation is rather simple: 1½ cups mineral spirits, 1 cup brushing varnish and ¼ cup boiled linseed oil. Not surprisingly, changing the proportions will affect the characteristics of the finish. For instance, more varnish decreases the drying time and provides greater protection to the wood, but it makes the finish more difficult to wipe on. The converse is true for



# Finish Line (continued)

the linseed-oil portion. Experiment with the formula until you find a mixture that suits you.

## Wax—the easy one

Straight wax is the easiest way I know to finish wood, but it does virtually nothing to protect the wood from everyday use. That shouldn't keep you from using it though, because not all projects demand a lot of protection. Wax looks great on small boxes, turned pieces and decorative objects, and it's the only finish I use on cutting boards and wooden cooking utensils. Turnings can be finished right on the lathe.

The procedure is simple enough: Apply a thin coat of wax, let it dry to a dull haze, then buff it to a satin sheen with a clean, soft rag. Two coats of wax are all you'll need, because little improvement in luster or protection is gained by more than that. I use steel wool (000 or 0000) as a wax applicator. The steel wool pad—loaded with wax—pares away the wood surface, shearing off small protruding wood fibers as it spreads on an even coat of wax. The net result is a smoother and more evenly coated wood surface than you'd ever get with a rag or an abrasive pad.

**Mix your own colors.** Shoe polish is the perfect tinting medium for custom-colored wax, and it happens to come in shades that blend well with many woodworking projects.



In my opinion, hard paste-type furniture waxes are the only kind suitable for use as finish. Be careful in your selection, though; not all furniture waxes are created equal. Some contain a high percentage of soft waxes, predominately beeswax. These waxes remain relatively soft and seem more readily to show fingerprints and collect dust. I prefer paste waxes that contain mostly (if not solely) carnauba wax, which forms an extremely hard wax film that will buff to a high gloss. Wax manufacturers are proud of the carnauba wax content in their products and usually list it prominently on the labels.

Putting a wax finish on large-pored, dark-colored woods can be problematic. Wax collects in the pores and turns white when it dries. Short of planing or sanding it out, it's almost impossible to remove. Take heart; there's a simple solution to this dilemma. By tinting the wax to match the background color of the wood (see the photo above), this problem disappears. I tint my wax with shoe polish (the paste kind, not the liquid dye). Most shoe polish is made from carnauba wax and comes in colors that blend well

with wood shades. My formulation is not exact by any means. I start with a scoop of paste furniture wax and mix in a dollop of shoe polish, then check the color on a scrap. I repeat the procedure until I'm satisfied with the color, and I usually mix my wax colors a little darker than the surrounding wood. I prefer the slight contrast the darker wax provides; however, you may not.

## Shellac and wax—a good marriage

Many woodworkers only consider brushing or spraying on a shellac finish, but with a little practice, you'll find that shellac can be a wonderful wipe-on finish, too. I'm usually a staunch supporter of mixing your own fresh shellac from dry flakes for wood-finishing applications. (In fact, I've been called a dry-shellac-flake evangelist.) But in this case, I'll have to retreat from my usual stand. Premixed shellac, the kind you find in a hardware store, simply works better for wipe-on applications than fresh, shop-made shellac. I'm not sure why—it may be because of the wax content of the shellac or that the age of the solution enhances its plasticity—but experience has taught me that premixed, canned shellac is superior for wipe-on finishing.

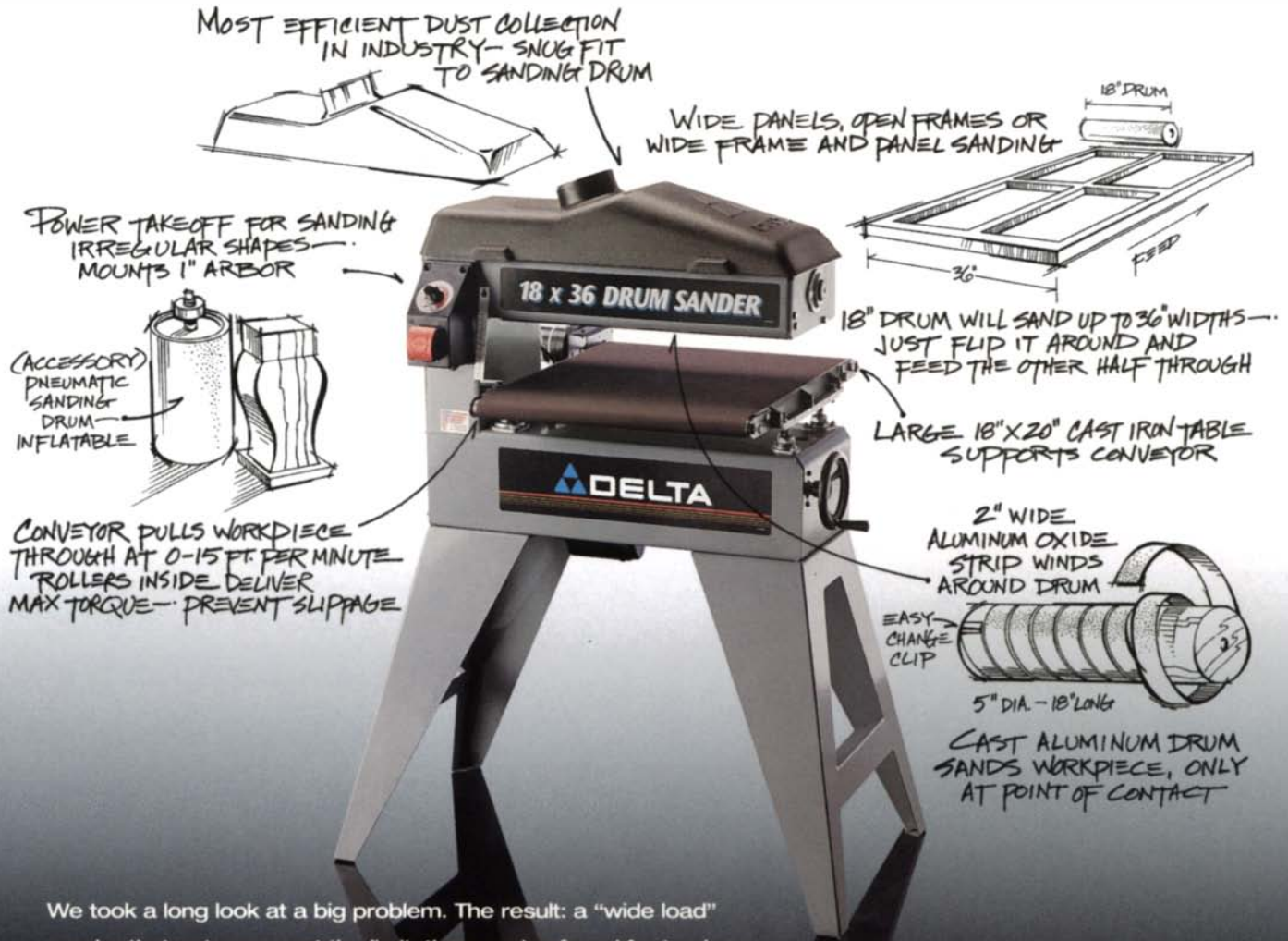
The wipe-on procedure is simple. Saturate a clean, lint-free rag with shellac solution right out of the can. The rag should not be dripping wet, but when you squeeze it, finish should flow out of the rag. Wipe the wood with the wet rag, then immediately wipe up any drips or puddles with the same rag. The wood should look thoroughly wet, but there should not be any appreciable liquid left on the surface. After this first coat has dried for two hours or so, lightly sand the wood with 220-grit (or finer) sandpaper to remove any raised grain, then wipe on another coat. Three of these wiped-on coats will yield a nice surface luster without a detectable surface film. A coat of wax applied over the final shellac coat lends a nice, hand-rubbed feel to the piece. A shellac and black wax polish on fumed white oak is an especially great-looking finish for Stickley-style furniture (see the photo below).



**Black wax over shellac.** The combination of these two finishes looks especially good when applied over fumed white oak.

DELTA TAKES A SERIOUS LOOK AT WIDE SURFACE SANDING.

# Delta's new "Wide Load" Drum Sander: 36-inch wide surface sanding with a 2-inch strip.



We took a long look at a big problem. The result: a "wide load" sander that gets you past the limitations you've faced for too long. Our newest offering will very simply change the way you work. The way you design. The way you think. One visit to your Delta dealer will put you in the big time. For the name of your nearest dealer, call Delta Machinery, 800-438-2486. In Canada, call 519-836-2840. [www.deltawoodworking.com](http://www.deltawoodworking.com)

**SERIOUS  
WOODWORKING TOOLS  
SINCE 1919.**



Delta is a proud sponsor of *The New Yankee Workshop* with Norm Abram on PBS.

READER SERVICE NO. 192

**DELTA**  
MACHINERY

A Pentair Company



## Connoisseur of Curves



For Jere Osgood, a straight line is a missed opportunity. In 40 years making furniture, he's missed very few. A quiet man who lets his furniture speak for him, Osgood, of Wilton, N.H., has developed a vocabulary of curves that is unmistakably his and undeniably eloquent. In this recent writing desk (purchased by the Rhode Island School of Design Museum), as in

all of his furniture, Osgood's flair for form is matched by a passion for technique. The legs of the wenge, bubinga and ceylonese satinwood desk are bent laminations in which each laminate is tapered—a trick he developed in the late 60s. The staved lid—inspired by the shape of a lute—is an elliptical assembly of bent-laminated pieces attached to the desk with brass hardware he made from bar stock. And the craftsmanship that brings all these curves together? It speaks for itself.